

**DIVERGENT THINKING:
UNDERGIRDING THE CONCEPT OF THE HUMAN HEART IN
SPIRIT SOUL AND BODY**

by

CISKA ARENDT

Master of Ministry in Theology

Submitted in accordance with the requirements for the degree

Philosophiae Doctor in Christian Theology

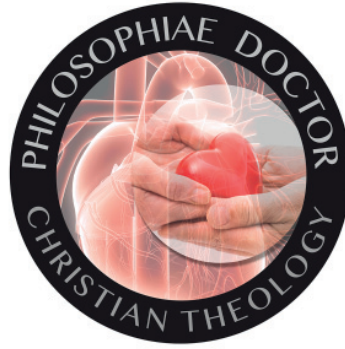
at the

ST. CLEMENS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY

PROMOTOR

Prof. Dr. Connie M.J. Brand (DLitt, PhD, MTh)

October 2016



Declaration of Authenticity

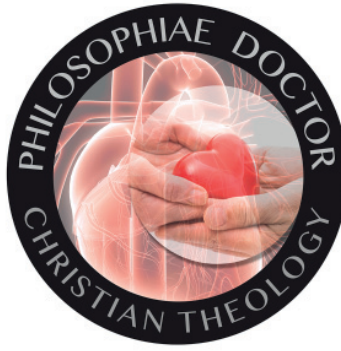
I, the undersigned, _____,

hereby declare that this thesis is my original work, compiled and utilized especially to fulfill the purposes and objectives of this study and has not been previously submitted to any other university for a higher degree. I certify that the publications cited in this work have been personally consulted. This thesis contains no material previously published or written by another person, except where due reference has been made.

Signature

Date

---oOo---



Dedication

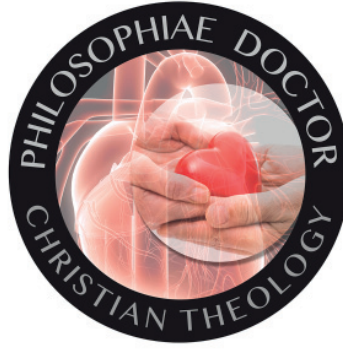
“Amen! Blessing and glory and wisdom, Thanksgiving and honor and power and might, Be to our God forever and ever. Amen.”

Revelations 7:12 (NKJV)

This thesis is dedicated, first and foremost, to the only living God, our savior. Through Him all things are possible.

Secondly I dedicate the thesis to my loving husband Magnus and my beautiful boys. All of you displayed more patience and support than one could wish for and I thank you for the sacrifices you made in your support to me.

---oOo---

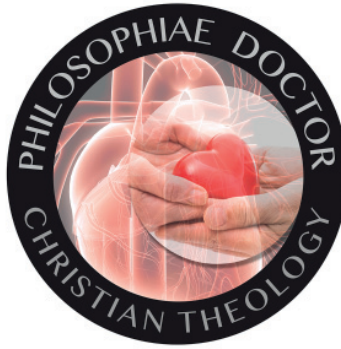


Acknowledgements

I would like to express my deepest appreciation to our Heavenly Father and the following people:

- The only living God, our King, for taking me through this path of deliverance and freedom and giving me the strength to follow through in obedience.
- My Promotor, Prof Dr Connie Brand, for her encouragement, prayers and faithful support. You are an inspiration and true example in being a servant to the Lord.
- My husband and best friend in Christ, for making this possible by being obedient to the Lord, your prayers and support is like a pillar.
- My three children, Migael, Emile and Eduan for being very patient and loving with me.
- My mother who supported me in the background and on whom I can always depend. Thank you so much for what you do for all of us, we appreciate it dearly.
- My friend Marilize, thank you for everything you are.

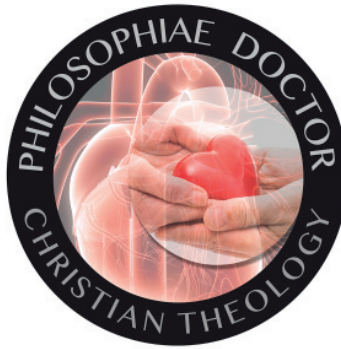
---oOo---



Ownership and Rights to Intellectual Property

This Degree Course of Doctor in Philosophy in Christian Theology, undertaken under the St. Clemens Private Swiss University, is under the Property of the Researcher.

---oOo---



Summary

The hands of God made man and as God blew “the breath of life” into man’s nostrils, man became a living being, created in His perfect image. Spirit, soul and body were the form in which God created man. Man’s heart started to beat and the “life” was permeating throughout all of man’s body. Every cell, bone and nerve was being pulsed with His Life giving Spirit, through the works of the beating heart. This is the reason the author of Proverbs said “Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life.” (Proverbs 4:23 NKJV)

Man was created in God’s perfect image with a spirit, soul and body. In Bible Scriptures one will find references to God’s hands, feet, eyes, nose etc. One can then safely presume, since God is Spirit, that man’s body parts, created in His image, also have a spiritual function.

If Satan did not mislead man into sinning, man would eventually go against God’s will, for the first reference towards man’s heart in the Bible is rendered in a negative context. In Genesis 8:21 God states that “the imaginations of man’s heart is evil from his youth.”

The heart of Satan is rebellious, full of pride and without love. He knew that the inevitable would happen if man were to sin, which was, that God’s heart would turn away from man. Man would not experience intimacy with God anymore. Man can either choose to follow the heart of God or to follow the heart of Satan.

King David was the only person in the Bible referred to as a man with a “heart after God’s own heart.” Even though he also rebelled and sinned, he always came back to the Father. He understood what was needed to find and grow in intimacy with God. In Psalm 51 he states that it is a “broken spirit and a broken and contrite heart,” which God desires.

The heart of man is the place where the Holy Spirit is poured out and also indwells. It is where His conviction takes place and it is the place where the seed is planted and grows. Jesus says that He will knock and if one opens the door of one’s heart to Him, He will dine with the person (Revelations 3:20). This is the Salvation work of Christ. A person needs to invite Him into one’s heart and from the heart, the spirit of man will be touched and changed and this will overflow into the soul and the body of man. The person will then grow into a deeper and more intimate relationship with God, seeking His heart’s desires above anything else.

This is a display of the love of God, flowing from His heart for all mankind. He does not desire for any person to perish, but to dwell His presence for eternity.

The First Chapter of this thesis will explain how man is created in the perfect, tripartite image of God as a living spirit, soul and body. Not only man as a whole has a functionality in all three aspects, but every body part of man, including one’s organs, functions not only in the physical form, but in the spiritual and soulish form as well. The chapter will also explain the specific spiritual and soulish aspects of the heart and its importance to the whole body, for the heart acts as the bridge to the spirit, soul and body, where the Holy Spirit is able to do His work in man and bring conviction of the truth.

Chapter Two discussed the link between blood and the heart. God breathed the “breath of life” (Genesis 2:7) into man’s nostrils and man became a living soul according to Scriptures.

God's given Life is in the blood, which permeates through a person's body. The importance of blood and the spiritual function of the blood will be explained in detail. The Bible states that "life is in the blood," (Leviticus 17:11) and if a person receives the life giving "breath of God," (See Job 33:4) then this penetrates the body through the blood. The heart cannot function without life giving blood and blood is dependent on the heart to be able to flow throughout the body and enable it to supply every aspect with the nutrients and oxygen needed for survival.

Chapter Three offers an in-depth study about the different facets of God's heart, Satan's heart and the heart of man. Seed is planted in a person's heart and the fruit of the seed is what Jesus referred to as "the things that come out of the mouth come from the heart and these things defile a man" (Matthew 15:18). Satan is the deceiver and if a person thinks that one can stand on neutral ground and only follow after one's own heart, then the person's heart already belongs to Satan. According to Scripture, King David had a "heart after God's own heart," who carried out God's will in "its entirety" (Acts 13:22). This is what one needs to pursue in one's life, a heart following after God's own heart in its entirety. This will help a person grow into a deeper more personal relationship with God.

In Chapter Four, the physical development and functionality of man's heart will be discussed in detail and an analysis will be drawn toward the soulish and spiritual aspects pertaining to the cardiovascular system. From the first development of a fetus' heart, one can find a comparison between the spiritual development of a person not being born-again into righteousness.

God provides for man, whether one believes or not, but as soon as a person receives Jesus Christ as one's redeemer, one becomes born-again and one's heart changes into a fully functioning, life pumping organ.

This chapter will also link the heart with the kidneys and brain on a tripartite level and will offer proof that one's heart has its own nerve center and stores memories. This is possibly what the Bible refers to as "the thoughts and intents of the heart," (Hebrews 4:12).

According to Ephesians 6, Jesus clearly states that humankind's war is not against flesh and blood, but against the invisible principalities and power in the air. This invisible, spiritual enemy has to be fought with spiritual weapons and these weapons are mighty in Jesus Christ. He is the only deliverer from bondage.

Satan is the god of confusion and lies and Jesus came to destroy his works (Acts 10:38). The heart of man is either following after God or after Satan and the fruit that flows from one's heart is evidence of the one ruling inside. One needs a change of heart to be able to follow after God. He states in Ezekiel 11 that He wants to come and do a total heart transplant by removing the "heart of stone with a heart of flesh," so that His Spirit may indwell. One only need to turn one's heart toward Jesus Christ and repent, to be saved from deception, bondage and oppression by Satan and to be able to receive healing in one's spirit, soul and body.

The prophet Jeremiah wrote, "The heart is deceitful above all things, And desperately wicked; Who can know it? I, the LORD, search the heart, I test the mind, Even to give every man according to his ways, According to the fruit of his doings." (Jeremiah 17:9-10 NKJV)

Only God knows what is truly inside one's heart. One needs to ask one self the question, what will He find there? Does one need a change of heart?

---oOo---

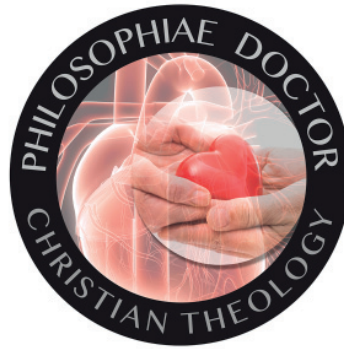


Table of Contents (Abbreviated)

TITLE PAGE	i
DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY	iii
DEDICATION.....	v
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	vii
OWNERSHIP AND RIGHTS TO INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY	ix
SUMMARY	xi
TABLE OF CONTENTS (Abbreviated)	xix
TABLE OF CONTENTS.....	xxi
 PROLEGOMENA	 1
 CHAPTER 1: THE DOCTRINE OF IMAGO DEI – MANKIND IN GOD’S IMAGE	 19
 CHAPTER 2: THE BODILY IMAGE OF MANKIND COMPARED TO THE IMAGE OF THE TABERNACLE	 71
 CHAPTER 3: THE PHYSIOLOGICAL AND SPIRITUAL FUNCTION OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM IN MANKIND	 161
 CHAPTER 4: EXPOSING SATAN’S AGENDA IN PREVENTING PEOPLE FROM A HEALTHY RELATIONSHIP WITH GOD	 215
 CHAPTER 5: CASE STUDIES	 255
 CONCLUSION:	 321
 TERMS AND DEFINITIONS.....	 333
ABBREVIATIONS.....	335
BIBLIOGRAPHY	337
CERTIFICATE OF EDITING.....	359

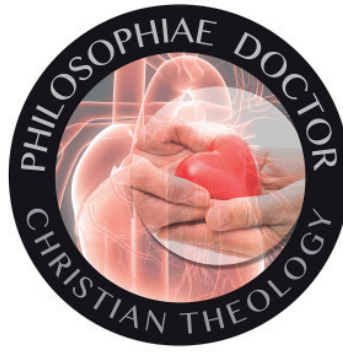


Table of Contents

PROLEGOMENA.....	1
 CHAPTER 1: THE DOCTRINE OF IMAGO DEI – MANKIND IN GOD’S IMAGE	
1. INTRODUCTION	19
2. IMAGO DEI.....	27
2.1 Defining Imago Dei	27
2.2 God’s Love in Imago Dei	27
2.3 Physicality in Imago Dei	28
2.4 Likeness of God	31
2.4.2 The “Likeness” of God	33
2.5 God Blew His Own Breath Into Man.....	34
3. MAN CREATED IN THE IMAGE OF THE TEMPLE	35
3.1 God’s Intention with the Tabernacle.....	36
3.2 The Old and The New	37
3.3 The Three Roomed Temple.....	38
3.4 Defining the Tabernacle/Temple	39
3.4.1 The Design of the Temple/Tabernacle	39

3.5	Man Compared to the Temple/Tabernacle.....	40
3.6	The Heart of the Tabernacle/Temple	41
3.6.1	Unveiling the Heart	44
4.	THE HOLY TRINITY	45
4.1	Divine Counsel Involved in Man's Creation	45
5.	MAN AS A TRIUNE BEING	47
5.1	The Respective Functions of the Spirit, Soul and Body	50
6.	THE HUMAN MAKEUP	52
6.1	Human Body Systems	53
6.2	Spiritual and Soul Functions of Body Organ.....	56
7.	THE HUMAN HEART	58
7.1	The Origin of the Heart.....	59
7.2	The Heart Gives Direction in Life.....	63

CHAPTER 2: THE BODILY IMAGE OF MANKIND COMPARED TO THE IMAGE OF THE TABERNACKLE

1.	INTRODUCTION	71
2.	NEW LIFE.....	82
2.1	Physiology of a Foetal Heart	82
2.1.1	Fetal Circulation.....	83
2.1.2	Immediate postnatal circulation	84

2.1.3	Normal Post-natal Circulation.....	85
2.2	Life of the Carnal Man	85
2.3	The Corrupted Heart.....	86
2.4	The First Breath of Life	88
2.5	The Restoration of the Spiritual Heart	90
3.	SALVATION VS REGENERATION	93
3.1	Defining Salvation.....	94
3.2	Defining Regeneration	94
3.3	Regeneration Before Saving Faith	95
3.4	Genuine Regeneration Must Bring Result in Life	96
4.	PHYSIOLOGICAL STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF THE HUMAN HEART ...	99
4.1	Physiological Definition for “Heart”	99
4.2	The Heart: The Physical Reality	99
5.	THE SPIRITUAL DIMENSIONS OF THE HEART	100
6.	THE PHYSIOLOGICAL HEART CHAMBERS AND THEIR CONNECTIONS	104
6.1	The Physiological Heart Valves	104
6.2	Myocardial Blood Supply	106
6.2.1	Major Coronary Arteries.....	106
7.	THE CARDIAC CONDUCTION SYSTEM	108

7.1	Pacemaker Cells	108
7.2	The Sinoatrial Node (SA Node)	109
7.3	The Atrioventricular Node (AV Node)	109
7.4	The Bundle of His	109
7.5	Purkinje Fibers.....	109
7.5.1	Repolarisation and Depolarisation.....	110
7.6	Arrhythmia	111
7.7	Cardiac Cycle	112
7.8	Cardio-pulmonary Blood Circulation	112
8.	THE SPIRITUAL CARDIAC FUNCTIONS.....	112
8.1	The Heart Valves and the Flow of Life.....	113
9.	CIRCUMCISION.....	114
9.1	Circumcision as a Symbol of Covenant.....	114
9.2	The Foreskin of the Spiritual Heart.....	116
9.3	Circumcision of the Heart	117
10.	SPIRITUAL CYCLES AND RHYTHMS.....	119
10.1	The Rhythm of God's Heart.....	121
10.2	God's Rhythm in Relationships	122
10.3	The Heart of Worship	122
10.4	The Rhythm in Covenant Relationships	125
10.5	Breaking of Covenant is Causing Arrhythmia	127

10.6	Arrhythmia in Relationship.....	128
11.	THE PHYSIOLOGICAL HEART-KIDNEY RELATIONSHIP	131
11.1	The Biblical Heart-Kidney Relationship	132
11.1.1	Kidneys Mentioned in the Bible	132
11.2	The Spiritual Kidney Function.....	133
11.2.1	The Kidneys as a Site of Punishment.....	135
12.	BLOOD PRESSURE	136
12.1	Spiritual Blood Pressure	138
13.	THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.....	140
13.1	Defining the Brain	141
13.2	Organization of the Nervous System.....	142
13.2.1	Central Nervous System.....	142
13.2.2	Peripheral Nervous System.....	142
13.2.3	Cerebrospinal Fluid	143
13.3	Defining The Mind	143
13.4	Biblical Definition for “mind”	144
13.4.1	The Heart as the Mind	145
13.4.2	The Spirit of Man as the Mind.....	146
13.4.3	The Soul as the Mind and Reason	147
13.5	The Physical Heart-Brain Relationship.....	147
13.5.1	The “Heart-Brain”	148

13.5.2	Emotions and the Heart.....	149
13.6	The Bible and the Heart/Mind.....	150
14.	CONCLUSION.....	152

CHAPTER 3: THE PHYSIOLOGICAL AND SPIRITUAL FUNCTION OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM IN MANKIND

1.	INTRODUCTION	161
2.	THE IMPORTANCE OF BLOOD	166
3.	GENESIS OF BLOOD	171
3.1	Physiological Blood	171
3.2	Spiritual Blood	174
4.	BLOOD DEFINED	176
5.	LIFE IN THE BLOOD.....	179
5.1	Understanding Father God's Heart Through the Blood	180
6.	DNA.....	181
6.1	Defining Spiritual DNA.....	183
7.	BLOOD FUNCTION	184
7.1	Blood Cleanses the Body	184
7.2	Blood is Necessary for Regeneration and Sanctification.....	186
7.3	Blood Nourishes the Body	188

7.4	Blood is Important for Healing	189
7.5	Blood is Essential for Homeostasis	191
7.6	Blood is a Messenger	193
7.7	The Legal Grounds	195
8.	BLOOD CIRCULATION	197
9.	THE HUMAN BODY’S PHYSIOLOGICAL CIRCULATORY SYSTEM.....	200
9.1	The Physiological Cardiovascular System	200
9.2	The Physiological Respiratory System	200
9.2.1	Breathing or Ventilation	201
10.	EXEGETICAL ETYMOLOGY PERTAINING TO THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM	201
10.1	Hebrew Words Related to “Heart”	202
10.2	Greek Words Related to “Heart”	203
11.	SPIRITUAL RESPIRATION	204
11.1	The Breath of God	205
11.2	Holy Spirit – The Breath of God.....	206
12.	CONCLUSION.....	209
 CHAPTER 4: EXPOSING SATAN’S AGENDA IN PREVENTING PEOPLE FROM A HEALTHY RELATIONSHIP WITH GOD		
1.	INTRODUCTION	215

2.	THE BODY OF CHIRST	217
2.1	God's Heart Desire for the Body of Christ	217
2.2	The Body of Christ Being a Matter of Life.....	218
3.	THE HEART OF GOD	219
3.1	God Speaks to One's Heart.....	221
4.	THE HEART OF SATAN	223
4.1	Satan's Aim.....	224
4.2	Satan's Strategy	227
5.	THE HEART OF MAN	231
5.1	The Condition of the Natural Heart of Man	231
5.1.1	Love Grown Cold.....	232
5.2	The Condition of a Hardened Heart.....	233
5.2.1	Corruptive "Leaven"	234
5.2.2	"Stiff Necked" People.....	236
5.3	A Propensity to Moral Failure	237
5.3.1	Evil.....	237
5.3.2	Perversion	239
5.4	Two Fundamental Defects.....	240
5.4.1	Pride	240
5.4.2	Pride Versus Self-Esteem.....	244
5.4.3	Deceitfulness	245

5.5	Deadening Conditions	248
5.5.1	Fat	248
5.5.2	Hard.....	249

CHAPTER 5: CASE STUDIES

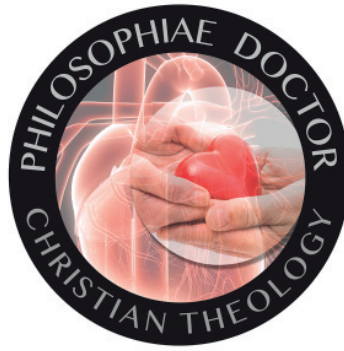
1.	INTRODUCTION	255
2.	UNRESOLVED/COMPLICATED GRIEF.....	259
2.1	Defining Trauma	259
2.2	Defining Grief.....	260
2.3	Defining Prolonged Grief	260
2.4	Traumatic Grief	262
2.5	Complications due to Prolonged Grief.....	262
3.	HEART CONDITIONS	264
3.1	Cardiovascular Disease.....	264
3.1.1	Defining Heart Disease.....	264
3.1.2	Cardiac Failure	265
3.1.3	Symptoms of Cardiac Failure	266
3.2	Spiritual Heart Failure	266
3.3	Cardiomyopathy.....	268
3.3.1	Spiritual Cardiomyopathy.....	268
3.3.2	Manifestation of Spiritual Cardiomyopathy	269

4.	CASE STUDIES FROM THE MEDICAL FIELD.....	269
4.1	A Case of Broken Heart Syndrome.....	269
4.1.1	Case Scenario	270
4.2	Peri-partum Cardiomyopathy due to Prolonged Grief and Unforgiveness.....	271
4.2.1	Case Scenario	271
4.3	Cardiac Failure due to Unresolved Grief	272
4.4	Atrial Fibrillation due to Post-traumatic Stress.....	273
4.4.1	Atrial Fibrillation	273
4.4.2	Case Scenario	274
4.4.3	Case Scenario	275
4.5	Bradycardia due to Yoga Exercises	275
4.5.1	Bradycardia.....	275
4.5.2	Yoga.....	276
4.5.3	Spirit of Death.....	278
4.5.4	Case Scenario	279
5.	SPIRITUAL COUNSELLING AND DELIVERANCE.....	280
5.1	Introduction to Spiritual Counselling and Deliverance	280
6.	CURSES AFFECTING THE BLOODLINES	282
6.1	Hearts of the Fathers	282
6.2	Defining Curses	283

6.3	Generational Curses.....	284
6.4	Bloodlines	285
6.5	Types of Curses and Reasons for Curses	285
6.6	Duration, Effect and Fruit of Curses	285
7.	CURSES THAT BLOCK BLESSINGS OVER GENERATIONS	287
8.	METHODS TO BREAKING GENERATIONAL CURSES.....	290
8.1	Recognize the Curse	291
8.2	Break the Curse.....	291
8.3	Reverse the Curse.....	291
8.4	Release the Power of Love.....	292
8.5	Develop a Godly Attitude	292
8.6	Align one's Words with God's Words.....	292
8.7	Accept God's Acceptance.....	292
8.8	Walk in Obedience.....	293
8.9	Prayer for Breaking Curses	293
9.	PHYSICAL GENERATIONAL CARDIAC CONDITIONS.....	293
9.1	Inherited Conditions.....	293
10.	SPIRITUAL ENTITIES POSSIBLY AFFECTING THE HEART	294
10.1	Leviathan	294
10.2	The Seven Heads of Leviathan	297

11.	THE JEZEBEL SPIRIT.....	300
12.	CASE STUDIES FROM COUNSELLING AND DELIVERANCE FIELD.....	302
12.1	Research Method	302
12.2	Initiation of Study	303
12.2.1	Study Findings	304
12.3	Case Study 1	305
12.3.1	Background.....	305
12.3.2	Baseline ECG	305
12.3.3	Follow Up ECG and Deliverance	306
12.3.4	Feedback.....	308
12.4	Case Study 2	308
12.4.1	Baseline ECG	309
12.4.2	ECG Graph where Relationship with the Holy Trinity is addressed	309
12.5	Conclusions Drawn from Study Findings.....	310
13.	Conclusion	310
	CONCLUSION.....	321

---oOo---



Prolegomena

God's will for His people is to live in good health and prosperity. It was never God's intention for people to get sick in the first place, for man was created in His perfect image. The fall of man caused sin to enter the world and with sin came disease and death. Jesus came so that people can "**have joy and an abundant life**" (John 10:10).

Many Christian leaders in the world in modern times do not understand diseases and they do not understand that most causes for diseases has a root issue in the demonic, with various psychological and biological manifestations.¹

Scripture clearly teaches that the real issues of life are spiritual and are really matters of the **heart**, the inner man. Maybe it is for this reason that the world "**heart**" is found multiple times in the Bible.²

The word "**heart**" can be translated a number of ways, depending on the context; the number of times it is found varies in the different translations of the English Bible (863 in NASB, 963 in the KJV, and 791 in the NIV). As these numbers suggest, the **heart** is a prominent concept and one of the most commonly used words of the Bible.

Most of these occurrences are used metaphorically of the inner man. When used metaphorically, **heart** refers to the mind, the emotions, the will, to the sinful nature, inclusively to the total inner man, or simply to the person as a whole and is often translated as such.

This proposed thesis will offer an explanation that in some, but not all exegetical references, the word "**heart**" is a direct indication of the **heart** of man and from this information the importance of the spiritual function of the **heart** will be highlighted.

¹ Wright, H.W. (2010), A MORE EXCELLENT WAY TO BE IN HEALTH, Be in Health, USA, p. 7

² BIBLE.ORG; Keathly, H.J. III (M.Th.) (Online Article) Date Published: 29th March 2007), Available From: <https://bible.org/article/guarding-heart>, Date Accessed: 25th January 2016]

The exegetical use of “**heart**” along with the way it is used strongly focuses one’s attention on the importance of the spiritual life and function of the **heart**. Like the human’s physical **heart**, the spiritual indication of the **heart** is central and vital in one’s existence.³

Acklin⁴ states that, the human **heart** has been created in the image and likeness of God’s divine **heart** and reflects upon human love in the divine plan.

“The marvel of man’s bodily appearance is not at all to be excepted from the realm of God’s image. This was the original notion, and we have no reason to suppose that it completely gave way... one will do well to split the physical from the spiritual as little as possible: the whole man is created in God’s image.”

(Von Rad, 1961, p.56) ⁵

To be able to reflect upon God’s heart one needs to understand the image in which man is created. Chris Russell⁶ explains that humanity is formed and breathed into with God’s own breath (Genesis 2:7). Man is fearfully and wonderfully made, with the capacity not only to create and produce, but also to love and be loved, because man is created in **God’s image**.

God in Triune relationship, God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit, exists in mutual life, loving, giving, preferring, honouring, and praising. Man, created in self-similarity to **His image**, is to replicate God in this loving relationship.

The Online Glossary⁷ explains “**Imago Dei**” or “**image of God**” as a theological term applied uniquely to humans, which denotes the symbolical relation between God and humanity.

The roots for “**imago Dei**” comes from Genesis 1:27, wherein “**God created man in his own image...**”

3 BIBLE.ORG; Keathly, H.J. III (M.Th.) (Online Article) Date Published: 29th March 2007), Available From: <https://bible.org/article/guarding-heart>, Date Accessed: 25th January 2016]

4 Acklin, T. (2006), *UNCHANGING HEART OF THE PRIESTHOOD*, Emmaus Road Publishing, E-Book

5 Von Rad, G. (1961), *GENESIS: A COMMENTARY*, Translated by John H. Marks, Westminster Press, USA, p. 56

6 Russell, C. (2012), *TEN LETTERS...TO BE OPENED IN THE EVENT OF MY DEATH*, Andrews UK Limited, UK, E-Book

7 GLOSSARY – Imago Dei, [Online] Available From: <http://www.pbs.org/faithandreason/theogloss/imago-body.html>, [Date Accessed: 2nd October 2015]

The term “*imago Dei*” refers to two things, which are God’s own self-actualization through humankind and God’s care for humankind. All this reveals how man’s *heart* is also supposed to reflect an image of God’s *heart*.

The moral implications of the doctrine of *imago Dei* are apparent in the fact that if humans are to love God, then humans must love other humans, as each is an expression of God. This reflects again upon the image of God’s *heart*.

God is infinite and there are things that one will never understand about Him. However, all that the Bible does reveal, a person ought to firmly apply to one’s general concept of who He is and how He is. Something that is fundamental to understanding God is His image.⁸

Generally speaking commentators assume the word “*image*” refers only to God’s attributes. Any time one has language in Scripture talking about God’s hands, head, feet, or the like it is explained as anthropomorphic⁹ language.

Nevertheless, the Scriptures demonstrate that where there is some prophetic vision or description of God one is catching a glimpse of His image (what He actually looks like).¹⁰ It is the opinion of this proposed thesis that, having a good grasp of the image of God will aid one in figuring out what the specific function and spiritual importance of the *heart* is.

Ferrell¹¹ explains that Jesus divided man up into four characters, namely, *heart*, spirit (soul), soul (mind) and body (strength).

‘And you shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength.’ This [is] the first commandment.

Mark 12:30 (NKJV)

8 Hamp, D. (2011), *CORRUPTING THE IMAGE, ANGELS, ALIENS AND THE ANTICHRIST REVEALED*, Defender Publishers, USA, p. 31-32

9 Anthropomorphic – See Terms and Definitions

10 Hamp, D. (2011), *CORRUPTING THE IMAGE, ANGELS, ALIENS AND THE ANTICHRIST REVEALED*, Defender Publishers, USA, p. 31-32

11 Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

Inside the body of man lies the **heart** of man, which is used by God as a conduit for the spirit of man to awaken. Every person has a desire to know God, for God placed in every person's **heart** a desire toward Him.¹²

Physically speaking, the **heart** is the central organ of the human body. The main function for the physical **heart** is to pump oxygen and nutrient rich blood throughout the whole body and to pump the oxygen depleted blood into the lungs, to repeat the cycle continuously. If the **heart** stops beating permanently, bodily life ends. This makes the **heart** an indispensable body part.¹³

People have another "**heart**" that is the centre of one's spiritual being. The Scriptures say: "**may your whole spirit, soul and body be preserved blameless...**" (1 Thessalonians 5:23). "A human being is a spirit that has a soul and lives in a physical body. The sense in which the term "**heart**" is used can indicate the "inner part," but it also includes the spirit's interactions and connections with the soul; which is the moral seat of humanity and consists of the mind, the will and the emotions." (Maldonado)¹⁴

This proposed thesis will state that although the **heart** is the centre of one's being, many people do not truly understand the **heart** and how it functions. Jesus not only came to reveal God the Father to people but also to reveal people to themselves. God wants people to understand the nature of one's **heart** and how it affects one's relationship with one's heavenly Father and other people, as well as the whole course of one's life.

The root of sin is pride and selfishness¹⁵, which is the opposite of the **heart** of God. It was this sin that caused Adam and Eve to want to be equal with God.

Ever since Satan prompted the first man and woman to reject God's command, turning away from His nature, an invisible war has been taking place for possession of the **hearts** of all human beings.

¹² Ibid

¹³ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION, CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 8-9

¹⁴ Ibid

¹⁵ See Mark 7:20-23

God's kingdom of light and Satan's kingdom of darkness are battling even now for one's **heart**. Whoever holds the **heart** of someone also holds the person's potential and the person's resources.

The Scripture juxtaposes two fundamental conditions of the human **heart**; a **heart** that has "**good treasure**" in it, and a **heart** that has "**evil treasure**" in it. (Luke 6:45). Any action a person takes, whether it is good or evil, comes from a motivation or intention of one's **heart**.¹⁶

Bickle¹⁷ writes that there is no greater testimony in Scripture of someone so weak and yet so great in God as that of David. Scripture teaches that God rendered him "**a man after my own heart**."¹⁸ He spent much time pondering and meditating on the emotions of God. He glorified in God's kindness, not in his own spiritual attainment. This is opposite of many believers in Christ.

Theologically speaking, sin leads to death, but empirically speaking, death in turn leads to sin. Haitch¹⁹ explains that death drives people towards sin because they experience life as a limited commodity in terms of scarcity instead of abundance.

Behold, the LORD's hand is not shortened, That it cannot save; Nor His ear heavy, That it cannot hear. But your iniquities have separated you from your God; And your sins have hidden His face from you, So that He will not hear.

Isaiah 59:1-2 (NKJV)

When Paul says in Romans 5:12 that death has spread to all people, he could be saying that sin leads to death or that death leads to sin.

Most Biblical translations translates the Greek phrase of this verse, "**ep ho pantes hemarton**" in a way that is grammatically correct though not contained in most bibles:

16 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION, CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA

17 Bickle, M. (2009), *AFTER GOD'S OWN HEART*, Charisma Media, USA, p. 14

18 See Acts 13:22

19 Haitch, R. (2007), *FROM EXORCISM TO ECSTASY: EIGHT VIEWS OF BAPTISM*, Westminster John Knox Press, UK, p. 5

“Death came through sin, and because of death all sinned.” This identifies death as the enemy.

Satan misleads people into believing in the self rather than putting their trust in God’s mercy and love. If a person does not seek after a heart after God’s own **heart**, and live for selfish needs, life becomes hard, cold, demanding and devoid of pleasure. Through separation from God, Satan leads people into cutting off their source of love and quietly put confidence in their own attainment, which will unavoidably lead to failure and self-blame. This is the opposite of what it means to have a **heart** after God’s **heart**.²⁰

This thesis proposes that a person needs to desire a life where one’s **heart** resonates with God’s **heart**. Through deception from Satan, sin, iniquity and transgression causes separation from God. This opens the door for entities from the kingdom of darkness to enter a person. This brings arrhythmia in the relationship between God and man.

It is one of the aims of this proposed thesis to use the information gathered through the research, to be able to design a tool, which can be used in the inner healing and deliverance practice.

The ultimate purpose for inner healing and deliverance is to glorify God, for He is the One who brings freedom. As a person wins the ground battle against sin, the person is being equipped to move into the next level of warfare. Smith²¹ states that the air war cannot be effectively waged unless and until one addresses the battle inside and the battle with others.

James wrote to the believers in Jerusalem: ***“Therefore submit to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you. Draw near to God and He will draw near to you. Cleanse your hands, you sinners; and purify your hearts, you double-minded.”*** (James 4:7-8)

In God’s heart rhythm, if one draws near to Him, He will reciprocate and draw near to the person.

20 Bickle, M. (2009), *AFTER GOD’S OWN HEART*, Charisma Media, USA, p. 14

21 Smith, E. (2008), *MAKING SENSE OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE*, Bethany House, USA, p. 72-73

Drawing near to God is through glorifying Him and worshipping Him in everything, inviting Him into all aspects of one's life.

James further gave the formula for drawing near. If a person committed sin the person needs to confess it and put it under the blood of Jesus. One needs to invite God to examine one's heart, one's motives. One needs to bring one's heart under His lordship and one's actions should be a manifestation of a clean heart and conscience. Just as David proclaimed:

Create in me a clean heart, O God, And renew a steadfast spirit within me. Do not cast me away from Your presence, And do not take Your Holy Spirit from me.

Psalm 51:10-11 (NKJV)

Formulation of Problem Statement

My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge. Because you have rejected knowledge, I also will reject you from being priest for Me; Because you have forgotten the law of your God, I also will forget your children. "The more they increased, The more they sinned against Me; I will change their glory into shame. They eat up the sin of My people; They set their heart on their iniquity.

Hosea 4:6-8 (NKJV)

The Word of God teaches that people are created in His perfect image, but because of The Fall in the Garden of Eden, that image became distorted. Due to transgressions, iniquity and sin, not only people, but society as a whole, are disease ridden. Even though one decides to accept Christ as one's redeemer and learn to live in the spirit instead of the soul, diseases are still prevalent.

Many Biblical scholars and inner healing and deliverance counsellors have gathered insight and wisdom into root causes for diseases through iniquity and sin, but there is no definite formula or construct, pinpointing the exact cause for specific diseases.

One of the main problems in society today is that people choose to place their faith in man and medicine instead of God. Wonders and miracles are covered up with deception of medical science.

It is much easier for a person to just take a tablet as a cure instead of going into prayer and supplication before a merciful Father and find out what the root issues are.

This research is not done to dismiss modern medical sciences, but want to place attention on the fact that God should not be dismissed in the discoveries of cures and wonders in the different medical fields. It is the opinion of this thesis that God is still sovereign and He is the One whom gives the people the knowledge to discover new innovative ways to help find relief for suffering, whether it is through medicine or through spiritual deliverance and inner healing practices.

One of the main spiritual problems in modern society is accessibility and the fast pace the world is running at, where anything comes easily and that people are satisfied to only receive immediate relief. The root causes never seems to be addressed and under the veil, the problem only grows bigger, and gets passed onto the following generations.

Through different medical, spiritual and epigenetic research, patterns started to immerge where certain lifestyles can be linked to certain diseases. It has been discovered that through faith, inner healing, deliverance and a change in lifestyle, a notable change the disease patterns occur. The problem is that people still ascribe disease and injury to such things as life stressors and refuse to recognize that their transgressions, iniquity and sin is an abomination to God. The Word teaches that people perish due to a lack of knowledge.

My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge. Because you have rejected knowledge, I also will reject you from being priest for Me; Because you have forgotten the law of your God, I also will forget your children.

Hosea 4:6 (NKJV)

In recent times there has been a large movement of people turning to alternative treatment plans instead of medical sciences. These treatment plans include such things as spirituality, alternative herbal medicine and meditation. Although these alternative treatment plans also might cause visible changes in health issues, this is mostly occult deception, which cause people to become even more separated from God and in the long run cause more root damage than good.

The occult practices are getting the forehand in treatment, because the Christian community is negligent and ignorant about the dark powers working in the background. Satan cannot construct anything original. He is not a creator, but copies and duplicates anything created by God. He is a thief, a liar and a deceiver and ignorant Christians get deceived into thinking that they are untouchable.

People working in the occult gain their power from the dark kingdom and they test and try anything given to them from their prince of darkness, the Satan. If the ignorant Christian community does not stand up and take the knowledge and authority through Jesus Christ and His Holy Spirit, evil medicine practices will have the forehand.

The **heart** of man is very important to God. There are over 900 verses in the Bible containing the word "**heart**." The **heart** is the place Holy Spirit indwells and it is the place where God's laws are written. Since man is created in whole as a spirit, soul and body, the **heart** of man also has a spiritual function, a soulish function as well as a bodily function.

It is the opinion of this thesis that, since the spirit of man is supposed to be in charge of the soul and body, anything in a person has a spiritual origin, which manifests in the physical.

The interest in this specific research topic is a result of long-term experience in the medical practice, specifically in the field of cardiology. Through this exposure, in-depth research from different fields of theology, as well as medicine, have been conducted.

Interviews during counselling sessions revealed patterns in different **heart** conditions, which can only be ascribed to spiritual rooted causes. This led to exploring what the possible causes for heart conditions can possibly be, and if there might be a better outcome in treating people through inner healing and deliverance practice.

The hypothesis formed from these discoveries, is that man's spiritual **heart** function, is rendered as vital in one's relationship with the different persons of the Holy Trinity, since it is a reflection of the image of God's **heart**.

The physical manifestation of **heart** conditions can possibly be ascribed to a relationship issue with one of the persons of the Holy Trinity and the person self. Any blockage of flow in relationship to any of the persons in the Trinity will cause that specific area of the **heart** to manifest in the physical, this also seem to affect relationships with other people.

A lack of faith in God's provision is one of the main areas that need to be addressed. God cannot have relationship with a person if the person does not even believe or have faith in His existence or provision. Holy Spirit conviction is the only thing that can help faith grow. God says in His Word that He wants to do a **heart** transplant. He wants to replace a **heart** of stone with a **heart** of flesh, so that His Spirit can dwell there.²²

The physical **heart** is the pump of life and the Bible also teaches that it is the wellspring of life.

Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it [spring] the issues of life.

Proverbs 4:23 (NKJV)

The Bible also teaches "**life is in the blood**."²³ This thesis will propose that the physical **heart** function is a duplication of the spiritual **heart** function where the Spirit filled life is pumped throughout the body to bring renewal daily. One needs to pray daily for renewal in the body and for the spiritual **heart** to pump strongly. That is why it is so important to guard one's **heart**.

Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life.

Proverbs 4:23 (NKJV)

The Purpose and Significance (Aim) of the Research

This thesis aims to:

- Create a better understanding about the image of man created in God's image, spiritually, soulish and physically

²² See Ezekiel 11:26

²³ See Leviticus 17

- Form an understanding that man's physical body parts are also created with function according to God's perfect image
- Explain how every body part of man has a spiritual significance as much as it has a physical significance in a person.
- Offer exegetical proof that the heart is a body part rendered separate from the spirit, soul and body of man, with significance importance
- To use the Temple/Tabernacle image of God and draw it toward the image of man to create a understanding of the spirit, soul, body and heart of man in connection with Father, Son and Holy Spirit
- Explain, through biological and physiological circulatory functions, how the spiritual function of the heart works in the body
- Use the physiology of the heart, to help the reader form an understanding about the Holy Spirit working in salvation of man
- Give evidence about the different relationships of man with the persons of the Holy Trinity and the importance of every relationship in the body
- Offer proof that the Satan uses different entities to prevent flow of Holy Spirit through the body, to block relationship between man and the different person's of the Holy Trinity
- Offer tools in inner healing and deliverance counselling, by describing the different functions of the powers of darkness in the blockage of flow in Holy relationships.
- Create a better understanding about cardiac conditions specifically and identify root spiritual causes for specific conditions
- Extend the principles of inner healing and deliverance tools pertaining to the **heart**, to deliverance and cleansing, by using the same prayer tools.

Objectives and Research Questions

Objectives

This research proposes to conclude the exegetical teachings about man, who are supposed to walk in complete health in the body of Christ, as man is created in God's perfect image.

It also proposes to explain how Satan, with his hidden agenda, causes disease to be prevalent, so that people are not able to walk in their full purpose for which they are created. Through the easy accessibility of medical treatment in modern day, people misplace their faith in mankind and medicine and forget that God is the One who brings healing.

Satan carries the knowledge that every person, created in the perfect image of God, has been created with a specific plan and purpose to fulfil in the Kingdom of God. Through deception, people remain in iniquity, transgression and sin, which causes spiritual as well as physical affliction and disease in the body.

Then he said to them, "Go your way, eat the fat, drink the sweet, and send portions to those for whom nothing is prepared; for this day is holy to our Lord. Do not sorrow, for the joy of the LORD is your strength."

Nehemiah 8:10 (NKJV)

Any spiritual and emotional wounding and afflictions eventually manifests through the physical body. Thus, a person who possesses hidden, unresolved issues, will eventually have manifestations in the physical body presenting with problems such as: shortcomings, stress related psychological and physical afflictions, or physical disease.

The heart is not only a vital body part for the physical body, but also in the soul part as well as the spirit part of man. It is the wellspring of life; the life pump of the body. In the spiritual heart research being conducted during this study, many relationship issues between the persons of the Holy Trinity and man has already been identified.

It is the opinion of this thesis that, if a person does not walk in complete relationship with Father God, Jesus Christ the Son of God, or with the Holy Spirit, in spirit and in truth, the person cannot obtain one's full Birthright. Many blockages in the heart cause obstruction in the Holy Spirit flow inside the Body, preventing Holy Spirit conviction.

There is hope for all mankind through faith in the redemptive work Jesus Christ of Nazareth did on the Cross.

Through Holy Spirit led counselling and deliverance by the will of Father God, one can attain freedom from afflictions caused by transgressions, iniquity and sin.

One's heart can come in line with the Father heart and one can learn how to draw nearer to Him and walk in full legitimacy.

Research Questions

The Objective of this Proposed Dissertation is to answer the following questions:

1. Does God's image only pertain to the spiritual aspect of man, or does it include the physical part of man as well?
2. How does the image of God's heart reflect upon man?
3. How does the Temple/Tabernacle built in the Old Testament relate to the image of God and of man?
4. What is the spiritual significance of the Ark of the Covenant and its contents?
5. How does the Ark of the Covenant relate to the heart of man?
6. What is a heart?
7. Does the heart of man only have a physical function or does it have a spiritual and soulful function as well?
8. How does the heart function relate to the relationship between man and the different persons of the Holy Trinity?
9. Why is the heart the place where the Holy Spirit indwells in man?
10. How can the heart be the wellspring of life according to Scripture?
11. How does the flow of life giving blood relate to Holy Spirit flow inside the body?
12. How does Satan block flow of relationships between man and the Holy Trinity, and how does this pertain to the heart?
13. Which entities from the kingdom of darkness are used to prevent a person to obtain legitimacy and how?
14. How does this relate to the heart?
15. How can a person recover the relationship between the self and the Holy Trinity?
16. How can a counsellor use this information in the counselling scenario?

17. How can the principles given through this study be extended toward different aspects other than man?

Thesis/Hypotheses/Research Statement

The proposed thesis will consist of the following hypotheses:

Hypothesis 1:

This proposed thesis would show that every person is created uniquely with a God given purpose and that Satan has a hidden agenda by using disease to prevent people from walking in their full legitimacy, which God created them for. Man is created in a perfect image and is supposed to be able to walk in spirit, soul and body in this image in perfect health.

Hypothesis 2:

This proposed thesis would offer proof that man's image is a reflection of the Temple/Tabernacle and that the Ark of the Covenant represents the heart. Through this hypothesis, the importance of the heart will be highlighted.

Hypothesis 3:

Hypothetically, all of man, including the different body parts, do not only have a physical function, but a spiritual function and a soulish function. According to Scripture, the heart is the dwelling place of the Holy Spirit, and is wellspring of life. The heart's different functions in spirit, soul and body will be examined.

Hypothesis 4:

The proposed thesis will hypothesize that a person's relationship with the different persons of the Holy Trinity and the self can be determined by the condition of the person's heart, this is the reason God judges the heart of man.

Hypothesis 5:

Satan knows the different spiritual aspects of the heart and will use his hidden agenda to cause blockages in the flow of the relationship with man and God.

Hypothesis 6:

Any physical ailment has a root cause in the spiritual realm. Physical heart condition then has a spiritual cause, which will be examined. Hypothetically, through tools given by Holy Spirit in inner healing and deliverance counselling, it is possible to a person to attain full spiritual, emotional and physical health.

Demarcation Including Scope and Limitations

The thesis holds that the Bible is a complete, sufficient foundation for medical and emotional health and provides a source of healing for all non-clinical based emotional and medical disorders. The idea that all non-clinically based medical and emotional disorders has a spiritual, Christ centred solution, rather than a physiological, self-centred solution is explored in this thesis.

The primary purpose of this proposed thesis is to describe and explain how the heart of man has a vital role in the spiritual part of the body, which will manifest in the physical body. Satan also carries this knowledge and through deception, he leads people into faith in alternative medical treatments rather than God. Through blockages caused by transgressions, iniquity and sin, the relationship between man and God is distorted.

The purpose of this thesis is not to discredit or nullify medical ways to solve ailments, but rather to contrast and compare it's way to that of the Bible and Holy Spirit led counselling.

Another purpose of this proposed thesis is to apply the knowledge gained through the research to develop a counselling and deliverance tool to specifically address spiritual, emotional and physical cardiac ailments.

Literature Review

In constructing this research project, executing the research and analysing the data, a broad and deep body of literature was considered.

This literature crosses disciplines, including human Biology and Physiology, Philosophy, Theology, Psychology, Psychiatry, Sociology, Phenomenology, Demonology and Satanism. Data has also been gathered through interviews and case studies conducted.

It is instructive to examine only some of the key texts, theories and concepts, which inform and underpin this research. It will help to put the topic of the thesis in a larger scholarly and ethnographic context.

Thesis Research Methodology and Approach

A combination of diverse qualitative designed methodology types are intended to be used as analysis in hermeneutics, phenomenology, sociology, biology, physiology, psychology and exegesis.

The academic report is audience oriented:

- It will demonstrate an in-depth understanding of the topic
- Answers reader's important questions about the topic
- Defines the terms and concepts the readers need to know
- Uses language the reader will understand
- Uses persuasion, not undocumented assertions, to argue the topic
- The report will use peer reviewed publications or other reliable, credible, sources to support ideas.

The study will include:

- Data collection and literature review obtained from books, magazine articles and Internet information, dictionaries, Master- and Doctor Theses.
- Information gathered through case studies in medical- and counselling fields

The approaches will be as follows:

- Scientific knowledge will be gained through observation and studies.

Referencing

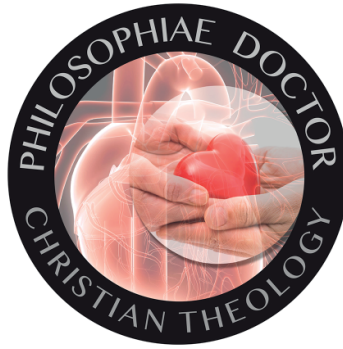
The Harvard referencing method will be used in the bibliography and footnotes will be used at the end of each page where applicable.

Case studies, from medical as well as counselling fields will also be used as a reference tool.

Special Terminology

Special terminology will be shown alphabetically in an appendix at the end of the thesis. Emphasis will be put on the terms and terminology as used in the field of medicine and theology.

---oOo---



Chapter One

THE DOCTRINE OF IMAGO DEI – MANKIND IN GOD’S IMAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

THE DEEPEST SENSE OF “HEART” IS THE GENUINE, THE AUTHENTIC MAN.... MAN IS MADE UP OF MANY LAYERS. HE WHO PENETRATES THE DEEPEST LAYER (THE HEART) COMES TO KNOW HIMSELF THOROUGHLY.

F.H. VON MEYENFELDT¹

To say that humans are in the **image of God** is to recognize the special qualities of human nature, which allows God to be made manifest in humans. Being created in the **image of God** implies that humans have the conscious recognition of their being in the **image of God** and that they are the created beings through which God’s plans and purposes can be made known and be actualized. In this way humans can be seen as co-creators with God.

The moral implications of the doctrine of **imago Dei** are apparent in the fact that, IF HUMANS ARE TO LOVE GOD, THEN HUMANS MUST LOVE OTHER HUMANS, AS EACH IS AN EXPRESSION OF GOD.² This statement in itself offers an image of God’s heart.

The freedom, which makes the human in **God’s image**, is the same freedom, which manifests itself in estrangement from God, as with the fall of man exemplifies. Thus, the ability and desire to love one’s self and others, and therefore, God, can become neglected and even opposed. Striving to bring about the **imago Dei** in one’s self, as pointed to in Christ’s life and teachings.

Dr. Ana Mendez-Ferrell³ explains that, to be created in God’s image means, who ever looked

¹ Von Meyenfeldt, F.H. (1950), *HET HART (LEB, LEBAB) IN HET OUDE TESTAMENT*, Leiden, Brill, p. 221

² GLOSSARY – *Imago Dei*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.pbs.org/faithandreason/theogloss/imago-body.html>, [Date Accessed: 2nd October 2015]

³ Mendez-Ferrell, A. Dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, FL, USA, The Voice of Light Ministries, Kindle Book

upon man, would recognize God in him. As Jesus said to His disciple Phillip: “**He who has seen Me has seen the Father**” (John 14:9)

Generally speaking commentators assume the word “**image**” refers only to God's attributes. Any time one has language in Scripture talking about God's hands, head, feet, or the like it is explained as anthropomorphic language.

Nevertheless, the Scriptures demonstrate that where there is some prophetic vision or description of God one is catching a glimpse of **His image** (what He actually looks like). Having a good grasp on the idea of being created in the **image of God**, will aid a person in figuring out how the enemy has tried to destroy the image in people in the past and will deceive the world in the future.

It is simple enough for a person to grasp the concept of **God's physical image**. God has created Adam and humanity in His image and likeness but scholars perhaps fear that if the language of God's hands, feet, head, and hair were taken too literally it might lead people to reduce God into man's image. The opposite is true, for people were created perfectly in **God's image and likeness** but the fall of sin corrupted that image.⁴

Scripture teaches that “**God is Spirit**,” (John 4:24), and a person should not adapt the information and form a concept of God having a physical body. According to Grudem⁵, the question can be asked, “*is there any sense in which one's human body is part of what it means to be made in God's image?*”

People need to appreciate the ways in which they are “**like God**” can be enhanced by the realization that, unlike the rest of God's creation, a person has the ability to grow to become more like God throughout one's life.

One's ability to rule over creation can be extended by faithful use of the gifts God has given people; one's faithfulness to the God-given purposes for one's creation as man and woman can be increased as one follows biblical principles in one's family, one's creativity can be

⁴ Ibid p. 32

⁵ Grudem, W.A. (2009), *SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY: AN INTRODUCTION TO BIBLE DOCTRINE*, USA, Harper Collins, E-Book

employed in ways which are more and more pleasing to God; one's emotions can be more and more conformed to patterns of Scripture so that the person can become more like **David, a man after God's own heart** (1 Samuel 13:14)^{6,7}

In the opinion of this thesis, A PERSON CANNOT REFLECT GOD'S TRUE IMAGE, UNLESS HIS **HEART CONTINUES TO BE TRANSFORMED** INTO A HEART AFTER GOD'S OWN HEART; SO THAT ONE THINKS AS HE THINKS, FEELS AS HE FEELS AND LOVES AS HE LOVES.

As Hayford⁸ explains, people are accountable and responsible to God for the way they use all that He has given them. People should never be pleased to live on a level of existence lower than that to which God has called them, and for which He has equipped them. Because of all He has given people, they should make it their aim to be faithful stewards of the life He has entrusted to them. People's **hearts** should be a reflection of God's **heart**.

When looking at the Old Testament, it was never God's intention that the Hebrews should approach Him by trying to keep the Ten Commandments; the Ten Commandments cannot offer the blood evidence of a life given. God intended the Hebrews to approach Him the way He had always intended, which is through a blood sacrifice for the forgiveness of sin. The commandments were supposed to be kept in their **hearts**. That is God's provision. Later on in Scripture one reads what God's intention were all along:

"For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, says the LORD: I will put My laws in their mind and write them on their hearts; and I will be their God, and they shall be My people." (See Hebrews 8:9-10)

Therefore God established a Tabernacle, a sacrifice system and priesthood as the way for the Hebrew to approach Him. The Hebrews were not to approach God by the Ten Commandments but through the sacrifice administered by the priest at the Tabernacle. One can read about God's reminder that He went into covenant with His people in the Psalms.

6 Also See Acts 13:22

7 Grudem, W.A. (2009), *SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY: AN INTRODUCTION TO BIBLE DOCTRINE*, Harper Collins, USA, E-Book

8 Hayford, J.W. (Ed.) (1995), *SPIRIT FILLED LIFE BIBLE FOR STUDENTS GROWING IN THE POWER OF THE WORD*, NKJV, USA, Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 4

“Gather My saints together to Me, Those who have made a covenant with Me by sacrifice.”

Psalm 50:5 (NKJV)

Everything was written on stone or scrolls while, even in the Old Testament, people were expected to ***“write it on their hearts and souls”*** by MAKING THE WRITTEN WORD A VERY PART OF THEMSELVES, THEIR CHARACTER (See Deuteronomy 11:18). God also ordered people to ***“command your children to be careful to observe all the words of the law.”*** (Deuteronomy 32:46)

Ferrell⁹ explains, inside the body of man lies the ***heart*** of man, which is used by God as a conduit for the spirit of man to awaken. Every person has a desire to know God, for God placed in every person's ***heart*** a desire toward Him. This is confirmed in Ecclesiastes when the author states that every person has ***“eternity in their hearts.”*** (See Ecclesiastes 3:11)

Every person has a need to know and to love God. Because some people do not know who God is and have not seen God face to face, their ***hearts*** have not been touched. They cannot see the Father or recognize Him.¹⁰

The union of the material (physical body) and immaterial (spiritual body) results in a living soul. Thus, the soul represents the human as alive with life that consists of emotions, passions, drives and appetites.¹¹

In the beginning of the 20th century, theological scholars such as dr. W. Nee saw the spirit made up of the composition of communion, intuition and conscience. It was also proclaimed that the soul is a combination of the mind, will and emotions. In the opinion of this thesis, this revelation is still relevant in modern teachings and forms a good foundation, but it does not stop there. It has been growing and God has brought new insight and Holy Spirit revelation into the information through different scholars.

9 Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKl>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

10 Ibid

11 Waltke, B. *TWOT – “nefesh”*, p. 587-591

As far as one's constitutional makeup, the human being is biblically depicted as a soul composed of a material body and immaterial spirit. Many other terms referring to parts of the body e.g. head, eye, ear, hands, feet, kidneys etc. are used simply for the anatomical part, or as a way of speaking of the human function associated with the bodily part.

It is important to note that although Scriptures depict humans as having a dualistic composition of a material body and an immaterial spirit, these dimensions function together and also holistically. The ear for example is used to depict the function of hearing, but technically, other parts of the body, such as the brain, are also involved in hearing and thereby the whole person hears.¹²

The biblical reference to the heart is used like the other body parts, both for the physical organ, but most often and certainly most importantly as the figure as the centre of the human person. As the deep centre of the person, the heart is the centre of the soul or the person. As Oehler¹³ states, it is the place “*in which the soul is at home with itself, and is conscious of all it's doing and suffering as its own.*”

The Life Application Study Bible, New Living Translation, Second Edition (Tyndall House: 2007)¹⁴ states that for Hebrew writers, important functions of life were assigned to different physical organs. The heart was considered the core of a person's intellect and spirit. Emerson L. Ferrell¹⁵ is of opinion that man's spirit needs to be awakened through the heart.

According to Scripture, God replaces one's heart of stone with a heart of flesh.

And I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them an heart of flesh: That they may walk in my statutes, and keep mine ordinances, and do them: and they shall be my people, and I will be their God.

Ezekiel 11:19-20 (NKJV)

12 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 23

13 Oehler, G.F. (1950), *THEOLOGY OF THE OLD TESTAMENT*, Zondervan, MI, USA, p. 153

14 *LIFE APPLICATION STUDY BIBLE, NEW LIVING TRANSLATION, SECOND EDITION*, (2007), IL, USA, Tyndall House Publications, p. 1324

15 Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

When man's heart becomes sensitive to God, then the heart becomes a conduit for the spirit of man to awaken. That is when redemption takes place and salvation begins to have its work through the being of man.

Every person has a need to love God and know Him, but because a person does not know who God is and have not seen God face to face, their hearts have not been touched and they cannot see the Father, they cannot recognize the Father.

Because man functions in the soul and not in the spirit, like it was God's intention for man to do, it is necessary for a person's soul to find healing and recovery to be able to understand how one is created in God's image. Once a person can start to relate to God as a being created in His image, one can start to have faith and from that having hope in His provision. As soon as a person starts to believe that God is the provider, love comes forth for Him and a relationship grows stronger.

The person then becomes convicted by Holy Spirit about God's divine nature and will then be able to make a choice whether they want God to indwell.

As soon as the person confesses from the heart that Jesus is the Son of God and that He died for all people's sin so that one does not have to perish, then Holy Spirit will start to indwell in a person's heart.¹⁶

Thomas¹⁷ states that, it is through the heart that the spirit can be renewed and refreshed. The Bible cautions one to "**Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it [spring] the issues of life**" (Proverbs 4:23). If a person's heart is not in a healthy state one's spirit is not either. If one's spirit is not in a healthy state then one's soul, which is dependent on one's spirit for life, is not going to be in a healthy state.

The state of one's heart, therefore one's spirit and soul, can also affect one's physical health as the spirit flows throughout the body. If the heart is in poor condition however, as a result of sin and not being in the right relationship with God, the spirit flowing from the heart will not be filling the soul with renewed life and vitality, but rather with seed sown from the kingdom of darkness.

¹⁶ Ibid

¹⁷ Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, p. 72

Saucy¹⁸ is of opinion that IT IS THE HEART OF A PERSON THAT DIRECTS THE PERSON'S LIFE, BUT IT IS ALSO THE PERSON WHOM DIRECTS THEIR HEART. The person controls what goes in and out of the heart, which then determines the person's activities and responses in life.

Scripture also teaches that PEOPLE LIVE THEIR LIFE FROM THE HEART. Everything that comprises one's life as a person, one's thoughts, attitudes, feelings, impulses and desires, one's speech and action, all spring from one's heart. In short, A PERSON'S HEART IS THE DIRECTOR OF ONE'S LIFE.¹⁹

No one in Scripture taught that the heart is the source of life more plainly than Jesus Himself. In response to those who accused Him of casting out demons by the power of the devil, he said: **“Brood of vipers! How can you, being evil, speak good things? For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks. A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good things, and an evil man out of the evil treasure brings forth evil things”** (Matthew 12:34-35 NKJV).

Saucy²⁰ explains that the implications of this teaching are clear; good words and good behaviour do not spring from mere resolutions but from one's being. What defines a person's character and the activities of one's life are the content of the storehouse of one's heart where one has stored up treasure of either good or evil.

As Jesus words attest, one's speech is the primary way of displaying who one is, and that revelation can sometimes be surprising. F. Dale Bruner²¹ points out in his comment on Jesus' teaching: *“Speech... is the overflow of our being; it is the main way in which we express what we are; it is the major fruit of our personhood; speech is the self-expressed out (pressed out).”*

18 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, pp. 32-34

19 Ibid p.33

20 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, pp. 32-34

21 Bruner, D.F. (1987), *THE CHRISTBOOK: MATTHEWS 1-12; Matthews Commentary Vol. 1*, Dallas, TX, USA, Word, p. 465

Scripture not only teaches that the heart is the director of one's life but that one needs to direct the heart. Thus, one is exhorted: "**Hear, my son, and be wise; And guide your heart in the way.**" (Proverbs 23:19 NKJV); "**Keep your heart with all diligence...**" (Proverbs 4:23 NKJV). One's oversight of one's heart is also seen in the Lord's command:

"Do not lay up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy and where thieves break in and steal; but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys and where thieves do not break in and steal. For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

Matthew 6:19-21 (NKJV)

As beings created in God's image it is one's nature to love. Love's dynamic is to seek its object and cling to it with a binding force. Thus, it is one's very nature to seek out and join to one self what one really values or treasures.

What Jesus tells people is that **THE TREASURE ONE CHOOSES TO LOVE AND STORE UP WILL FINALLY CONTROL ONE IN SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY.** One's heart will be where one's treasure is.²²

D.A. Carson²³ explained: "*The things most highly treasured occupy the heart, the centre of the personality, embracing mind, emotions and will... and thus the most cherished treasure subtly but infallibly controls the whole person's directions and values.*"

The Bible teaching that the heart is the real person, and the source and director of all personal activities, surely means that the care of one's heart is to be the supreme task of one's life. The heart deserves to be guarded, more than any treasure, for it is one's treasure of greatest value, i.e. one's self (see Mark 8:36-37).

WHAT ONE BRINGS INTO THE HEART AND WHAT ONE EXPELS FROM THE HEART ALL DETERMINE WHO ONE IS, THE DIRECTION OF ONE'S LIFE'S JOURNEY AND ONE'S DESTINY.²⁴

22 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 74

23 Carson, D.A., (1984), *MATTHEW, MARK, LUKE VOL. 8, EBC*, MI, USA, Zondervan, p. 177

24 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 74

2. IMAGO DEI

2.1 Defining Imago Dei

“Imago Dei” or ***“image of God”*** is a theological term applied uniquely to humans, which denotes the symbolical relation between God and humanity. The roots for ***“imago Dei”*** comes from Genesis 1:27, wherein ***“God created man in His own image...”***²⁵

This means that humans mirror His divinity in their ability to actualize the unique qualities with which they have been endowed, and which make them different than all other creatures: rational structure, complete centeredness, creative freedom, a possibility for self-actualization²⁶, and the ability for self-transcendence²⁷.

The term ***“imago Dei”*** refers to two things, which are God's own self-actualization through humankind and God's care for humankind.

To say that humans are in the **image of God** is to recognize the special qualities of human nature, which allows God to be made manifest in humans. Being created in the **image of God** implies that humans have the conscious recognition of their being in the **image of God** and that they are the created beings through whom God's plans and purposes can be made known and be actualized. In this way humans can be seen as co-creators with God.

2.2 God's Love in Imago Dei

The moral implications of the doctrine of ***imago Dei*** are apparent in the fact that, IF HUMANS ARE TO LOVE GOD, THEN HUMANS MUST LOVE OTHER HUMANS, AS EACH IS AN EXPRESSION OF GOD.²⁸

25 GLOSSARY – *Imago Dei*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.pbs.org/faithandreason/theogloss/imago-body.html>, [Date Accessed: 2nd October 2015]

26 Self-actualization – See Terms and Definitions

27 Self-transcendence – See Terms and Definitions

28 GLOSSARY – *Imago Dei*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.pbs.org/faithandreason/theogloss/imago-body.html>, [Date Accessed: 2nd October 2015]

Brand²⁹ concurs by stating that man is a love being. **“For the brute universe with all of its glories cannot respond to the love of God, man was created by love, for love and to reciprocate love.”**

According to the Glossary³⁰, humans are different from other created creatures because of their rational structure in which they can have free decision-making.

This freedom gives humans a centeredness and completeness, which allows the possibility for self-actualization and participation in a sacred reality.

The freedom, which makes the human in **God's image**, is the same freedom, which manifests itself in estrangement from God, as with the fall of man³¹ exemplifies. Thus, the ability and desire to love one's self and others, and therefore, God, can become neglected and even opposed. Striving to bring about the **imago Dei** in one's self, as pointed to in Christ's life and teachings.

Dr. Ana Mendez-Ferrell³² explains that, to be created in God's image means, who ever looked upon man, would recognize God in him. As Jesus said to His disciple Phillip: **“He who has seen Me has seen the Father”** (John 14:9)

2.3 Physicality in Imago Dei

Hamp³³ expands on the concept by offering an explanation that, something that is fundamental to understanding God is His image. There are many things that one will never understand about God, for God is infinite. However, all that the Bible does reveal, a person ought to firmly apply to one's general concept of who He is and how He is.

29 Brand, Connie M.J. Prof. Dr. (2007), *TEACHING MANUAL I B, MODULE 5 – 10, THEOLOGY*, The Doctrine of Man, Pretoria, SA, Unpublished

30 GLOSSARY – *Imago Dei*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.pbs.org/faiethandreason/theogloss/imago-body.html>, [Date Accessed: 2nd October 2015]

31 **Fall of man – In Christian theology, the fall of man is a term used to describe the moment sin entered into the world, which brought forth the transition of the first man and woman from a state of innocent obedience to God to a state of guilty disobedience. The Fall doctrine comes from a biblical interpretation of Genesis chapter 3.**

32 Mendez-Ferrell, A. Dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, FL, USA, The Voice of Light Ministries, Kindle Book

33 Hamp, D. (2011), *CORRUPTING THE IMAGE, ANGELS, ALIENS AND THE ANTICHRIST REVEALED*, USA, Defender Publishers, p. 31-32

Generally speaking commentators assume the word “**image**” refers only to God’s attributes. Any time one has language in Scripture talking about God’s hands, head, feet, or the like it is explained as anthropomorphic³⁴ language.

Nevertheless, the Scriptures demonstrate that where there is some prophetic vision or description of God one is catching a glimpse of **His image** (what He actually looks like). Having a good grasp on the idea of being created in the **image of God**, will aid a person in figuring out how the enemy has tried to destroy the image in people in the past and will deceive the world in the future.

It is simple enough for a person to grasp the concept of **God’s physical image**.

God has created Adam and humanity in His image and likeness but scholars perhaps fear that if the language of God’s hands, feet, head, and hair were taken too literally it might lead people to reduce God into man’s image. The opposite is true, for people were created perfectly in **God’s image and likeness** (what He looks like and how He acts) but the fall of sin corrupted that image.³⁵

Scripture teaches that “**God is Spirit**,” (John 4:24), and a person should not adapt the information and form a concept of God having a physical body. According to Grudem³⁶, the question can be asked, “*is there any sense in which one’s human body is part of what it means to be made in God’s image?*”

Even though a person’s physical body should be taken to imply that God Himself has a physical body, are there still some ways in which one’s body reflect something of God’s own character and thereby constitute part of what it means to be created in the **image of God**?

Grudem³⁷ is of opinion that this is true in some respects. For example, one’s physical body gives one the ability to see with one’s eyes. This is a God like quality, for God Himself can see, and sees far more than people will ever see, although He does not see with physical eyes like humans do.

34 Anthropomorphic – See Terms and Definitions

35 Ibid p. 32

36 Grudem, W.A. (2009), *SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY: AN INTRODUCTION TO BIBLE DOCTRINE*, USA, Harper Collins, E-Book

37 Ibid

People's ears give them the ability to hear, and this is a Godlike ability, even though God does not have physical ears. People's mouths have the ability to speak, reflecting the fact that God expresses Himself through speech. One's senses of taste and touch and smell gives a person the ability to understand and enjoy God's creation, reflecting the fact that God Himself understands and enjoys His creation, though in a far greater sense than man does.

This makes it clear for a person to recognize that MAN HIMSELF IS CREATED IN THE **image of God**, not just his spirit or his mind. Certainly a person's physical body is a very important part of one's existence, and, as transforms when Christ returns, it will be part of one's existence until eternity.³⁸

Humans' physical bodies are created as suitable instruments to represent, in a physical way, their human nature, which has been made in the **likeness of God's** own nature. In fact, almost everything a person does, is done by means of the use of one's physical body; thinking, moral judgements, prayer and praise, demonstrations of love and concern for each other; all are done using the physical bodies God has given people.

Scripture is clear about this when reading 2 Timothy 2, where the Word states that if one "cleanses himself from dishonour," **"he will be a vessel for honour, sanctified and useful for the Master, prepared for every good work,"** (verse 21).

Therefore, if people are pointing out the fact that God does not have a physical body, one may say that people's physical bodies in various ways reflect something of God's own character as well. Moreover, much physical movement and demonstration of God-given skill comes about through the use of one's body.³⁹

38 According to Matthew Henry's Concise Commentary (Christianity.com), in 1 Corinthians 15: 43-45, it can be understood that believers shall, at the resurrection of Christ, have bodies made fit to be forever united with their spirits made perfect. By the supply of the Holy Spirit to the soul the body will be quickened and changed. The dead in Christ shall not only rise, but shall rise thus gloriously changed. The bodies of the saints, when risen, will be changed. They will be glorious and spiritual bodies, fitted to the heavenly world and state, where they are ever afterwards to dwell. The human body in its present form, and with its wants and weaknesses, cannot enter or enjoy the kingdom of God.

39 Grudem, W.A. (2009), *SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY: AN INTRODUCTION TO BIBLE DOCTRINE*, USA, Harper Collins, E-Book

2.4 Likeness of God

One way or another, all of creation reflects some **likeness to God**, but it is important to recognize that only man, out of all the creation, is so like God that he can be said to be “**in the image of God.**”

This Scriptural affirmation, together with the Scriptural commands, that one is to imitate God in one's life⁴⁰, and the observable fact that one can recognize in looking at one self and the rest of creation, all indicate that people are much more like God than all the rest of creation. In some respects the differences are absolute, and in other respects they are relative, but they are all significant.

People need to appreciate the ways in which they are “**like God**” can be enhanced by the realization that, unlike the rest of God's creation, a person has the ability to grow to become more like God throughout one's life.

One's ability to rule over creation can be extended by faithful use of the gifts God has given people; one's faithfulness to the God-given purposes for one's creation as man and woman can be increased as one follows biblical principles in one's family, one's creativity can be employed in ways which are more and more pleasing to God; one's emotions can be more and more conformed to patterns of Scripture so that the person can become more like **David, a man after God's own heart** (1 Samuel 13:14)^{41, 42}

In the opinion of this thesis, in concurrence with Grudem⁴³, A PERSON CANNOT REFLECT GOD'S TRUE IMAGE, UNLESS HIS **HEART CONTINUES TO BE TRANSFORMED INTO A HEART AFTER GOD'S OWN HEART; SO THAT ONE THINKS AS HE THINKS, FEELS AS HE FEELS AND LOVES AS HE LOVES.**

40 See Ephesians 5:1; 1 Peter 1:16

41 Also See Acts 13:22

42 Grudem, W.A. (2009), *SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY: AN INTRODUCTION TO BIBLE DOCTRINE*, Harper Collins, USA, E-Book

43 Grudem, W.A. (2009), *SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY: AN INTRODUCTION TO BIBLE DOCTRINE*, Harper Collins, USA, E-Book

2.4.1 Uniqueness of Man

I will praise You, for I am fearfully [and] wonderfully made; Marvelous are Your works, And [that] my soul knows very well. My frame was not hidden from You, When I was made in secret, [And] skillfully wrought in the lowest parts of the earth. Your eyes saw my substance, being yet unformed. And in Your book they all were written, The days fashioned for me, When [as yet there were] none of them.

Psalm 139:14-16 (NKJV)

When looking at the verses above an understanding can be formed about man's creation. It states that, before there even existed days, God already planned one's creation and life.

According to Brand⁴⁴, Man is a created being who owes his existence to a Creator and maintainer of all things. In the verses in Genesis 1:27 "**God created man in His own image; in the image of God He created him,**" two words stand out that need thorough consideration. The author of Genesis used the terms "**make**" and "**create**" in the same text. Two words are being used with different meanings.

The Merriam Webster Dictionary⁴⁵ defines the word "**create**" as follows: "**to cause (a particular situation) to exist,**" meaning, to bring something into existence or to **make something out of nothing**.

The Dictionary also offers the definition for "**make**" as follows: "**to bring into being by forming, shaping, or altering material.**"

Thus, for a person to be able to **create** something requires the action of bringing something into existence from nothing, where as, if one **makes** something, a material of some sort is used and altered into something different.

God **created** man as to a spirit and soul. (Brand)⁴⁶

44 Brand, Connie M.J. Prof. Dr. (2007), *TEACHING MANUAL I B, MODULE 5 – 10, THEOLOGY*, The Doctrine of Man, Self Published, SA, p. 3

45 THE MERRIAM WEBSTER DICTIONARY – *Create* (2015), [Online] Available From: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/create>, [Date Accessed: 12th October 2015]

46 Brand, Connie M.J. Prof. Dr. (2007), *TEACHING MANUAL I B, MODULE 5 – 10, THEOLOGY*, The Doctrine of Man, Self Pub-

The burden of the word of the LORD for Israel, saith the LORD, which stretcheth forth the heavens, and layeth the foundation of the earth, and formeth the spirit of man within him.

Zachariah 12:1 (NKJV)

But God **made** man as to his body, in His “**likeness**.”

And the LORD God formed man [of] the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.

Genesis 2:7 (NKJV)

2.4.2 The “Likeness” of God

And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

Genesis 1:26 (NKJV)

Here God tells mankind that they were **made** in His “**image**” and in His “**likeness**”. Piper explains that one might find it difficult to interpret the terms “**image**” and “**likeness**,” since it can denote to a physical imagery of God, or it can be a reference to God's divine character, or toward His attributes.⁴⁷

The Bible teaches that God is the eternal One and that there is none like Him in heaven above, on the earth or below the earth.

“Therefore know this day, and consider [it] in your heart, that the LORD Himself [is] God in heaven above and on the earth beneath; [there is] no other.

Deuteronomy 4:39 (NKJV)

lished, SA, p. 3

47 John Piper (March 1971), *The Image of God An Approach from Biblical and Systematic Theology*, Studia Biblica et Theologica, Available From: <http://www.desiringgod.org/articles/the-image-of-god>, [Date Accessed: 2nd October 2015]

“Thus says the LORD, the King of Israel, And his Redeemer, the LORD of hosts: ‘I [am] the First and I [am] the Last; Besides Me [there is] no God.

Isaiah 44:6 (NKJV)

God **made** the earth and **created** man on it, He stretched the heavens out with His hands and commanded their entire host. (See Isaiah 45:12)

Enns⁴⁸ states that God created man with a significant role in His plan of reconciliation and salvation and it is thus essential to understand who man is and why God created man. THIS IS A REFLECTION OF GOD'S HEART.

Man is different from the rest of creation, and each person, no matter whom they are or where they were born, is incredibly important to God. God has determined that each person is to have His own **image and likeness**. People are not only body and soul but also a spiritual being with intelligence, perception, and the ability to determine one's own destiny.⁴⁹

As Hayford⁵⁰ explains, people are accountable and responsible to God for the way they use all that He has given them. People should never be pleased to live on a level of existence lower than that to which God has called them, and for which He has equipped them. Because of all He has given people, they should make it their aim to be faithful stewards of the life He has entrusted to them. People's **hearts** should be a reflection of God's **heart**.

2.5 God Blew His Own Breath Into Man

Only man was stated as being created in the **image of God**, in whom God blew His own breath.

So God created man in His [own] image; in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them.

Genesis 1:27 (NKJV)

48 Enns, P. (1997), *THE MOODY HANDBOOK OF THEOLOGY, SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY*, NY, USA, Moody Press, p. 39

49 Hayford, J.W. (Ed.) (1995), *SPIRIT FILLED LIFE BIBLE FOR STUDENTS GROWING IN THE POWER OF THE WORD*, NKJV, USA, Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 4

50 Hayford, J.W. (Ed.) (1995), *SPIRIT FILLED LIFE BIBLE FOR STUDENTS GROWING IN THE POWER OF THE WORD*, NKJV, USA, Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 4

And the LORD God formed man [of] the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.

Genesis 2:7 (NKJV)

This, according to Piper⁵¹ is by far the most important feature of Genesis one, which is the actual statement that man is in **God's image**. It would reflect a theological prejudice to deny that the author means man's physical appearance images his Maker.

It does not rule out the fact that man's image pertaining to **God's image** goes beyond the physical image, but it may turn out that the Genesis writer intends to give more information in that intent.

Emerson L. Ferrell⁵² explains that God formed Adam from the earth and simultaneously ignited his soul and spirit with His breath. ADAM WAS SPIRITUALLY CONNECTED ON HEAVEN'S RESPIRATOR SYSTEM THROUGH GOD'S BREATH, THOUGHTS AND BLOOD. As long as man was joined with God, sin could not destroy the soul or body.

3. MAN CREATED IN THE IMAGE OF THE TEMPLE

Just as man is divided into three parts, so was the temple. Brand⁵³ explains that the body of Jesus was likened to a Temple. So is the believer's body, ***created in the image of God***.

The teaching about believers being compared to the tabernacle or temple of God is a basic Christian teaching. However, according to Carpenter,⁵⁴ one needs to understand that the patterns given concerning these things under THE LAW WERE GIVEN SO THAT CHRISTIANS CAN BETTER UNDERSTAND GOD'S HEART - because He doesn't change as seen in the following verse.

51 John Piper (March 1971), *The Image of God An Approach from Biblical and Systematic Theology*, Studia Biblica et Theologica, Available From: <http://www.desiringgod.org/articles/the-image-of-god>, [Date Accessed: 2nd October 2015]

52 Ferrell, L.E. (2009), *IMMERSED IN HIM*, USA, Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 64

53 Brand, Connie M.J. Prof. Dr. (2007), *TEACHING MANUAL I B, MODULE 5 – 10, THEOLOGY*, The Doctrine of Man, Pretoria, SA, Unpublished

54 Carpenter, G. (2012), *TABERNACLES AND TEMPLES: A STUDY GUIDE IN BIBLE SYMBOLISM*, USA, Thomas Nelson Inc., Online Books

“For I [am] the LORD, I do not change; Therefore you are not consumed, O sons of Jacob.

Malachi 3:6 (NKJV)

Even though the believers are under the Malchizedek order⁵⁵, which is Christ's order, rather than the Levitical order⁵⁶, which is the Law, one needs to see that Jesus fulfilled all the requirements of the law, not just for grace but so that man can follow Him in the same pattern. By following and abiding in this, one draws near to God.

Christ came and ***“has broken down the middle wall of separation.”*** Through His life sacrifice, He abolished the ***“law of commandments”*** which is ***“enmity,”*** and brought peace (see Ephesians 2:14-15).

By the mercy of God, man must also present their bodies ***“a living sacrifice, holy and acceptable to God”*** (Romans 12:1) for man is one spiritual body with God. Further on in Scripture, Paul explains about people being ***“many members of one body in Christ”*** should be transformed by the ***“renewing of your mind, that you may prove what is that good and acceptable and perfect will of God.”*** (See Romans 12:1-5)

Jesus' life fulfilled the heavenly reality of the pattern shown to Moses, and believers are called to do the same. As living sacrifices, one is not supposed to choose how one should live or die. Instead one should ***“glorify God in your body and in your spirit, which are God's.”*** (1 Corinthians 6:20)

3.1 God's Intention with the Tabernacle

It was never God's intention that the Hebrews should approach Him by trying to keep the Ten Commandments; the Ten Commandments cannot offer the blood evidence of a life given.

⁵⁵ Malchizedek Order – See Terms and Definitions

⁵⁶ Levitical Order – See Terms and Definitions

God intended the Hebrews to approach Him the way He had always intended, which is through a blood sacrifice for the forgiveness of sin. The commandments were supposed to be kept in their **hearts**. That is God's provision.

Later on in Scripture one reads what God's intention were all along: ***"For this [is] the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, says the LORD: I will put My laws in their mind and write them on their hearts; and I will be their God, and they shall be My people."*** (See Hebrews 8:9-10)

Therefore God established a Tabernacle, a sacrifice system and priesthood as the way for the Hebrew to approach Him. The Hebrews were not to approach God by the Ten Commandments but through the sacrifice administered by the priest at the Tabernacle. One can read about God's reminder that He went into covenant with His people in the Psalms.

"Gather My saints together to Me, Those who have made a covenant with Me by sacrifice."

Psalm 50:5 (NKJV)

3.2 The Old and The New

which are a shadow of things to come, but the substance is of Christ.

Collosians 2:17 (NKJV)

For the law, having a shadow of the good things to come, [and] not the very image of the things, can never with these same sacrifices, which they offer continually year by year, make those who approach perfect.

Hebrews 10:1 (NKJV)

These verses from Scriptures tell one that God established this way to approach Him as shadows of the real Tabernacle, the real sacrifice and the real High Priest who would come later.

Booker⁵⁷ explains, when the real sacrifice, Jesus Christ, came along, there would be no more need to bring animals to a building to be offered by a priest, because the ultimate sacrifice will have been made, all believers would be priests, THE TEMPLE WOULD BE IN EVERY PERSON AND THE LAWS WOULD BE WRITTEN ON EVERY PERSON'S HEART.

You are our epistle written in our hearts, known and read by all men; clearly you are an epistle of Christ, ministered by us, written not with ink but by the Spirit of the living God, not on tablets of stone but on tablets of flesh, [that is], of the heart.

2 Corinthians 3:2-3 (NKJV)

What God established in the Old Covenant was a temporary, preliminary system pointing the Hebrew in the direction of the New Covenant so that they would recognize the “**Seed of Abraham**” when He came on the scene.

The earthly Tabernacle symbolically represents and points to the real Tabernacle who is Jesus Christ. God gave the Tabernacle and the details of its construction to portray in a temporal way, what He would one day do permanently through Jesus Christ. From the foundations of the world, there is only been one way. JESUS IS THE ONLY WAY!

3.3 The Three Roomed Temple

De Haan⁵⁸ states the tabernacle had three compartments, an outer court, an inner room called the Holy Place and then the innermost room, the Holy of Holies.

GOD WANTS TO LIVE IN A HOUSE OF THREE ROOMS. When He made Adam he created him as a three-room dwelling place for Himself. Adam had a BODY AND A SOUL AND A SPIRIT. This constituted the **image of God** in which he was created. As a tabernacle for God, he was God's dwelling place here upon the earth.

But Adam sinned, and the Lord departed, because He will not dwell with sin. But when the Last Adam came, the Second Man, Christ Jesus, He became the temple of God.

⁵⁷ Booker, R. (1981), *THE MIRACLE OF THE SCARLET THREAD*, PA, USA, Destiny Image Publishers,

⁵⁸ De Haan, M.R. M.D. (1983), *THE TABERNACLE*, MI, USA, Zondervan Publishing House, p. 122-123

This temple again had three rooms; a body, a soul, and a spirit. He was a perfect man, a perfect example and the fit tabernacle for the dwelling place of God.

But Jesus went to heaven, and since God wants to live in a house upon this earth, He now dwells in the believers individually, and the Church as the Body of Christ collectively, and HE WANTS PEOPLE TO OPEN THE ENTIRE HOUSE TO HIM, THAT IS, THE BODY, THE SOUL AND THE SPIRIT, IN ORDER FOR HIS SPIRIT TO DWELL IN EVERY MAN'S HEART.

3.4 Defining the Tabernacle/Temple

According to the Free Online Dictionary,⁵⁹ the English word for “**tabernacle**” originated from a Latin word, **tabernāculum**, which means “**a shelter**.”

In English translations of the Holy Scriptures, “**tabernacle**” is used to translate two Hebrew words that, although different, referred to the same portable structure that the Lord commanded Moses to construct for the housing of the Ark of the Covenant, which was to be positioned at the “**heart**” of the Israelite encampment,⁶⁰ with the Ark of the Covenant, containing the Law of God, at the “**heart**” of the Tabernacle.

3.4.1 The Design of the Temple/Tabernacle

According to Booker⁶¹, in the temple as described in the Old Testament, the outer court was visible for all and visited by all. This was the first part. All the external worship was done here.

Further inside was the holy place, where only ordained priests could enter and presented oil, incense and bread to God. They were closer to God than the other people, but not the nearest, because they were standing outside the veil and therefore unable to stand before His very presence.

59 THE FREE ONLINE DICTIONARY – *Tabernacle* (2015); [Online] Available From: <http://www.thefreedictionary.com/tabernacle>; [Date Accessed: 4th November 2015]

60 See Numbers 2:1-33; Numbers 3:38

61 Booker, R. (1981), *THE MIRACLE OF THE SCARLET THREAD*, Destiny Image Publishers, PA, USA

God dwells deepest within, in the Holy of Holies, where darkness is overshadowed and where there is a light so brilliant that no man can enter into it. Although the high priest was allowed to enter into it once a year, it nonetheless indicated that before the veil is rent there could be no man in the Holy of Holies.

THE **HEART OF THE TABERNACLE** WAS THE ARK OF THE COVENANT, where God's written commandments were kept amongst other things.⁶²

3.5 Man Compared to the Temple/Tabernacle

Nee⁶³ compares man to the temple of God, containing of three parts. The body is the visible outer court. Here is where man is supposed to obey every commandment of God. This is also where the Son of God was substituted and died for mankind.

Inside the outer visible body is the soul, which constitutes for the inner life of man and which embraces man's emotions, mind and volition. This is the Holy Place for a saved person, for his love, will and thought are fully enlightened that he may serve God even as the priest of old did.

In the most inner part of man is the spirit, behind the veil, lays the Holy of Holies into which no human light has ever penetrated and no naked eye has ever pierced. This is the "**secret place of the Most High**", the dwelling place of God.

Man cannot reach the Holy of Holies, unless God is willing to rent the veil. The spirit of man lies behind the self-consciousness and above his sensibility. This is where man communes and unites with God.

Now may the God of peace Himself sanctify you completely; and may your whole spirit, soul, and body be preserved blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

1 Thessalonians 5:23 NKJV

62 Blank, W. (2011), *DAILY BIBLE STUDY*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.keyway.ca/htm2011/20110531.htm>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

63 Nee, W. (1977), *THE SPIRITUAL MAN*, USA, Christian Fellowship Publishers

“**Spirit, soul and body**” is the order in which God presents to man. The spirit is mentioned first, since it is the pre-eminent part of man. The body is the lowest, thus it is mentioned last. The soul stands between the two. Now it is evident how the body serves as the temple of God, with its three characters.

The Temple service moves according to the revelation in the Holy of Holies. All activities outside of the Holiest place in the temple are regulated by the presence of God in the most sacred spot of the temple, the Holiest.⁶⁴

All activities in the temple are in the Holy Place; the priests of the Holy Place controls even those activities of the outer court. But actually, all activities of the Holy Place are directed by the revelation in the utter quietness and peace of the Holy of Holies.

As Nee⁶⁵ further explains, the same occurs in the body of man. The soul is master of all action, since it is composed of mind, volition and emotion. The body follows the direction of the soul. Before the fall of man, however, the spirit governed the soul. This is the order that God still desires for man; firstly spirit, then soul and lastly body.

3.6 The Heart of the Tabernacle/Temple

Inside the Holy of Holies, THE VERY **HEART** OF THE TABERNACLE WAS THE ARK OF THE COVENANT, containing amongst other things, the Tablets with the Law of God written on them.

Ferrell⁶⁶ explains that Jesus came and divided man up into four characters, namely, heart, spirit (soul), soul (mind) and body (strength) as seen in the following verse.

‘And you shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength.’ This [is] the first commandment.

Mark 12:30 (NKJV)

⁶⁴ Nee, W. (1977), *THE SPIRITUAL MAN*, USA, Christian Fellowship Publishers,

⁶⁵ Ibid

⁶⁶ Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

Scripture also teaches that God tests the thoughts and intents of man's **heart**.

For the word of God [is] living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.

Hebrews 4:12 (NKJV)

The Ark of the Covenant was to be positioned at the “**heart**” of the Israelite encampment, with the Ark of the Covenant, containing the Law of God, at the “**heart**” of the Tabernacle. The written Law of God was located literally at the centre of the nation, physically and in practice.⁶⁷

The Tabernacle was the place where observance of the Holy Days was focused, not as an end in themselves, but as living prophecies of the Christian meaning and purpose of them, keeping in mind that they were to be observed by Christ Himself.

Moreover, brethren, I do not want you to be unaware that all our fathers were under the cloud, all passed through the sea, all were baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea, all ate the same spiritual food, and all drank the same spiritual drink. For they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them, and that Rock was Christ.

1 Corinthians 10:1-4 (NKJV)

Everything was written on stone or scrolls while, even in the Old Testament, people were expected to “**write it on their hearts and souls**” by MAKING THE WRITTEN WORD A VERY PART OF THEMSELVES, THEIR CHARACTER (See Deuteronomy 10:16). God also ordered people to “**command your children to be careful to observe all the words of the law.**” (Deuteronomy 32:46)

There is also given a warning in Scripture about people who choose to ignore God's law or fail to “**write it on their hearts.**” Jesus spoke about people whose “**heart is far from me.**” He said that “**in vain they worship Me, Teaching as doctrines the commandments of men.**” (Mark 7:6-7 NKJV)

⁶⁷ Blank, W. (2011), *DAILY BIBLE STUDY*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.keyway.ca/htm2011/20110531.htm>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

The Apostle Paul explained later on how the law, written on stone, brings death through sin.

I was alive once without the law, but when the commandment came, sin revived and I died. And the commandment, which [was] to [bring] life, I found to [bring] death. For sin, taking occasion by the commandment, deceived me, and by it killed [me]. Therefore the law [is] holy, and the commandment holy and just and good.

Romans 7:9-12 (NKJV)

In 1 Corinthians 15:56 one reads “**The sting of death [is] sin, and the strength of sin [is] the law.**” The following verse offers the promise of victory over sin, which comes from Jesus Christ.

The Tabernacle itself, which was **covered with skins**, was a living prophecy of the temporary physical life that is intended to prepare for eternal life. In the same manner are God's people with His Law “**written on their hearts.**”

For we know that if our earthly house, [this] tent, is destroyed, we have a building from God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed with our habitation which is from heaven, if indeed, having been clothed, we shall not be found naked. For we who are in [this] tent groan, being burdened, not because we want to be unclothed, but further clothed, that mortality may be swallowed up by life. Now He who has prepared us for this very thing [is] God, who also has given us the Spirit as a guarantee.

2 Corinthians 5:1-5 (NKJV)

Booker⁶⁸ explains that the Ten Commandments have helped people realize that they are separated from God by their sins. This drives one to approach Him through the **BLOOD COVENANT**. Through the Sin offering and Trespass Offering one expresses one's desire for communion with God. A person knows that the blood of animals is only a temporary provision to cover one's sins. People can look forward to the time when the perfect sacrifice will come to take them away.

Humans are sinners and cannot obey God's Law perfectly. Jesus Christ came and fulfils the gap, for those who seek salvation by obeying Him as best that they can.

68 Booker, R. (1981), *THE MIRACLE OF THE SCARLET THREAD*, PA, USA, Destiny Image Publishers, p. 94

The High Priest's sacrifice at Passover, and his entering the Most Holy Place of the Tabernacle on the Day of Atonement were, like everything else, living prophecies of the coming Christ.

Ferrell⁶⁹ explains, inside the body of man lies the **heart** of man, which is used by God as a conduit for the spirit of man to awaken. Every person has a desire to know God, for God placed in every person's **heart** a desire toward Him. This is confirmed in Ecclesiastes when the author states that every person has "**eternity in their hearts**." (see Ecclesiastes 3:11)

Every person created has a need to know and to love God. Because some people do not know who God is and have not seen God face to face, their **hearts** have not been touched. They cannot see the Father or recognize Him.⁷⁰

3.6.1 Unveiling the Heart

In the Tabernacle, there was a **veil in front of the Holy of Holies**, which made the place invisible for people to see it. Paul also mentioned a **veil on people's heart**, which needs to be removed to be able to turn towards God.

But their minds were blinded. For until this day the same veil remains unlifted in the reading of the Old Testament, because the [veil] is taken away in Christ. But even to this day, when Moses is read, a veil lies on their heart. Nevertheless when one turns to the Lord, the veil is taken away.

2 Corinthians 3:14-16 (NKJV)

Once the veil is rent, the person can see the face of God and will be able to fall in love with Him. THE RENT VEIL EXPOSES A PERSON'S **HEART**. This is when the Holy Spirit enters the person's **heart** and trespasses the spirit of man.

69 Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

70 Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

The spirit will then allow the same power of God to enter into the soul. The **soul** is the seat of the **will and emotions** and where a person can make the decision to follow God.⁷¹

4. THE HOLY TRINITY

4.1 Divine Counsel Involved in Man's Creation

Prior to the creation of man, there was divine counsel.

Then God said, "Let US make man in OUR image, according to OUR likeness; let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the air, and over the cattle, over all the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth."

Genesis 1:26 (NKJV) Author's Emphasis

Piper⁷² states that the divine deliberation indicates the "I-Thou" character of God's existence, of which man is a copy. The **image of God** in man, therefore, consists in man's addressing and being addressed as a "Thou."

In the three texts where the actual statement that man was created in **God's image** occurs (Genesis 1:27; 5:1; 9:6), a plurality is mentioned. The plural is used elsewhere when God deliberates before an important act in Genesis 11:7-8.

"Come, let Us go down and there confuse their language, that they may not understand one another's speech." So the LORD scattered them abroad from there over the face of all the earth, and they ceased building the city.

Genesis 11:7-8 (NKJV)

It seems to appear, that the plural "**let us**," may be a way of pointing to God's own self-deliberation, and when an author makes use of plural reference, it does not necessarily indicate any essential connection between what the plural implies about God's nature and the immediate object of His action.⁷³

71 Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

72 John Piper (March 1971), *The Image of God An Approach from Biblical and Systematic Theology*, Studia Biblica et Theologica, Available From: <http://www.desiringgod.org/articles/the-image-of-god>, [Date Accessed: 2nd October 2015]

73 Ibid

In this verse it seems that God is talking to someone. It appears that He is consulting a counsel. Since the Lord needs no other counsellor, the consultation must have taken place within the Trinitarian Godhead, God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit.⁷⁴

According to Black,⁷⁵ the Trinity of God⁷⁶ is a doctrine that is primary to the Christian faith, belief or disbelief in the Trinity marks orthodoxy⁷⁷ from unorthodoxy⁷⁸. Human reason, however, cannot comprehend the Trinity, nor can logic explain it and although the word itself is not found in the Scripture, the doctrine⁷⁹ is plainly taught throughout Scripture.

The term “Trinity” does not explain the expanse of what God pertains to. The term merely accentuates the three persons in the Tripartite. The German word “*Dreieinigkeit*” (three-one-ness) better communicates the concept.

According to The Moody Handbook of Theology⁸⁰, a definition for “Trinity” is given as such:

“The Trinity is composed of three united Persons without separate existence – so completely united as to form one God. The divine nature subsists in three distinctions – Father, Son and Holy Spirit.”

The Spirit Filled Life Bible, NKJV (Hayford: 1995)⁸¹ explains that at the very beginning of time, God exhibited some unique characteristics. Although it is not until the New Testament that the triune nature of the Godhead is fully revealed, it is often reflected in the Old Testament. God was speaking, not only to what the New Testament reveals concerning the other Persons of the Trinity, but also to the entire host of heaven, the angels, as well.

God is a Triune God, a Trinity, which means that He is one God with three different expressions of His divine nature. Similarly, a man is composed of a body, a soul and a spirit. Those are three different expressions of the same human being. Man who is created in the **image of God** is a triune being.

74 Hebrews 1:2 states that when God made the worlds (KJV) He did so by His Son.

75 Black, L. Dr. (2015), Article: *THE IMAGE OF GOD*, Pretoria, SA, Unpublished

76 In trinitarian Christianity, God the Father is regarded as the first person of the Holy Trinity, followed by the second person God the Son; Jesus Christ, and the third person is God the Holy Spirit.

77 Orthodoxy – See Terms and Definitions

78 Unorthodoxy – See Terms and Definitions

79 Doctrine – See Terms and Definitions

80 Enns, P. (1997), *THE MOODY HANDBOOK OF THEOLOGY, SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY*, NY, USA, Moody Press, p. 39

81 Hayford, J.W. (Ed.) (1995), *SPIRIT FILLED LIFE BIBLE FOR STUDENTS GROWING IN THE POWER OF THE WORD, NKJV*, Thomas Nelson Publishers, USA, p. 4

'And you shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength.' This [is] the first commandment.

Mark 12:30 (NKJV)

5. MAN AS A TRIUNE BEING

Man was also created as a tripartite being presenting with a spirit, soul and having a physical body.

Now may the God of peace Himself sanctify you completely; and may your whole spirit, soul, and body be preserved blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

1 Thessalonians 5:23 (NKJV)

For the word of God [is] living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, and is a discernor of the thoughts and intents of the heart.

Hebrews 4:12 (NKJV)

The Word of God speaks of a tripartite, consisting of spirit, soul and body; thus, God divided man into three parts, namely, spirit, soul and body, and that He sanctifies man completely, meaning, in all three parts.

In the book of Hebrews, there is also discernment between soul and spirit. In the above-mentioned verse, there is also a referral to the non-corporal part that is divided in two, namely, the soul and spirit, and a corporal part, which includes the bone and marrow.

"And to love Him with all the heart, with all the understanding, with all the soul, and with all the strength, and to love one's neighbor as oneself, is more than all the whole burnt offerings and sacrifices."

Mark 12:33 (NKJV)

Jesus uses the Word of God on His people to separate the spirit, soul and physical part of man.

'And you shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength.' This [is] the first commandment.

Mark 12:30 (NKJV)

The Word is also used to discern the “**thoughts and intents of the heart.**” This shows that each part can be divided and should have their own nature, separate from each other.

The spirit, soul and body of man are the three centres of consciousness within the total personality of man.

And the LORD God formed man [of] the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.

Genesis 2:7 NKJV

As explained before, God created man from the dust of the earth and “**breathed into his nostrils the breath of life**”. “**Breath of life**” refers to the spirit of man. As soon as the spirit came in contact with the physical body that was created from the physical dust of the earth, the soul of man was produced. Scripture refers to man as “**living soul**”.

“It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh profits nothing. The words that I speak to you are spirit, and [they] are life.

John 6:63 NKJV

Jesus Himself said that He is the Life.

Jesus said to him, “I am the way, the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father except through Me.

John 14:6 (NKJV)

It is the “**spirit that gives life**”. This breath of life comes from the Lord God, Jesus, but it is important not to confuse man's spirit with the Holy Spirit.

The Spirit Himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God,

Romans 8:16 NKJV

This verse displays a clear distinction between Holy Spirit and the human spirit.

Nee⁸² explains that the original of the word “**life**” in “**breath of life**” is ‘**chay**’ and refers to plural. This might indicate that the inbreathing of God produced a twofold life, soulical and spiritual. Thus, when God breathed into man, the spirit was produced, and when the spirit reacted with the body, the soul was produced.

It is very important to understand that this spirit is not God's own life, for the ‘**breath**’ gives us life.

The Spirit of God has made me, And the breath of the Almighty gives me life.

Job 33:4 NKJV

Man's soul is something unique. As angels were created as predominantly spirits, so man was created predominantly as a living soul. Man not only had a body, but, with the “**breath of life**”, he became a living soul as well.

Man's soul represents him and expresses his individuality. This is the organ that gives man a free will, where the spirit of man and the body of man merges. If man's soul chooses to obey God, then the spirit will comply, but if the soul refuses to obey God's will and chooses its own will, then the spirit gets suppressed and take some other delight as lord of the man.

Ferrell⁸³ explains that when Adam sinned, he lost the dominion of his spirit. He crowned the intellect, which is part of the soul. Through this, the soul of man became the place where believing takes place. Unless a person's spirit is dominating the soul, then believing is still part of the mind.

82 Nee, W. (1977), *THE SPIRITUAL MAN*, USA, Christian Fellowship Publishers, p. 21-30

83 Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

Nee⁸⁴ states that, although the soul is the ruling body over the earthly life of man, the spirit will be ruling in the resurrected state of the person after death.

It is sown a natural body, it is raised a spiritual body. There is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body.

1 Corinthians 15:44 NKJV

Those who decided to choose to join Lord Jesus Christ in resurrection, has a spirit who rule over the whole being. Born again people are not united with the first Adam who was made a living soul, but to the second Adam, Who is a life-giving Spirit.

And so it is written, "The first man Adam became a living being." The last Adam [became] a life-giving spirit.

1 Corinthians 15:45 NKJV

5.1 The Respective Functions of the Spirit, Soul and Body

Larkin⁸⁵ explains that the physical body is that part that comes in contact with the material world, thus world-conscious. It is capable of knowing and receiving things from the world around. It is the physical part of man, which is similar to the brute creation, made out of the dust of the earth.

The soul comprises of the intellect, emotions and will, which proceeds from the senses. Since this part of man shows his personality, it is the self-consciousness of man, capable of knowing one's self. God's breath of life included both the spirit life and soul life of man. The human soul is the merger between the material body and the spirit and relates to both. It also possesses the power of free will, and is able to choose from the spirit as well as the physical.

⁸⁴ Nee, W. (1977), *THE SPIRITUAL MAN*, Christian Fellowship Publishers, USA

⁸⁵ Larkin, C. (2005), *THE SPIRIT WORLD*, USA, Cosimo Inc, E-book

According to Nee⁸⁶, the spirit of man is that part that relates to God and worships Him. Thus, the spirit of man is God-conscious.

The human spirit cannot act directly upon the body because it needs a medium, namely, the soul. This means that the soul binds the spirit with the physical body.

The spirit can subdue the body through the medium of the soul, so that it will obey God; likewise the body through the soul can draw the spirit into loving the world. The noblest of the three characters of man, is his spirit, for it is joined to God, making it God-conscious, in other words, capable of knowing God.⁸⁷

Emerson Ferrell and Ana Mendez-Ferrell⁸⁸ explain that the soul as the seat of the will and emotions is where decisions are made. After receiving salvation, man needs to train his spirit and let the soul become submitted under his spirit. What victory is in the spirit will start and overflow the soul. When the soul is being penetrated with divine thinking, then it can be healed and man can start to walk in the divine.

Once the thought line of man is then lined up with redemption of the Cross of Christ, then this trespasses into man's body. All that has been permeated, been enriched by the spirit is going to pass to the body and the body is going to also be healed.

Nee⁸⁹ is of opinion that the physical body is in contact with the world, thus is the lowest character. The soul between the two joins them together and takes a character to be its own. The soul makes it possible for the body and spirit to communicate and cooperate. The work of the soul is to keep body and spirit in order – that is so that the lowest, which is the body, submits to the higher spirit, and the spirit may govern the body through the soul. Man's prime factor is the soul.

86 Nee, W. (1977), *THE SPIRITUAL MAN*, USA, Christian Fellowship Publishers

87 Brand, Connie M.J. Prof. Dr. (2007), *TEACHING MANUAL I B, MODULE 5 – 10, THEOLOGY*, The Doctrine of Man, Pretoria, SA, Unpublished

88 Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

89 Nee, W. (1977), *THE SPIRITUAL MAN*, USA, Christian Fellowship Publishers

The spirit of man communicates with the Holy Spirit, whom indwells a person's **heart**, and the soul communicates to the body. This way, the body also shares the perfection of the Holy Spirit and becomes a spiritual body.

The physical body of man is the outer layer and the spirit is the inner layer. The soul is the outer sheath of the spirit and communicates to the body whatever the spirit order. Before the fall of man, the spirit was the controlling being of man through the soul.

Ferrell⁹⁰ explains that one of the worst things that happened in the Garden of Eden was that man's soul replaced man's spirit. When Adam sinned, he lost the dominion of his spirit. He crowned the intellect of man because he chose to believe the being of the earth.

The Godhead is also triune. Characteristics of the Father, the characteristics of the Son and the characteristics of the Holy Spirit are all different but all one. So the Scriptures teach to love God as One.

For [there is] one God and one Mediator between God and men, [the] Man Christ Jesus,

1 Timothy 2:5 (NKJV)

Each one of the characteristics of the Godhead is designed to immerse those parts of the human being. God the Father immerses the human spirit, God the Son immerses the human soul and God the Spirit immerses the human body. When the power of the Holy Spirit controls the body, man manifests the same, believing the same faith that Jesus walked in.⁹¹

6. THE HUMAN MAKEUP

As explained above, the union of the material (physical body) and immaterial (spiritual body) results in a living soul. Thus, the soul represents the human as alive with life that consists of emotions, passions, drives and appetites.⁹²

⁹⁰ Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKl>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

⁹¹ Ibid

⁹² Waltke, B. *TWOT – "nefesh"*, p. 587-591

In the beginning of the 20th century, theological scholars such as dr. W. Nee saw the spirit made up of the composition of communion, intuition and conscience. It was also proclaimed that the soul is a combination of the mind, will and emotions.

In the opinion of this thesis, this revelation is still relevant in modern teachings and forms a good foundation, but it does not stop there. It has been growing and God has brought new insight and Holy Spirit revelation into the information through different scholars.

6.1 Human Body Systems

In the book *"The Human Body: Concepts of Anatomy and Physiology,"* (Bruce Wingerd: 2013),⁹³ the human body system is defined as organization of two or more different organs, along with their associated structures. Because a system contains more than one organ, the functions it performs are of a more general nature. For example, the stomach, liver and small intestines are a few of the organs of the digestive system. Their combined function is the digestion of food into nutrients that can be used by body cells.

The Encyclopedia of Human Body Systems (McDowell: 2010)⁹⁴ summarizes the different body systems as such:

BODY SYSTEM	ORGANS	FUNCTIONS
Circulatory System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Heart- Blood Vessels	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Ensures blood transport with vital substances to organs
Digestive System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Mouth- Oesophagus- Stomach- Intestines- Liver- Pancreas- Salivary Glands- Gall Bladder	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Turning substance which enters the body, such as food and water, into nutrition for cells- This process is called metabolism

93 Wingerd, B. (2013), *THE HUMAN BODY: CONCEPTS OF ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY*, PA, USA, Lippencot Williams and Wilkens, p. 5

94 McDowell, J. (2010), *ENCYCLOPEDIA OF HUMAN BODY SYSTEMS: VOLUME I*, USA, ABC-CLIO, p. ix-ix

Endocrine System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Hypothalamus- Pituitary- Thyroid- Parathyroid- Adrenal- Pancreas- Sex glands	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Communication hub for the body- Hormones gets carried through bloodstream and prompts stimulation and inhabitation of nerve impulses
Integumentary System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Skin- Hair follicles- Nails	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Protection of body- Detection of change of body through sensory receptors
Lymphatic System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Bone marrow- Thymus- Spleen- Tonsils- Adenoids- Peyer's patches- Appendix	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Protecting body against toxins and harmful substances that can cause illness and disease- An important component of the system is lymphocytes, which detect harmful substances in blood and prompt an immune response to drive them out of the body
Muscular System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Skeletal muscles (helps with body movement)- Smooth muscles (associated with internal muscles)- Cardiac muscles (helps heart to function)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Autonomic nervous system controls smooth and cardiac muscles- Central nervous system controls skeletal muscle movement
Nervous System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Brain- Spinal cord	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Body's key communication system through nerve impulses- Central nervous system and peripheral nervous system process stimuli and other information into the form of reaction and activity

Reproductive System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Female reproductive system organs include: cervix, vagina, fallopian tubes, mammary glands (breasts)- Male reproductive system organs include: ejaculatory ducts, urethra, penis, testicles	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Carrying out process of sexual reproduction
Respiratory System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Upper respiratory tract organs: nose, nasal cavity, pharynx, larynx- Lower respiratory tract organs: trachea, bronchi, alveoli, lungs	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Control and regulate breathing process- Movement of air in and out of body
Skeletal System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- 206 bones- Tendons- Ligaments- Joints connecting bone and muscle	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Controls movement- Protects body tissue and organs- Protects important internal body organs from body's other systems
Urinary System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Kidneys- Ureters- Bladder- Urethra	<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Rid body of waste through urine elimination- Ensures body's fluid system is balanced in terms of acidity

At microscopic levels, there is also a great quantity of things occurring in the chemistry of the brain and the cells. McDowell⁹⁵ is of opinion that the mysteries of the human body continue to perplex scientists, medical experts and laymen. Physiology and anatomy scholars from past and present found that learning from the human body is an exhilarating science and vital to improve the quality of life and find cures and treatment for disease and disorder.

95 McDowell, J. (2010), *ENCYCLOPEDIA OF HUMAN BODY SYSTEMS: VOLUME I*, USA, ABC-CLIO, p. ix-ix

This thesis is in agreement with McDowell's statement and wishes to expand on the study of the human body through an exegetical, theological viewpoint of the body being created by God as a spirit, soul and physical body.

The motivation for this specific research was prompted through observing and studying possible spiritual and emotional causes for different diseases and ailments hypothetically affecting the physical human body, specifically the human heart. This mentioned hypothesis would elaborate in stating that, from a biblical viewpoint, through the understanding that transgressions, iniquity and sin are the major causes for bodily affliction, possible physical cures might be brought into the light through Holy Spirit led, inner healing and deliverance techniques.

6.2 Spiritual and Soul Functions of Body Organ

In this same way as the physical body, a person's spirit and soul are also composed of a series of systems and organs. These spiritual and soulful functions allow one to discern both the spiritual and natural world.

Mendez-Ferrell⁹⁶ explains that the soul of a person is the component, which differentiates a person from any other spiritual entity such as angels and demons. It is a perfect machine joined to the spirit, which gives man the ability to govern and interpret spiritual dynamics from God or the devil.

The soul of man corresponds to everything the spirit of man is. Mendez-Ferrell⁹⁷ compares the soul to a mirror that reflects everything that is spirit so that it can be decoded. Once the soul interprets what comes from the spirit, it transfers it to the body, because the three parts are intrinsically linked together.

⁹⁶ Mendez-Ferrell, A. Dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, FL, USA, The Voice of Light Ministries, Kindle Book

⁹⁷ Ibid

Saucy⁹⁸ explains that spirit is the principle of life that animates the body as one can derive from James 2:26 which states “**For as the body without the spirit is dead...**” It is the vitalizing power by which the person lives.

Created in the likeness of God, the spirit images God's own personal life. Thus, the characteristics of personality, i.e., self-conscious reason, emotion and volition, are viewed in Scripture as faculties of one's spirit that functions holistically with one's physical body. For example, one's mind and one's brain operate as a functional unity. As Saucy⁹⁹ explain since the holistic activities of spirit and body are finally the actions of the total person, they can also be described as the activities of the soul.

One finds instances where functions involving thought are attributed to the spirit as stated in 1 Corinthians 2:11: “**For what man knows the things of a man except the spirit of the man which is in him?...**” and also to the soul as stated in Psalm 103:2: “**Bless the LORD, O my soul, And forget not all His benefits**”

The idea in such instances is that the whole person thinks by virtue of having a spirit that has the capacity to think, much like saying a person sees because his eyes see. In short one can express the idea by explaining the concept that the function of the body and the spirit are at the same time expressed as the functions of the soul, which is the whole person.¹⁰⁰

As far as one's constitutional makeup, the human being is biblically depicted as a soul composed of a material body and immaterial spirit. Many other terms referring to parts of the body e.g. head, eye, ear, hands, feet, kidneys etc. are used simply for the anatomical part, or as a way of speaking of the human function associated with the bodily part.

It is important to note that although Scriptures depict humans as having a dualistic composition of a material body and an immaterial spirit, these dimensions function together and also holistically.

98 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 21-22

99 Ibid, p. 22

100 Ibid p. 22

The ear for example is used to depict the function of hearing, but technically, other parts of the body, such as the brain, are also involved in hearing and thereby the whole person hears.¹⁰¹

The biblical reference to the heart is used like the other body parts, both for the physical organ, but most often and certainly most importantly as the figure as the centre of the human person. As the deep centre of the person, the heart is the centre of the soul or the person. As Oehler¹⁰² states, it is the place *“in which the soul is at home with itself, and is conscious of all it's doing and suffering as its own.”*

The Life Application Study Bible, New Living Translation, Second Edition (Tyndall House: 2007)¹⁰³ states that for Hebrew writers, important functions of life were assigned to different physical organs. The heart was considered the core of a person's intellect and spirit.

As the centre of the soul, the heart is the deep seat of the personal capacity of the spirit associated of personhood that function through the soul. As Cohen states: *“More than the soul and the spirit, ‘the heart’ is the all-embracing term for the human psychological phenomena.”*¹⁰⁴

7. THE HUMAN HEART

According to Thomas¹⁰⁵, there are considerably more written in Scripture about the heart than the soul or the spirit. More than any part of man, the state of one's heart reflects the state of one's relationship with God and influences and affects the state of one's whole being.

101 Ibid p. 23

102 Oehler, G.F. (1950), *THEOLOGY OF THE OLD TESTAMENT*, Zondervan, MI, USA, p. 153

103 *LIFE APPLICATION STUDY BIBLE, NEW LIVING TRANSLATION, SECOND EDITION*, (2007), IL, USA, Tyndall House Publications, p. 1324

104 COHEN, I, “The Heart in Biblical Psychology” in Essays presented to Chief Rabbi Israel Brodie on the Occasion of His 70th Birthday, ed. Hirsch Jacob Zimmels, Joseph Rabbinowitz, and Israel Finestein, Jews' College Publications n.s. no. 3(London: Soncino Press, 1967), 41.

105 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, pp. 70-72

Dr. Ana Mendez-Ferrell¹⁰⁶ explains that the heart is one of the most important parts of one's being since it is the centre and the main door to one's spirit. It is the organ that determines everything one is, as well as the realization of one's destiny on this earth and in eternity. As Proverbs 4:23 states: "**Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it [spring] the issues of life.**"

The heart is the determining factor of who one is and how one acts and it is also the place where all decisions for one's life is made. Proverbs 23:7 states: "**For as he thinks in his heart, so is he.**"

One's heart is what causes one to take great steps in life. The strength of ONE'S BEING IS CONCENTRATED IN THE HEART in order for a person to obtain victory, to triumph in tribulations and to take a risk. This is also the place where courage and fear are forged and where a great deal of one's health is determined.¹⁰⁷ As Proverbs 14:30 states: "**A sound heart [is] life to the body, But envy [is] rottenness to the bones.**"

7.1 The Origin of the Heart

And the LORD God formed man [of] the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living being.

Genesis 2:7 (NKJV)

In the Bible one learns that Adam's physical body was created "**from the dust of the ground.**" One can easily presume that his body was created complete with all organs intact. Thus, he already had a physical body, although he was not yet alive.

Through the inbreathing of "**the breath of life**"¹⁰⁸ Adam's lungs were activated by this "**breath**" which permeated his entire body, bringing it to life and launched the physical processes such as the exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide through his lungs, the initiation of the beating of his heart and the circulation.¹⁰⁹

¹⁰⁶ Mendez-Ferrell, A. Dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, FL, USA, The Voice of Light Ministries, Kindle Book, Chapter 9

¹⁰⁷ Ibid Chapter 9

¹⁰⁸ See Genesis 2:7

¹⁰⁹ Author's Note: The circulatory system will be examined in detail later on in the thesis.

The God's Spirit formed Adam's human spirit¹¹⁰, which by its interaction with its physical body formed the soul. Thomas¹¹¹ explains that the soul took on the imprint of the physical in the same way plaster would have an imprint if poured into a mould. The soul is unique to an individual and it is within the soul that one has awareness of "being." In other words, it is man's soul that makes one aware of "being."

The Spirit of life entered Adam's heart forming his spiritual heart. From that point, Adam's spirit circulated around his whole body. As spirit is life and it flows throughout the entire person, as does the blood, is likely that the spirit of life is in the blood and follows the same pathway as that of the blood, although it is the spiritual substance rather than the physical.

Unlike Adam, in whom was "***breathed into his nostrils the breath of life***," the rest of people's life is passed on through the physical seed of the father and mother at conception. This immediately forms a person's spirit, soul and body. People originate from two physical seeds but one spiritual seed.¹¹²

A newly formed human being's cells divide rapidly and form a rudimentary heart and circulatory system. The embryonic structure that becomes the heart begin to form very early in the process of the development of the baby. From about the third week after conception, the heart starts to beat.

In order for blood to reach all parts of one's body, it flows from a single point of the body, one's physical heart, which functions as a pump, circulating the oxygenated blood to the extremities and returning to exchange gasses via the lungs and re-oxygenate the oxygen-depleted blood.

Thomas¹¹³ explains that the fact that the heart of a person is the first part that is physically formed, gives support to the likelihood that the flow of the spirit originates from the spiritual heart.¹¹⁴

110 See earlier explanation to the "breath of life," as referred to in text of Job 33:4.

111 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, p. 70

112 Ibid p. 71

113 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, p. 70

114 Ibid p. 72

The spiritual heart is in the same location as the physical heart; the physical being superimposed on the spiritual. Although the heart is referred to separately from the soul in the Bible, it is within the boundaries of the soul and is formed in the same way as the soul, which is by the action of spirit upon matter. In other words, the spiritual heart would be formed in the embryo by the action of the spirit on the physical heart. The heart, although encompassed by the soul and in a sense part of the soul, is unique.¹¹⁵

This thesis will propose a hypothesis which will state that, according to Scripture, a person has spiritual eyes and ears¹¹⁶, one's spirit affects one's bones¹¹⁷, and one has spirit in one's mind. Even though the spiritual is not necessarily subject to physical laws, the conclusion may be drawn that one's soul is in fact similar in form and function to one's physical body. This in turn draws the conclusion that one's spiritual heart, which the Bible says is "**the well-spring of life**,¹¹⁸" has a similar structure and function to that of one's physical heart, in that, just as one's physical heart circulates blood around one's body, the spirit heart circulates one's spirit life around one's body.

Once a person accepts that Jesus Christ has died for one and invites Him into one's life. In Romans 5:5 it states: "**Now hope does not disappoint, because the love of God has been poured out in our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given to us.**" The Spirit's indwelling causes an immersion in Christ, for one's old, sinful life is dead and a person is reborn. One's spiritual heart then pumps Holy Spirit filled blood throughout the body, which is the Blood of Christ. This is clearly stated in the following text:

But you are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed the Spirit of God dwells in you. Now if anyone does not have the Spirit of Christ, he is not His. And if Christ [is] in you, the body [is] dead because of sin, but the Spirit [is] life because of righteousness.

Romans 8:9-10 (NKJV)

Emerson L. Ferrell¹¹⁹ is of opinion that man's spirit needs to be awakened through the heart. According to Scripture, God replaces one's heart of stone with a heart of flesh.

115 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, Westbow Press, IN, USA, pp. 70-72

116 Compare Matthew 13:15-17, Proverbs 20:12, Mark 8:18, Isaiah 6:10 etc.

117 Compare Genesis 2:13, Luke 24:39, Psalm 34:20, Ezekiel 36:10 etc.

118 See Proverbs 4:23

119 Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

And I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them an heart of flesh: That they may walk in my statutes, and keep mine ordinances, and do them: and they shall be my people, and I will be their God.

Ezekiel 11:19-20 (NKJV)

When man's heart becomes sensitive to God, then the heart becomes a conduit for the spirit of man to awaken. That is when redemption takes place and salvation begins to have its work through the being of man.¹²⁰

Every person has a need to love God and know Him, but because a person does not know who God is and have not seen God face to face, their hearts have not been touched and they cannot see the Father, they cannot recognize the Father.

Because man functions in the soul and not in the spirit, like it was God's intention for man to do, it is necessary for a person's soul to find healing and recovery to be able to understand how one is created in God's image. Once a person can start to relate to God as a being created in His image, one can start to have faith and from that having hope in His provision. As soon as a person starts to believe that God is the provider, love comes forth for Him and a relationship grows stronger.

The person then becomes convicted by Holy Spirit about God's divine nature and will then be able to make a choice whether they want God to indwell. As soon as the person confesses from the heart that Jesus is the Son of God and that He died for all people's sin so that one does not have to perish, then Holy Spirit will start to indwell in a person's heart.¹²¹

Thomas¹²² states that, it is through the heart that the spirit can be renewed and refreshed. The Bible cautions one to "***Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it [spring] the issues of life***"(spirit) (Proverbs 4:23). If a person's heart is not in a healthy state one's spirit is not either. If one's spirit is not in a healthy state then one's soul, which is dependent on one's spirit for life, is not going to be in a healthy state.

¹²⁰ Ibid

¹²¹ Ibid

¹²² Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, p. 72

The state of one's heart, therefore one's spirit and soul, can also affect one's physical health as the spirit flows throughout the body. If the heart is in poor condition however, as a result of sin and not being in the right relationship with God, the spirit flowing from the heart will not be filling the soul with renewed life and vitality, but rather with seed sown from the kingdom of darkness.

7.2 The Heart Gives Direction in Life

Saucy¹²³ is of opinion that IT IS THE HEART OF A PERSON THAT DIRECTS THE PERSON'S LIFE, BUT IT IS ALSO THE PERSON WHOM DIRECTS THEIR HEART. The person controls what goes in and out of the heart, which then determines the person's activities and responses in life.

Scripture also teaches that PEOPLE LIVE THEIR LIFE FROM THE HEART. Everything that comprises one's life as a person, one's thoughts, attitudes, feelings, impulses and desires, one's speech and action, all spring from one's heart. In short, A PERSON'S HEART IS THE DIRECTOR OF ONE'S LIFE.¹²⁴

This is in agreement with Dr. Ana Mendez-Ferrell's¹²⁵ opinion when she states that the heart is the organ that determines everything one is, as well as the realization of one's destiny on this earth and in eternity. As Proverbs 4:23 states: "**Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it [spring] the issues of life.**"

Identifying the heart as the source of "**the issues of life**," is not simply saying the heart is the fountain or primal source of life. It also suggests that the heart controls the course of life. The same Hebrew word for "**issues**" is used in other places in Scripture to describe the **boundaries of a territory**. It delineates the point where the boundary begins and the course that the boundary follows from there.¹²⁶

123 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, pp. 32-34

124 Ibid p.33

125 Mendez-Ferrell, A. Dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, FL, USA, The Voice of Light Ministries, Kindle Book, Chapter 9

126 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, pp. 32-34

What God then tells people in Proverbs 4:23 is that one's life not only has *"it's fountain in the heart, but also the direction it takes is determined by the heart."*¹²⁷

The heart's control in one's life is a constant theme in Scripture.

A wise man's heart inclines him to the right, but a fool's heart to the left.

Ecclesiastes 10:2 (ESV)

ONE'S OBEDIENCE OR DISOBEDIENCE TOWARDS GOD IS DETERMINED BY THE CONDITION OF ONE'S HEART.

"But if your heart turns away so that you do not hear, and are drawn away, and worship other gods and serve them,

Deuteronomy 30:17 (NKJV)

No one in Scripture taught that the heart is the source of life more plainly than Jesus Himself. In response to those who accused Him of casting out demons by the power of the devil, he said: ***"Brood of vipers! How can you, being evil, speak good things? For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks. A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good things, and an evil man out of the evil treasure brings forth evil things"*** (Matthew 12:34-35 NKJV).

Saucy¹²⁸ explains that the implications of this teaching are clear; good words and good behaviour do not spring from mere resolutions but from one's being. What defines a person's character and the activities of one's life are the content of the storehouse of one's heart where one has stored up treasure of either good or evil.

As Jesus words attest, one's speech is the primary way of displaying who one is, and that revelation can sometimes be surprising. F.

¹²⁷ Delitzsch, F. (1950), *BIBLICAL COMMENTARY ON THE PROVERBS OF SOLOMON*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Eerdmans, p. 115

¹²⁸ Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, pp. 32-34

Dale Bruner¹²⁹ points out in his comment on Jesus' teaching: "*Speech... is the overflow of our being; it is the main way in which we express what we are; it is the major fruit of our personhood; speech is the self-expressed out (pressed out).*"

Scripture not only teaches that the heart is the director of one's life but that one needs to direct the heart. Thus, one is exhorted: "**Hear, my son, and be wise; And guide your heart in the way.**" (Proverbs 23:19 NKJV); "**Keep your heart with all diligence...**" (Proverbs 4:23 NKJV). One's oversight of one's heart is also seen in the Lord's command:

"Do not lay up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy and where thieves break in and steal; but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys and where thieves do not break in and steal. For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

Matthew 6:19-21 (NKJV)

As beings created in God's image it is one's nature to love. Love's dynamic is to seek its object and cling to it with a binding force. Thus, it is one's very nature to seek out and join to one self what one really values or treasures.

What Jesus tells people is that **THE TREASURE ONE CHOOSES TO LOVE AND STORE UP WILL FINALLY CONTROL ONE IN SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY.** One's heart will be where one's treasure is.¹³⁰

D.A. Carson¹³¹ explained: "*The things most highly treasured occupy the heart, the centre of the personality, embracing mind, emotions and will... and thus the most cherished treasure subtly but infallibly controls the whole person's directions and values.*"

The Bible teaching that the heart is the real person, and the source and director of all personal activities, surely means that the care of one's heart is to be the supreme task of one's life. The heart deserves to be guarded, more than any treasure, for it is one's treasure of greatest value, i.e. one's self (see Mark 8:36-37).

129 Bruner, D.F. (1987), *THE CHRISTBOOK: MATTHEW'S 1-12; Matthews Commentary Vol. 1*, Dallas, TX, USA, Word, p. 465

130 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 74

131 Carson, D.A., (1984), *MATTHEW, MARK, LUKE VOL. 8, EBC*, MI, USA, Zondervan, p. 177

WHAT ONE BRINGS INTO THE HEART AND WHAT ONE EXPELS FROM THE HEART ALL DETERMINE WHO ONE IS, THE DIRECTION OF ONE'S LIFE'S JOURNEY AND ONE'S DESTINY.¹³²

8. CONCLUSION

The perfect example to follow, given to all human beings, is Jesus Christ. He portrays the heart of God for man in all His actions. One only has to read the Gospels to understand what it means to have a heart after God's own heart, like David did.

Jesus taught that the heart is supposed to be the source of life. As He stated: ***For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks. "A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good things, and an evil man out of the evil treasure brings forth evil things"*** (Matthew 12:34-35 NKJV).

This is a perfect portrayal of people's characters. The activities of a person's life are a display of the content of what is inside the person's heart, where all people's treasure is stored up.

This is also exemplified in Scripture where Jesus stated:

"Do not lay up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy and where thieves break in and steal; "but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys and where thieves do not break in and steal. "For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

Matthew 6:19-21 (NKJV)

It is through one's speech that one's heart character is displayed, thus one's love for something, and the fruit of the spirit in which one exemplifies the self, for speech is the self-expressed out.

132 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 74

Not only is the content of a person's heart the director of one's life, but a person also needs to direct the heart as stated in Proverbs 23:19: "**Hear, my son, and be wise; And guide your heart in the way.**"

The Word of God strictly commands a person to "**guard your heart with all diligence.**" (Proverbs 4:23)

As beings created in God's image it is one's nature to love. Love's dynamic is to seek its object and cling to it with a binding force. Thus, it is one's very nature to seek out and join to one self what one really values or treasures.

What Jesus tells people is that **THE TREASURE ONE CHOOSES TO LOVE AND STORE UP WILL FINALLY CONTROL ONE IN SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY.** One's heart will be where one's treasure is.¹³³

In the opinion of this thesis, A PERSON CANNOT REFLECT GOD'S TRUE IMAGE, UNLESS HIS **HEART CONTINUES TO BE TRANSFORMED** INTO A HEART AFTER GOD'S OWN HEART; SO THAT ONE THINKS AS HE THINKS, FEELS AS HE FEELS AND LOVES AS HE LOVES.

God's heart for man was not only portrayed in the New Testament through Jesus, but in the Old Testament, people were expected to write God's commandments "**on their hearts and souls,**" by making the written Word part of themselves and their character.¹³⁴

Every person has a burning need and desire to know God, for Scripture teaches that for every person God placed "**eternity in their hearts.**" (See Ecclesiastes 3:11). From this knowledge of eternity, every person has a need to know God's love and to reciprocate on this love.

If a person's heart is not touched, they cannot recognize and experience the Father's love.

The function of man's heart is to serve as a conduit for the spirit to awaken.

¹³³ Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 74

¹³⁴ Compare Deuteronomy 10:16

This experience flows from the spirit of man to the soul of man where decisions are made. Once a person's spirit has experienced God's love and grace, through the soul one can make the decision to follow after Him and to become more like Him, for the soul represents man's emotions, passions, drives and appetites.

As Oehler¹³⁵ states that the heart is the place "*in which the soul is at home with itself, and is conscious of all it's doing and suffering as its own.*"

The Life Application Study Bible, New Living Translation, Second Edition (Tyndall House: 2007)¹³⁶ states that for Hebrew writers, important functions of life were assigned to different physical organs. The heart was considered the core of a person's intellect and spirit.

Because man functions in the soul and not in the spirit, like it was God's intention for man to do, it is necessary for a person's soul to find healing and recovery to be able to understand how one is created in God's image. Once a person can start to relate to God as a being created in His image, one can start to have faith and from that having hope in His provision. As soon as a person starts to believe that God is the provider, love comes forth for Him and a relationship grows stronger.

The person then becomes convicted by Holy Spirit about God's divine nature and will then be able to make a choice whether they want God to indwell. As soon as the person confesses from the heart that Jesus is the Son of God and that He died for all people's sin so that one does not have to perish, then Holy Spirit will start to indwell in a person's heart.¹³⁷

Thomas¹³⁸ states that, it is through the heart that the spirit can be renewed and refreshed. The Bible cautions one to "**Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it [spring] the issues of life**" (Proverbs 4:23). If a person's heart is not in a healthy state one's spirit is not either. If one's spirit is not in a healthy state then one's soul, which is dependent on one's spirit for life, is not going to be in a healthy state.

135 Oehler, G.F. (1950), *THEOLOGY OF THE OLD TESTAMENT*, Zondervan, MI, USA, p. 153

136 *LIFE APPLICATION STUDY BIBLE, NEW LIVING TRANSLATION, SECOND EDITION*, (2007), IL, USA, Tyndall House Publications, p. 1324

137 Ibid

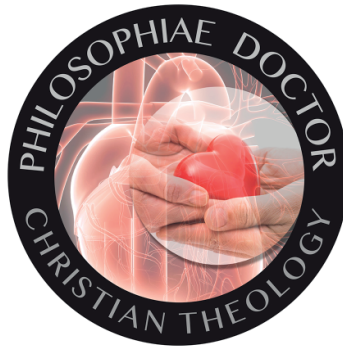
138 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, p. 72

The state of one's heart, therefore one's spirit and soul, can also affect one's physical health as the spirit flows throughout the body. If the heart is in poor condition however, as a result of sin and not being in the right relationship with God, the spirit flowing from the heart will not be filling the soul with renewed life and vitality, but rather with seed sown from the kingdom of darkness.

Scripture also teaches that PEOPLE LIVE THEIR LIFE FROM THE HEART. Everything that comprises one's life as a person, one's thoughts, attitudes, feelings, impulses and desires, one's speech and action, all spring from one's heart. In short, A PERSON'S HEART IS THE DIRECTOR OF ONE'S LIFE.¹³⁹

---oOo---

¹³⁹ Ibid p.33



Chapter Two

THE BODILY IMAGE OF MANKIND COMPARED TO THE IMAGE OF THE TABERNACLE

1. INTRODUCTION

Regeneration means to have the divine life of God in addition to the human life which one already possess. Therefore, regeneration requires another birth in order to possess another life. To be regenerated, to be born again, does not mean to adjust or correct one self. It means to have the life of God. To be regenerated is to be born of God (John 1:13), and to be born of God is to have the life of God, that is, the eternal life (John 3:15-16).

Regeneration, then, is to terminate people of the old creation with all their deeds and to germinate them in the new creation with the divine life. Whenever a person repents, confessing that one is a sinner who is good for nothing except burial, one is accepting Christ's ministry. After repenting, one must believe in the Lord Jesus and accept His ministry of life in order to be germinated. For salvation, people need both repentance and faith. This is what it means to be born of water and of the Spirit, and this is regeneration.¹

For by Him all things were created that are in heaven and that are on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers. All things were created through Him and for Him. And He is before all things, and in Him all things consist.

Collosians 1:16-17 (NKJV)

Although Jesus brought salvation for every person to receive, **a carnal man, who's heart has not yet been regenerated, has not received the seed through the blood of Jesus Christ so that His love can be poured out in the person's heart.** God remains the person's Creator and sustainer of life. The person receives spiritual nutrition and life supplies from God, although the person's heart has not changed into a new-born's heart. The person is alive but has not received eternal life.

¹ Lee, W. (1987), *THE KNOWLEDGE OF LIFE*, Living Stream Ministry, CA, USA, p. 26-28

There is not perfect relationship and cohesion yet, although there is function.

*People are conceived in sin because they are conceived in the flesh and no good thing abides in the flesh. It is corrupt in sin. That is why a person needs to be born again. The man of flesh is ruined by sin and must die; the man of the spirit has to be born in a person so that the person is capable to receive the will of God and live by it.*²

Like a bad genetic code, all people inherited from Adam the capability to sin and the guilt of his transgressions. All people inherited Adam's nature and embedded in that nature is the result of his transgressions.

The knowledge of good and evil, which Adam received from eating from the forbidden tree, was passed down to his descendants. All people carry within them the knowledge of good and evil, of right and wrong. This is why Scripture teaches in Jeremiah 17:9: "**The heart is deceitful above all things, And desperately wicked; Who can know it?**"³

With the first breath of air flowing into the new-born infant's lungs, oxygenating the baby's blood, the foetal heart changes into a perfect functioning organ with four chambers. Its main function is to provide every part of the body with nutrition and oxygen by the pumping of blood.

A person becomes born again by the seed of Christ as one reads in 1 Peter 1: 22-23 "**Since you have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit in sincere love of the brethren, love one another fervently with a pure heart, having been born again, not of corruptible seed but incorruptible, through the word of God which lives and abides forever...**"

With the rebirth of a person, receiving the "**Breath of God**", the Body starts to function as it is intended to function. Christ's blood, which is Holy Spirit filled, now flows through the whole body.

2 Ambridge, L.N., (2011), *WHO SAYS YOU CAN'T BE PERFECT?*, Xilbris Corporation, USA, p. 78-79

3 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 22

Through the seed of Christ's blood, **His love is poured out in the believer's heart through the Holy Spirit** (See Romans 5:5). The person becomes a child of God and does not have to be ashamed to come before Him as Adam and Eve did after the fall.

And now, little children, abide in Him, that when He appears, we may have confidence and not be ashamed before Him at His coming. If you know that He is righteous, you know that everyone who practices righteousness is born of Him.

1 John 2:28-29 (NKJV)

Through the seed of Christ a person is now born again with a heart reflecting the heart of God. It is through the power of the Holy Spirit that the Seed of Christ is sown into the heart of man. The Holy Spirit is the provider for the new-born child of God.

Warden⁴ states that the grace of God “**teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly in the present age, looking for the blessed hope and glorious appearing of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ,**” (Titus 2:12-13 NKJV). According to Paul, people who do not apply their hearts unto wisdom will remain “**yet carnal and walk as men,**” which is a shameful state to be in; yet far better than being lost! (1 Corinthians 3:3).

Scripture teaches: “**the wages of sin is death...**”(Romans 6:23). This indicates the **death of the spiritual heart and the death of the physical body**. Scripture also teaches: “**... the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord**” (Romans 6:23)! God knew that human beings would turn their hearts away from Him, but He never stopped loving them, and He never departed from His original plan for humanity. ⁵

To restore humans to the heart with which they were created, pure and whole in His likeness, God came to earth in the person of Jesus Christ. He came not only to teach people how to live but also to die for one's sin and rebellion, to break the hold that **the corrupt sin nature had on one's heart**. ⁶

⁴ Warden, J.H. Jr. (2009), *ONE HUNDRED REASONS WHY BORN AGAIN BELIEVERS CANNOT LOOSE THEIR SALVATION*, Author House, USA, p.

⁵ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 30-31

⁶ Ibid p. 31

In James 3:9-12 one learns that one's heart should not "**send forth fresh water and bitter.**"

Jesus said:

"If anyone thirsts, let him come to Me and drink. "He who believes in Me, as the Scripture has said, OUT OF HIS HEART WILL FLOW RIVERS OF LIVING WATER." But this He spoke concerning the Spirit, whom those believing in Him would receive; for the Holy Spirit was not yet given, because Jesus was not yet glorified.

John 7:37-39 (NKJV) (Author's Emphasis Added)

Salvation is only the beginning of one's relationship with the heavenly Father. God wants people to draw continually closer to Him and, as His children, reflect His nature. That is why **He calls people to have increasingly transformed hearts that will represent His own heart.**⁷

When God has one's whole heart, He has both the person and all the person's resources. It is then that He can trust one to be faithful stewards of His abundant wealth, for achieving His purposes on earth and for blessing His people. Every person has areas of one's life that one needs to surrender to God. Anytime one holds back something from Him that is a part of one's heart over which one has not allowed Him to be Lord. Instead, one makes oneself the lord over that area.⁸

Weller⁹ is of opinion that because the **heart is that part of a person that is most open to spiritual communication from the Lord**, regeneration of the whole person must begin with the heart.

Prophecy, exorcism and many miracle and mighty works in Jesus' name do not provide convincing evidence that a person is truly born again.

7 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 33

8 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p.34-35

9 Weller A.L. Dr. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE TONGUE, THE HANDS, THE FEET, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 174

All these mentioned traits can be done through people's own strength and through the help from Satan, but genuine love for God and His people, heartfelt obedience to His commands and the Christ-like character traits that Paul calls the "*fruit of the Spirit*" demonstrated consistently over a period of time in a person's life, simply cannot be produced by Satan or by the natural man or woman working in his or her own strength. These can only come about by the Holy Spirit working within a person, giving one new life.¹⁰

Generally speaking, the condition of one's physical heart determines the health of one's body. In physical medical check-ups, a person's heart rate and blood pressure gets measured in determining one's general state of well-being.¹¹

Everything in one's life begins in the heart as Scripture indicates:

Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life.

Proverbs 4:23 (NKJV)

"A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

Luke 6:45 (NKJV)

The condition of one's heart determines the condition of one's life. Just as God designed the physical heart to pump blood to the different organs in the body, distributing minerals and nutrients, He designed the spiritual heart to "pump" life to one's entire being; producing mental, emotional and physical health.¹² Hypothetically the source flowing from the spiritual heart will either be influenced by the Kingdom of God or by the kingdom of darkness.

¹⁰ Ibid

¹¹ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 14

¹² Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 39

Weller¹³ explains that figuratively, the heart can be clean or dirty. Sinful actions and desires contaminate the heart and cause it to become insensitive toward the Lord and toward the concerns and needs of the other parts in the Body of Christ.

Scripture teaches that the Lord has the resources and the desire to clean a person's heart and return the sensitivity needed for all relationships:

Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean; Wash me, and I shall be whiter than snow. ...

CREATE IN ME A CLEAN HEART, O God, And renew a steadfast spirit within me.

Psalm 51:7, 10 (NKJV)(Author's Emphasis Added)

This latter reference indicates a clear direct relationship between a clean heart and a right spirit. One has a direct impact on the other.

The spiritual heart gives a person direction and purpose in life. It is the essence of who the person is. All a person's ideas, all the possibilities for words and actions on a person's part, run through one's heart. It acts, in a sense, as a **spiritual filter**. Depending on the quality of the filter, **it will allow certain possibilities to flow through to actual action.** **This filtering process, then allows the spiritual heart to influence attitudes, perspectives, decisions and actions.**¹⁴

Every person, whether born-again or not, receives life from God. When a person receives the indwelling Holy Spirit, the flow of life will be an abundant stream of resurrection life, springing forth from the centre of communion to the rest of the person's being.¹⁵

A covenant is a sacred agreement; in Abraham's case, an agreement centred on a divine promise of miraculous fertility. Scripture defines God's part of the covenant, as God told Abraham **"As for Me, behold, My covenant is with you, and you shall be a father of**

¹³ Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 172

¹⁴ Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 172

¹⁵ Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

many nations. “No longer shall your name be called Abram, but your name shall be Abraham; for I have made you a father of many nations. “I will make you exceedingly fruitful; and I will make nations of you, and kings shall come from you.” (Genesis 17:4-6 NKJV)

The biblical writers used circumcision more as a metaphor than literally. In Deuteronomy 10:16 the Lord commanded the people who resisted Him **“Therefore circumcise the foreskin of your heart, and be stiff-necked no longer.”**

Further on in Deuteronomy, the circumcision of the heart is described as a divine act, a kind of spiritual surgery. **“And the LORD your God will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul, that you may live.”** (Deuteronomy 30:6 NKJV)

The foreskin of the spiritual heart surrounds the ventricles and can be seen as a dark substance. This, according to the Mendez-Ferrell¹⁶, is part of one's conscience that becomes thickened and insensitive due to sin, unbelief and evil.

As long as the foreskin is not removed and changed through a reformed conscience, it will serve as a cap that will prevent the flow of God for illuminating and irrigating one's soul. **This is the reason why God calls His people to receive circumcision of the heart to bring renovation.**

“Therefore circumcise the foreskin of your heart, and be stiff-necked no longer.

Deuteronomy 10:16 (NKJV)

The foreskin functions as a dark lens which causes a person to see everything distorted and causes distrust in a person. The person's heart is blocked in many ways and the person is unable to even trust God. As it is written in Titus 1:15 ***“To the pure all things are pure, but to those who are defiled and unbelieving nothing is pure; but even their mind and conscience are defiled.”***

¹⁶ Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

This foreskin of corruption can be seen as the **veil in front of the heart**, which prevents people from seeing God. People are created to see and relate to God and to accept **Jesus rends the veil**. When a person experiences a true conversion and the veil is rend, then one can see Jesus, who is the human image of God, and have a relationship with Him.

The Apostle Paul explained this in 2 Corinthians 3:15-18:

But even to this day, when Moses is read, a veil lies on their heart. Nevertheless when one turns to the Lord, the veil is taken away. Now the Lord is the Spirit; and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty. But we all, with unveiled face, beholding as in a mirror the glory of the Lord, are being transformed into the same image from glory to glory, just as by the Spirit of the Lord.

2 Corinthians 3:15-18 (NKJV)

The only One able to circumcise a person's heart is Holy Spirit. He knows the condition of a person's heart and has the power and the love to circumcise one without hurting the person. Although a person's heart may not be fully hardened, there is surely some areas of one's life one needs to surrender to God so that one may be transformed.

If a person truly repents of sin, then the Holy Spirit will be able to remove the "**heart of stone**" within the person, including the wounds, pain and feelings of rejection that have caused one to harden one's heart, and will give one a "**heart of flesh**," a new, soft, and tender heart that restores one's innocence. By allowing the Holy Spirit to do this, God will cleanse, purify and sanctify ones' heart.¹⁷

"Are you tired? Worn out? Burned out on religion? Come to me. Get away with me and you'll recover your life. I'll show you how to take a real rest. Walk with me and work with me—watch how I do it. LEARN THE UNFORCED RHYTHMS OF GRACE. I won't lay anything heavy or ill-fitting on you. Keep company with me and you'll learn to live freely and lightly."

Matthew 11:28-30 (The Message) (Author's Emphasis Added)

¹⁷ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 90

The “**unforced rhythms of grace**” mentioned in the verse above indicates a covenant relationship with God. To be in covenant with Him can be compared to the pacemaker of life, which pulses and brings function in God’s perfect rhythm.

One can understand that arrhythmia happens when there is **no cohesion or good order between the different fields of the heart**. The heart is still beating and pumping blood, but the rhythm is erratic. Thus, the body is still receiving all the blood and nutrients it needs but because the heart is in overdrive, and not in pace, the body also starts to suffer by feeling tired and burdened. If an arrhythmia is not being dealt with, it will eventually lead to more severe conditions affecting the whole body, such as heart failure, stroke or even death.

In a covenant relationship, arrhythmia may also occur, and if not dealt with, will make the Body of Christ suffer.

In marriage, it is fornication for a man or woman to have sexual union before a marriage vow is in place. Similarly, if one gets out of God’s timing and attempt to manipulate one’s way into a position of authority inside the Body of Christ, it is also a form of spiritual fornication.

In the Temple of Baal where Jezebel worshiped, there were prostitutes. In the Book of Revelation one reads that the Church of Thyatira was rebuked because it tolerated Jezebel and her fornications. **In modern time one needs to consider the seduction of the enemy concerning God’s timing.**

God knows every person’s times and seasons and if one cannot wait for His timing, then the person will have no peace. When Jezebel is active, there is no peace.

The most common body organ used as a **spiritual reference in the Bible was the heart, as a symbol of intellect and wisdom**, and blood as a symbol of the life principle.¹⁸ The kidneys receive special attention in the Bible as the seat of conscience, emotions, desire and wisdom. The “**reins**” which is implied by the Oxford English Dictionary¹⁹ as the loins, is considered the site of physical strength and prowess (see Job 40:7; 2 Samuel 20:8).

18 Smith, C.R. (2004), *THE PHYSICIAN EXAMINES THE BIBLE*, Hallmark-Hubner Press Inc. NY, USA

19 OXFORD ENGLISH DICTIONARY – loins, kidneys, reins, [Online] Available From: <http://www.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/english/kidney>, [Date Accessed: 11th May 2016]

However, according to Eknayan²⁰ unlike the kidneys, in the Bible, the heart is rarely referred to as an anatomical instrument (see 1 Samuel 25:37). Conversely, the liver, which is cited repeatedly as an anatomic organ alongside the kidneys in animal sacrificial offerings, is used only once figuratively in the Bible as the site of intense grief.

Mine eyes do fail with tears, my bowels are troubled, my liver is poured upon the earth, for the destruction of the daughter of my people; because the children and the sucklings swoon in the streets of the city.

Lamentation 2:11 (KJV)

The kidneys are mentioned five times in the Bible as the organs examined by God to pass judgment on a person. They are mentioned either before or after, but **always parallel with the heart**, as seen in Jeremiah 17:10 where it is written: ***“I the LORD search the heart, I try the reins, even to give every man according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his doings.”***

Also in Psalm 26:2: ***“Examine me, O LORD, and prove me; try my reins and my heart.”***

Hypothetically, the kidneys seem to share their position as the site of affections with the heart as in the following verse of grief: ***“Thus my heart was grieved, and I was pricked in my reins.”*** (Psalm 73:21 KJV). No other internal organ of the body is mentioned in parallel in the Bible as often as are the heart and the kidneys.

According to Grange²¹, life is full of stresses, which cause fluctuation in one’s spiritual blood pressure or a fluctuation in one’s faith in Christ. Mendez-Ferrell²² explains that the human spirit has substances of which, according to Scripture, faith is a measurable substance.

Hebrews 11:1-2 states ***“Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen. For by it the elders obtained a good testimony.”***

20 Eknayan, G. Dr. (2005), ‘The Kidneys in the Bible: What Happened?’ *Journal of the American Society of Nephrology*, vol. 16, no. 12, November, pp. 3464-3471

21 Grange, M.J. RN, (2010), *NEITHER ROOT NOR BRANCH: THE DISASTER MANUAL FOR DEPRESSION*, Tafford Publishing, USA, p. 116-117

22 Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

In the same manner as physiological blood pressure has upper limits and lower limits, so does one's spiritual blood pressure. Upper limits can be seen in sin, such as pride, anger, rage etc. and lower limits can be seen in a form such as addictions, depression, suicidal thoughts, hopelessness etc. Romans 12:3 states: ***“For I say, through the grace given to me, to everyone who is among you, not to think of himself more highly than he ought to think, but to think soberly, as God has dealt to each one a measure of faith.”***

A person might try to stabilize one's spiritual blood pressure artificially, but one can choose to come to God and trust in Him for healing through faith. In Luke 8:48, Jesus told the woman who suffered from blood flow for 12 years: ***“And He said to her, “Daughter, be of good cheer; your faith has made you well. Go in peace.”***

Scripture teaches that if a person has the faith as small as a mustard seed, nothing is impossible and one is strong and sound (see Matthew 17:19-20).

Just as faith is a ***“substance of things hoped for”*** but ***“not seen”***, one's physical blood pressure is also a result of things hoped for but not seen. A physiological blood pressure is a measure of one's life sustainability. If a person's blood pressure is too low or weak, then life cannot be sustained in the body.

Without a spiritual blood pressure, which is faith in Jesus Christ, one is also spiritually dead. Through faith, one can repent of one's sin. The trial of faith, or one can say, gaining a good spiritual blood pressure, is more precious than gold. As the first book of Peter states:

that the genuineness of your faith, being much more precious than gold that perishes, though it is tested by fire, may be found to praise, honor, and glory at the revelation of Jesus Christ,

1 Peter 1:7 (NKJV)

In the Hebrew as well as the Greek culture, the intellectual and emotional dimensions of human life are thought of as the whole person, heart, soul and spirit, which are not considered as separate from the inner person, but each is reference to the whole inner person and is to be viewed in relation to the body.

As a result, the inner thought and knowledge dimension is regarded in close relation to right conduct.

For the word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, AND IS A DISCERNER OF THE THOUGHTS AND INTENTS OF THE HEART.

Hebrews 4:12 (NKJV) (Author's Emphasis Added)

Herbst²³ explains that the 'transplanted memory phenomenon' has proven that there is **no way the heart cannot store memories, thoughts and passions**. This is a clear indication that the Biblical concept of the heart as the seat of one's soul, intellect and character can no longer be taken as purely poetic or romantic.

As mentioned previously, the heart in the Bible is not necessarily a physical reference of the blood-pumping organ inside one's chest. The Biblical heart involves the mind, will, emotions and conscience of man. Proverbs 3:5 is a clear indication that God's acceptance of man is based on the condition of one's heart as it states: "***Trust in the LORD with all your heart, And lean not on your own understanding.***"

Moreover, one reads that God demands one's whole heart as stated in Psalm 119:34 "***Give me understanding, and I shall keep Your law; Indeed, I shall observe it with my whole heart. ...***" In verse 69 "***The proud have forged a lie against me, But I will keep Your precepts with my whole heart.***"

2. NEW LIFE

2.1 Physiology of a Foetal Heart²⁴

23 Herbst, T. dr. (2014), *THE DARK SIDE OF LEADERSHIP: A PSYCHO-SPIRITUAL APPROACH TOWARDS UNDERSTANDING THE ORIGIN OF PERSONALITY DISFUNCTIONS, DERAILMENT AND THE RESTORATION OF PERSONALITY*, Author House, IN, USA, p. 111-113

24 UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN SCHOOL OF MEDICINE AND PUBLIC HEALTH; Department of Pediatrics, *Foetal Heart*

Prior to birth, the human baby's heart works in concert with the mother's placenta to provide oxygen rich blood to the body of the baby. Before a baby is born, very little blood is sent to the lungs. Most blood is diverted away from the lungs through a vessel called the *ductus arteriosus*. This vessel is as large as the aorta before birth.

At the time of the child's birth, at the very first breath of air, the physiology of the heart and vascular system changes so that the lungs can become the source of oxygen for the baby.

When everything happens the way intended for it to happen, the transition goes smoothly and the *ductus arteriosus* closes within the first day. Once the *ductus arteriosus* closes, the blood, which is low in oxygen, returning from the body is separated from the oxygen rich blood returning from the lungs.

The development in the foetal heart is fantastically complicated and is largely completed by the 9th week of pregnancy. As it turns out, there are many situations in which a malformed heart will function adequately in foetal life, but will not be successful after birth when the transition in physiology is complete and the *ductus arteriosus* closes.

2.1.1 Fetal Circulation

Oxygenated blood flows from the placenta and returns to the right atrium via the umbilical vein and *ductus venosus*. The blood then passes from the right atrium to the left atrium via the patent *foramen ovale*.

The second foetal shunt occurs between the main pulmonary artery and the descending aortic arch in the form of the arterial duct. (*ductus arteriosus*). Most blood being pumped out of the right ventricle passes through the arterial duct into the descending aorta.

Physiology [Online] Available From: <http://www.pediatrics.wisc.edu/research/research-groups/hokanson/heart-physiology.html>;
[Date Accessed: 30th November 2014]

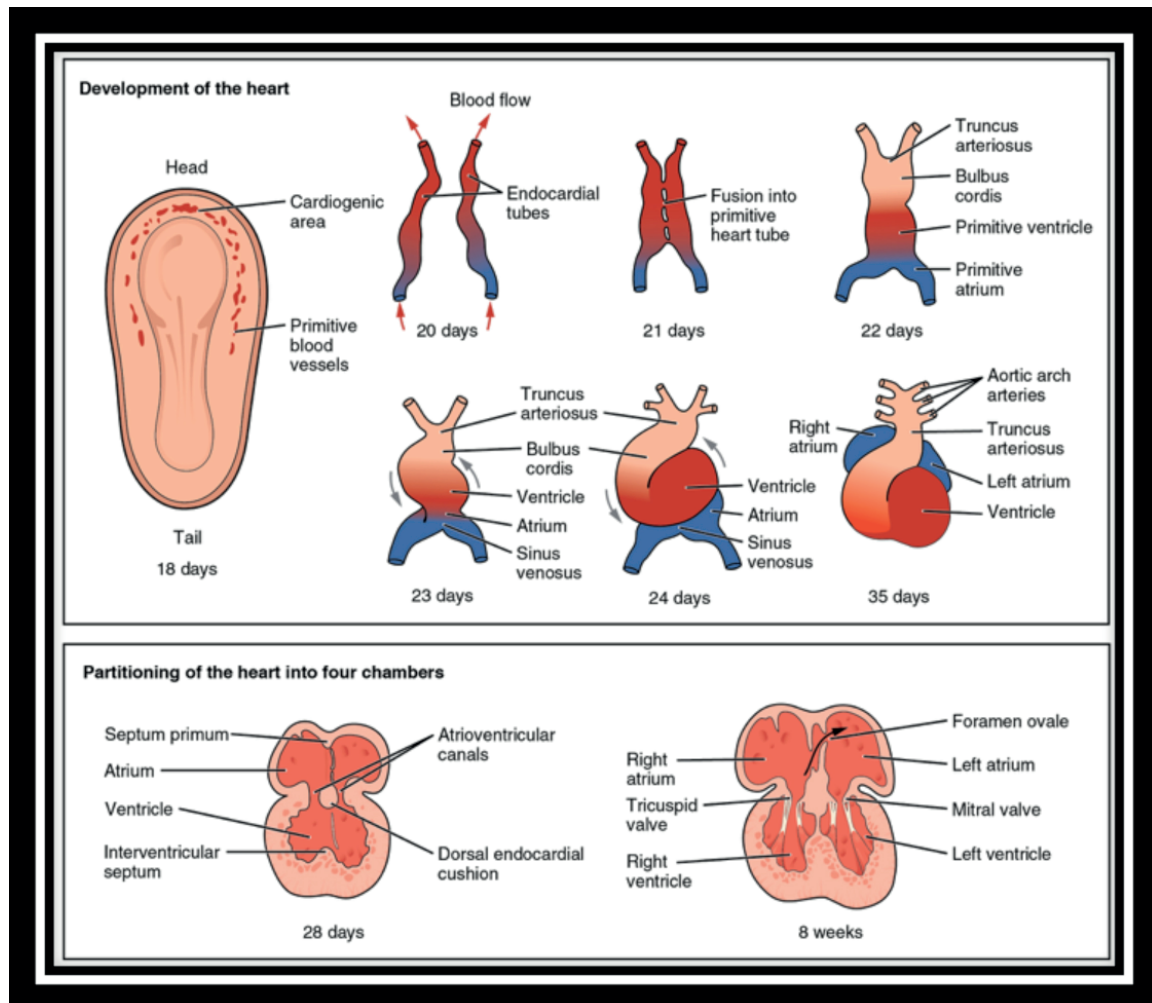


Figure 1: Development of the Human Heart²⁵

2.1.2 Immediate postnatal circulation

The physiological adaptations that occur after birth result in a marked drop in Pulmonary Vascular Resistance and an increase in the pulmonary venous return to the left atrium. This change results in functional closure of the *foramen ovale*. A postnatal increase in the systemic vascular resistance and arterial pressure occurs coupled with the fall in Pulmonary Vascular Resistance.

25 **FIGURE: DEVELOPMENT OF THE HUMAN HEART**, [Online] Available From: https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/74/2037_Embryonic_Development_of_Heart.jpg, [Date Accessed: 29th March 2016]

Consequently, blood flows from the aorta to the pulmonary circulation via the arterial duct until it constricts and finally closes after birth.²⁶

2.1.3 Normal Post-natal Circulation

Deoxygenated blood passing through the right-heart structures is completely separated from the oxygenated blood passing through the left-heart structures. The *foramen ovale* and arterial duct have closed, preventing shunting between the atria and the great arteries, respectively.²⁷

2.2 Life of the Carnal Man

In the opinion of this thesis a clear comparison can be drawn using an analogy of the foetal heart compared to the heart of a carnal man. Just as a foetus' heart functions differently before birth, so does the carnal man's spiritual heart function before being born again.

A foetus in utero does not breathe in oxygen, but the blood of a foetus bypasses the lungs and receives oxygen from the mother through the placenta. All the nutrition needed for foetal growth is provided for via the placenta. In the same manner does a carnal man, whom is not "*born again*," receive from Father God, for Scripture teaches that He is the Creator and Provider of all things:

For by Him all things were created that are in heaven and that are on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers. All things were created through Him and for Him. And He is before all things, and in Him all things consist.

Collosians 1:16-17 (NKJV)

26 UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN SCHOOL OF MEDICINE AND PUBLIC HEALTH; Department of Pediatrics, *Foetal Heart Physiology* [Online] Available From: <http://www.pediatrics.wisc.edu/research/research-groups/hokanson/heart-physiology.html>); [Date Accessed: 30th November 2014]

27 UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN SCHOOL OF MEDICINE AND PUBLIC HEALTH; Department of Pediatrics, *Foetal Heart Physiology* [Online] Available From: <http://www.pediatrics.wisc.edu/research/research-groups/hokanson/heart-physiology.html>); [Date Accessed: 30th November 2014]

Although Jesus brought salvation for every person to receive, a carnal man, whose heart has not yet been regenerated, has not received the seed through the blood of Jesus Christ so that His love can be poured out in the person's heart. God remains the person's Creator and sustainer of life. The person receives spiritual nutrition and life supplies from God, although the person's heart has not changed into a new-born's heart. The person is alive but has not received eternal life. There is not perfect relationship and cohesion yet, although there is function.

2.3 The Corrupted Heart

Ambridge²⁸ explains that all good things God had created became corrupted by sin. God determined that the situation was unfixable; the inhabitants of the earth were ruined. They had to be removed. People are corrupted by sin and are ruined. The seed of corruption is within man in flesh who was "**conceived in sin and shaped in iniquity.**" (See Psalm 51:5).

People are conceived in sin because they are conceived in the flesh and no good thing abides in the flesh. It is corrupt in sin. That is why a person needs to be born again. The man of flesh is ruined by sin and must die; the man of the spirit has to be born in a person so that the person is capable to receive the will of God and live by it.

The basic result of walking in the will of God is that there must be a distinct difference between the people of God and the people who are not of God.²⁹ Maldonado³⁰ explains, from the point of Adam and Eve's disobedience, humanity's corruption continued in human history until it reached a peak in the days of Noah.

Then the LORD saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. And the LORD was sorry that He had made man on the earth, and He was grieved in His heart.

Genesis 6:5-6(NKJV)

28 Ambridge, L.N., (2011), *WHO SAYS YOU CAN'T BE PERFECT?*, USA, Xilbris Corporation, p. 78-79

29 Ibid p. 78

30 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 21

God saw the wickedness and continual evil imaginations of man that were a reflection of humankind corrupted by sin.³¹ This was the point when God destroyed the world through a flood, the only survivors being Noah and his family, whom God preserved (see Genesis 6). God made a comparison between Noah, who's heart followed God and the generations of people walking the earth at that time.

But Noah found grace in the eyes of the LORD. This is the genealogy of Noah. Noah was a just man, perfect in his generations. Noah walked with God.

Genesis 6:8-9 (NKJV)

Noah was the most righteous man on the earth at the time of the flood, and that is why he and his family were spared. However, even Noah's heart was affected by the sin nature he had inherited. Although the earth was repopulated by Noah's family, corruption infiltrated the world again and people's hearts withdrew from God once more. This is the inevitable legacy of people's corrupt nature.³²

Adam's sin spiritually separated the human race from its Creator. Adam's sin also planted a seed into man's spiritual makeup. They ate the fruit from the tree of knowledge of good and evil, of right and wrong. That knowledge manifested itself immediately. This is evident in the fact that they immediately felt ashamed of their nakedness. They were exposed in their sinfulness and covered up in the only way they knew how. They still knew the voice of God when He spoke to them. It is important to note, nowhere in Scripture is mentioned that man could not recognize the sound of the voice of God anymore or didn't know when God is speaking to a person.³³

Like a bad genetic code, all people inherited from Adam the capability to sin and the guilt of his transgressions. All people inherited Adam's nature and embedded in that nature is the result of his transgressions.

31 Ambridge, L.N., (2011), *WHO SAYS YOU CAN'T BE PERFECT?*, Xilbris Corporation, USA, p. 78-79

32 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 22

33 Ambridge, L.N., (2011), *WHO SAYS YOU CAN'T BE PERFECT?*, Xilbris Corporation, USA, p. 78-79

The knowledge of good and evil, which Adam received from eating from the forbidden tree, was passed down to his descendants. All people carry within them the knowledge of good and evil, of right and wrong. This is why Scripture teaches in Jeremiah 17:9: “**The heart is deceitful above all things, And desperately wicked; Who can know it?**”

2.4 The First Breath of Life

With the first breath of air flowing into the new-born infant's lungs, oxygenating the baby's blood, the foetal heart changes into a perfect functioning organ with four chambers. Its main function is to provide every part of the body with nutrition and oxygen by the pumping of blood.

A person becomes born again by the seed of Christ as one reads in 1 Peter 1: 22-23 “**Since you have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit in sincere love of the brethren, love one another fervently with a pure heart, having been born again, not of corruptible seed but incorruptible, through the word of God which lives and abides forever...**”

With the rebirth of a person, receiving the “**Breath of God**”, the Body starts to function as it is intended to function. Christ's blood, which is Holy Spirit filled, now flows through the whole body.

Through the seed of Christ's blood, His love is poured out in the believer's heart through the Holy Spirit (See Romans 5:5). The person becomes a child of God and does not have to be ashamed to come before Him as Adam and Eve did after the fall.

And now, little children, abide in Him, that when He appears, we may have confidence and not be ashamed before Him at His coming. If you know that He is righteous, you know that everyone who practices righteousness is born of Him.

1 John 2:28-29 (NKJV)

Once the seed of righteousness has been implanted in a person's heart, the person is born into a new life without death, for Scripture teaches that a person who is born of God does not sin because of the Seed.

Whoever has been born of God does not sin, for His seed remains in him; and he cannot sin, because he has been born of God. In this the children of God and the children of the devil are manifest: Whoever does not practice righteousness is not of God, nor is he who does not love his brother. For this is the message that you heard from the beginning, that we should love one another,

1 John 3:9-11 (NKJV)

Through the seed of Christ a person is now born again with a heart reflecting the heart of God. It is through the power of the Holy Spirit that the Seed of Christ is sown into the heart of man. The Holy Spirit is now the provider for the new-born child of God.

Brand³⁴ is of opinion that all born again baby believers receives a portion of faith in Christ Jesus as a gift, until the baby is weaned off milk. God created all people with a free will and expects a person to learn how to make independent decisions. One can choose to trust in God's provision and move away from self-provision.

Once a person becomes born again and starts to grow in knowledge of the Word of God and walk in His statutes, the person's heart starts to grow in knowledge and in truth. The seed of the kingdom of darkness, which was sown into the heart starts to come to light and starts to get uprooted through the truth. The person's heart starts to be washed clean by the blood of the Lamb. The person starts to experience a change of heart.

Warden³⁵ states that the grace of God ***“teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly in the present age, looking for the blessed hope and glorious appearing of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ,”*** (Titus 2:12-13 NKJV). According to Paul, people who do not apply their hearts unto wisdom will remain ***“yet carnal and walk as men,”*** which is a shameful state to be in; yet far better than being lost! (1 Corinthians 3:3).

³⁴ Brand, Connie M.J. Prof. Dr., Academic Discussion on the Topic of the Spiritual Heart,

³⁵ Warden, J.H. Jr. (2009), *ONE HUNDRED REASONS WHY BORN AGAIN BELIEVERS CANNOT LOOSE THEIR SALVATION*, USA, Author House

Romans 5:13 and Romans 4:8 teaches that God will not impute sin to the born again, it was never His intention to liberate one's flesh or give it a license to sin. He crucified the flesh to free one's soul by endowing it with the liberating privilege of boldly entering His presence and be received as His son as one reads in Romans 6:6.

knowing this, that our old man was crucified with Him, that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves of sin.

Romans 6:6 (NKJV)

In 2 Timothy 2:19 one reads that everyone who names the name of Christ should depart from iniquity.

2.5 The Restoration of the Spiritual Heart

Scripture teaches: “***the wages of sin is death...***”(Romans 6:23). This indicates the death of the spiritual heart and the death of the physical body. Scripture also teaches: “***... the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord***” (Romans 6:23)! God knew that human beings would turn their hearts away from Him, but He never stopped loving them, and He never departed from His original plan for humanity.³⁶

To restore humans to the heart with which they were created, pure and whole in His likeness, God came to earth in the person of Jesus Christ. He came not only to teach people how to live but also to die for one's sin and rebellion, to break the hold that the corrupt sin nature had on one's heart.³⁷

Long before the arrival of Jesus as man on earth, He promised people through one of His prophets, “***I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you***” (Ezekiel 36:26).

³⁶ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 30-31

³⁷ Ibid p. 31

Maldonado³⁸ is of opinion that two things have to happen to initiate this on-going process of heart transformation. Certain foundational changes have to take place in a person's life.

The first change is to receive a new heart, a spirit made alive in Christ. Ephesians 2:4-6 explains this:

But God, who is rich in mercy, because of His great love with which He loved us, even when we were dead in trespasses, made us alive together with Christ (by grace you have been saved), and raised us up together, and made us sit together in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus,

Ephesians 2:4-6 (NKJV)

The second change is to receive God's Holy Spirit to dwell in one's heart. In Acts 2:38 one reads:

Then Peter said to them, "Repent, and let every one of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.

Act 2:38 (NKJV)

The experience of receiving a new heart is also called being "born again." Jesus said, ***"Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God...Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God"*** (John 3:3, 5).

Peter used the word "new birth" for a new heart.³⁹

Praise be to the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! In his great mercy he has given us new birth into a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead,

1 Peter 1:3 (NIV)

38 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 32

39 Ibid p. 32

Jesus Christ died on the cross to restore people to their heavenly Father. This was the original plan in effect from eternity. The Bible calls Jesus “**the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world**” (Revelation 13:8).

Jesus is the One who paid for every sin committed by the human race, all its iniquity, rebellion, and transgressions, so that one could be free from one’s corrupt nature.

Through His death and resurrection Jesus enabled the human race to return to its original state of purity and wholeness of heart, the way the Father had created it in the beginning.

In this thesis opinion, in the same manner as a deformed foetal heart cannot give life support when the child is born, so does a born again Christian need a complete change of spiritual heart to be able to receive new life in Christ.

People enter the “new birth” when they are willingly receiving Christ’s sacrifice and His righteousness, applying them to them selves, and accepting Him as their Lord and Saviour.

A person should acknowledge that one has lived far from God, independent of Him and His purposes. One surrenders one’s life to Him, opening one’s heart so that His presence can dwell within one. Jesus said: “**If anyone loves Me, he will keep My word; and My Father will love him, and We will come to him and make Our home with him**” (John 14:23).

The above-mentioned changes make it possible for one to experience the supernatural transformation of one’s heart. Once a person is a “new creation,” one can live according to the life and counsel of God’s Spirit, with the ability to reject the elements of the sinful nature within one that try to win back control.

One can eliminate areas of disobedience and selfishness in one’s life that, as James wrote, “**ought not be so**” (James 3:10) for people who have received a new heart from God.

For if you live according to the flesh, you will die; but if by the Spirit you put to death the misdeeds of the body, you will live.

Romans 8:13 (NIV)

Therefore put to death your members which are on the earth: fornication, uncleanness, passion, evil desire, and covetousness, which is idolatry. Because of these things the wrath of God is coming upon the sons of disobedience,

Colossians 3:5-6(NKJV)

In James 3:9-12 one learns that one's heart should not ***"send forth fresh water and bitter."***

Jesus said:

"If anyone thirsts, let him come to Me and drink. "He who believes in Me, as the Scripture has said, out of his heart will flow rivers of living water." But this He spoke concerning the Spirit, whom those believing in Him would receive; for the Holy Spirit was not yet given, because Jesus was not yet glorified.

John 7:37-39 (NKJV)

Salvation is only the beginning of one's relationship with the heavenly Father. God wants people to draw continually closer to Him and, as His children, reflect His nature. That is why He calls one to have increasingly transformed hearts that will represent His own heart.⁴⁰

When God has one's whole heart, He has both the person and all the person's resources. It is then that He can trust one to be faithful stewards of His abundant wealth, for achieving His purposes on earth and for blessing His people. Every person has areas of one's life that one needs to surrender to God. Anytime one holds back something from Him that is a part of one's heart over which one has not allowed Him to be Lord. Instead, one makes oneself the lord over that area.⁴¹

3. SALVATION VS REGENERATION

40 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 33

41 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p.34-35

3.1 Defining Salvation

According to the Merriam Webster Dictionary⁴², “salvation” can be defined in Christianity as **“the act of saving someone from sin or evil: the state of being saved from sin or evil, or something that saves someone or something from danger or a difficult situation.”**

Theopedia⁴³ explains salvation as referring to the act of God’s grace in delivering His people from bondage to sin and condemnation, **“conveying them into the kingdom of the Son of His love.”** (Colossians 1:13), and giving them **“the gift of eternal life in Christ Jesus”** (Romans 6:23), all on the basis of what Christ accomplished in His atoning sacrifice. The Bible says people are saved by grace through faith; and that not of one self, it is the gift of God (Ephesians 2:8).

In theology, the study of salvation is called **soteriology**, from the Greek **soteria**, meaning “salvation.” Salvation, virtually synonymous with overall concept of redemption, includes a past, present, and future sense. As Christians, people are saved from the penalty of sin when God brought them to faith in Christ; people are presently being saved from the power of sin as the Holy Spirit sanctifies them; and people will someday be saved from the presence of sin when they meet Christ face to face in glory.

3.2 Defining Regeneration

The Greek word for **regeneration** is **palingenasia**, which is composed of **paling** “again” and **genesis** “birth”. Thus, its participial form **“regenerated,”** which literally means **“born again.”** Although a significant New Testament term, according to Strong’s Concordance it appears only rarely (Titus 3:5; Matthew 19:28).

The Wycliffe Bible Dictionary⁴⁴ explains, *“Other New Testament expressions are used for the same truth, but all have in common the idea of a dramatic change likened to and called*

42 MERRIAM WEBSTER DICTIONARY – Salvation Definition, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/salvation>, [Date Accessed: 2nd April 2016]

43 THEOPEdia – Salvation Definition, [Online] Available From: <http://www.theopedia.com/salvation>, [Date Accessed: 2nd April 2016]

44 WYCLIFFE BIBLE DICTIONARY ONLINE – Regeneration, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblestudytools.com/wycl/>, [Date Accessed: 2nd April 2016]

a new birth, hence, to be born again or born from above (See John 3:3; 1 Peter 1:23), born of God (John 1:13)."

Although this definition is not doctrinally complex, in its significance and reality it is profound. Witness Lee⁴⁵ explains: "*Regeneration is a rebirth which brings a new life. It is absolutely a matter of life, not a matter doing. Regeneration is simply to have life other than the life one already has. One has already received the human life from one's parents; now one needs to receive the divine life from God.*"

Hence, regeneration means to have the divine life of God in addition to the human life which one already possess. Therefore, regeneration requires another birth in order to possess another life. To be regenerated, to be born again, does not mean to adjust or correct one self. It means to have the life of God, just as to be born of one's parents means to have the life of one's parents. To be regenerated is to be born of God (John 1:13), and to be born of God is to have the life of God, that is, the eternal life (John 3:15-16).

Regeneration, then, is to terminate people of the old creation with all their deeds and to germinate them in the new creation with the divine life. Whenever a person repents, confessing that one is a sinner who is good for nothing except burial, one is accepting Christ's ministry. After repenting, one must believe in the Lord Jesus and accept His ministry of life in order to be germinated. For salvation, people need both repentance and faith. This is what it means to be born of water and of the Spirit, and this is regeneration.

3.3 Regeneration Before Saving Faith

From the definition mentioned above, regeneration can be seen as the act of God awakening the spiritual life within a person, bringing one from spiritual death to spiritual life.

Grudem explains in the book "*Bible Doctrine: Essential teachings of the Christian Faith*," (2014)⁴⁶ that "*on this it is natural to understand that regeneration comes before saving faith.*"

⁴⁵ Lee, W. (1987), *THE KNOWLEDGE OF LIFE*, CA, USA, Living Stream Ministry, p. 26-28

⁴⁶ Grudem, W.A. (2014), *BIBLE DOCTRINE: ESSENTIAL TEACHINGS OF THE CHRISTIAN FAITH*, MI, USA, Harper Collins, E-book

It is in fact this work of God that gives one the spiritual ability to respond to God in faith. When stating that “regeneration comes before saving faith” one should understand that mostly these acts happen so close together that it might seem simultaneous.

As God addresses the effective call of the Gospel to a person, He brings regeneration to the person and the person responds in faith and repentance to this call. Through the eyes of man it is difficult to distinguish between the time lapse of regeneration and saving faith, for it is difficult to perceive with one’s carnal eyes and mind the works of God.

Grudem⁴⁷ further explains that if one were to use the language that closely conforms to the actual wording in Scripture, it would be better to restrict the word “regeneration” to the instantaneous initial work of God in which He imparts spiritual life to a person. Then one can emphasize that one cannot see regeneration in itself, but can only see the result of it in one’s life, and that faith in Christ for salvation is the first visible result. In fact, one can never know that one is regenerated until one comes to faith in Christ, for that is the outward evidence of this hidden inward work of God: once a person comes to saving faith in Christ, one knows that he is born again.

By way of application, one should realize that the explanation of the gospel message in Scripture does not take the form of a command, “Be born again and you will be saved,” but rather, “Believe in Jesus Christ and you will be saved.” This is the consistent pattern in the preaching of the gospel throughout the book of Acts and also the descriptions in the gospel of the Epistles.⁴⁸

3.4 Genuine Regeneration Must Bring Result in Life

In the Book of John one reads, “**Everyone who believes in Jesus Christ is born of God,**” (1 John 5:1 NIV). There are also other results of regeneration, many mentioned in the first epistle of John. For example, John says: “**Whoever has been born of God does not sin, for His seed remains in him; and he cannot sin, because he has been born of God.**” (1 John 3:9 NKJV). Here John explains that a person who is born again has that spiritual seed

⁴⁷ Ibid

⁴⁸ Ibid

(that life-generating and growing power) within one and that this keeps a person living a life free of continual sin. This does not mean that a person will have a perfect life, but that the pattern of life will not be continuing indulgence in sin.

It is important to note that John refers to every person who are truly born again ***“If you know that He is righteous, you know that everyone who practices righteousness is born of Him.”*** (1 John 2:29 NKJV)

Grudem’s⁴⁹ opinion is that a genuine Christ like love will be one specific result in life. ***“Be-loved, let us love one another, for love is of God; and everyone who loves is born of God and knows God.”*** (1 John 4:7 NKJV).

Another effect of regeneration is overcoming the world:

For this is the love of God, that we keep His commandments. And His commandments are not burdensome. For whatever is born of God overcomes the world. And this is the victory that has overcome the world--our faith.

1 John 5:3-4 (NKJV)

John explains that regeneration gives the ability to overcome the pressures and temptations of the world that otherwise keeps one from obeying God’s commandments and follow His path. John says that one will overcome these pressures and therefore it will not be burdensome to obey God’s commands, but he implies that it will rather be joyful.⁵⁰

John notes another result of regeneration is protection from Satan himself: ***“We know that whoever is born of God does not sin; but he who has been born of God keeps himself, and the wicked one does not touch him.”*** (John 5:18 NKJV).

Though Satan will attack believers, John reassures readers that ***“You are of God, little children, and have overcome them, because He who is in you is greater than he who***

49 Grudem, W.A. (2014), *BIBLE DOCTRINE: ESSENTIAL TEACHINGS OF THE CHRISTIAN FAITH*, MI, USA, Harper Collins, e-book

50 Ibid

is in the world.” (1 John 4:4 NKJV) This great power of the Holy Spirit within a person keeps one safe from ultimate spiritual harm by the evil one.

It is important to realize that these mentioned passages show that it is impossible for a person to be regenerated and not become truly converted.

Other results of regeneration are listed by Paul where he speaks of “the fruit of the Spirit,” that is, the result of life that is produced by the power of the Holy Spirit working within every believer: **“But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control. Against such there is no law”** (Galatians 5:22-23 NKJV).

If there is true regeneration, then this will be the evidence in a person’s life, but by contrast, those who are unbelievers, including those who are pretending to be believers will clearly lack these character traits in their lives. Jesus told His disciples:

“Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous wolves. “You will know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes from thornbushes or figs from thistles? “Even so, every good tree bears good fruit, but a bad tree bears bad fruit. “A good tree cannot bear bad fruit, nor can a bad tree bear good fruit. “Every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire. “Therefore by their fruits you will know them. “Not everyone who says to Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ shall enter the kingdom of heaven, but he who does the will of My Father in heaven. “Many will say to Me in that day, ‘Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in Your name, cast out demons in Your name, and done many wonders in Your name?’”

Matthew 7:15-22 (NKJV)

Weller⁵¹ is of opinion that because the heart is that part of a person that is most open to spiritual communication from the Lord, regeneration of the whole person must begin with the heart.

Prophecy, exorcism and many miracle and mighty works in Jesus’ name do not provide convincing evidence that a person is truly born again.

⁵¹ Weller A.L. Dr. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE TONGUE, THE HANDS, THE FEET, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 174

All these mentioned traits can be done through people's own strength and through the help from Satan, but genuine love for God and His people, heartfelt obedience to His commands and the Christlike character traits that Paul calls the "*fruit of the Spirit*" demonstrated consistently over a period of time in a person's life, simply cannot be produced by Satan or by the natural man or woman working in his or her own strength. These can only come about by the Holy Spirit working within a person, giving one new life.⁵²

4. PHYSIOLOGICAL STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF THE HUMAN HEART

4.1 Physiological Definition for "Heart"

According to the Biology Dictionary, the heart can be defined as: "***(anatomy) The chambered muscular organ of vertebrates that moves blood through the body by repeated, rhythmic contractions.***"⁵³

Another definition given by Merriam Webster Dictionary⁵⁴ is: "***the central or innermost part,***" or "***the essential or most vital part of something.***"

4.2 The Heart: The Physical Reality

Generally speaking, the condition of one's physical heart determines the health of one's body. In physical medical check-ups, a person's heart rate and blood pressure gets measured in determining one's general state of well-being.⁵⁵

52 Ibid

53 BIOLOGY ONLINE – *heart*, (2009), [Online] Available From: <http://www.biology-online.org/dictionary/Heart>, [Date Accessed: 21st November 2015]

54 MERRIAM WEBSTER.COM – Defining Heart, (2015), [Online] Available From: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/heart>, [Date Accessed: 19th February 2016]

55 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 14

By extensively studying the physical heart and its different functions, one cannot do anything but marvel at the miraculous wonder of its creation. For the size, which can be compared to the size of a man's fist, it accomplishes amazing things for one's benefit. It beats incessantly on average, 60 to 80 beats per minute, 24 hours a day, until the day one dies.

All of the blood in a person's body gets pumped through the heart, into the extremities and back again in 20 seconds. This cycle pumps approximately 5600 millilitres of blood, 1000 times a day throughout the body. (Weller: p. 165)⁵⁶

5. THE SPIRITUAL DIMENSIONS OF THE HEART

Everything in one's life begins in the heart as Scripture indicates:

Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life.

Proverbs 4:23 (NKJV)

"A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

Luke 6:45 (NKJV)

From these verses one learns that the condition of one's heart determines the condition of one's life. Just as God designed the physical heart to pump blood to the different organs in the body, distributing minerals and nutrients, He designed the spiritual heart to "pump" life to one's entire being; producing mental, emotional and physical health.⁵⁷ Hypothetically the source flowing from the spiritual heart will either be influenced by the Kingdom of God or by the kingdom of darkness.

⁵⁶ Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 165

⁵⁷ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 39

Weller⁵⁸ explains that figuratively, the heart can be clean or dirty. Sinful actions and desires contaminate the heart and cause it to become insensitive toward the Lord and toward the concerns and needs of the other parts in the Body of Christ.

Scripture teaches that the Lord has the resources and the desire to clean a person's heart and return the sensitivity needed for all relationships:

Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean; Wash me, and I shall be whiter than snow. ...

CREATE IN ME A CLEAN HEART, O God, And renew a steadfast spirit within me.

Psalm 51:7, 10 (NKJV)|(Author's Emphasis Added)

This latter reference indicates a clear direct relationship between a clean heart and a right spirit. One has a direct impact on the other.

It has been explained that the human being is a spirit that has a soul and lies in a physical body. The sense, in which the term "heart" is used, is principally the spirit's interactions and connections with the soul, which is the moral seat of humanity and consists of the mind, the will and emotions.^{59, 60}

The spiritual heart gives a person direction and purpose in life. It is the essence of who the person is. All a person's ideas, all the possibilities for words and actions on a person's part, run through one's heart. It acts, in a sense, as a spiritual filter. Depending on the quality of the filter, it will allow certain possibilities to flow through to actual action. This filtering process, then allows the spiritual heart to influence attitudes, perspectives, decisions and actions.⁶¹

58 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 172

59 Ibid p. 8

60 Nee, W. (1994), *THE SPIRITUAL MAN*, Living Stream Ministries,

61 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 172

Ferrel⁶² offers a different explanation, stating the function of the spiritual heart is to act as a conduit for the spirit of man to awaken. Every person has a need to know God and to love Him, but because a person does not know whom God is and has not seen God face to face, their heart has not been touched and they cannot see the Father nor recognize Him.

In Romans 2:15 one learns that the heart is also the seat of the conscience for the “**work of the law**” is written in the heart, “**their conscience also bearing witness, and between themselves their thoughts accusing or else excusing them.**”

The conscience is the central filter that develops within a person because of the lessons taught through parents, teachers and experiences.⁶³

The Baker’s Evangelical Dictionary of Biblical Theology⁶⁴ explains conscience as such: “*conscience is a term that describes an aspect of a human being’s self-awareness. It is part of a person’s internal rational capacity and is not, as popular lore sometimes suggests, an audience room for the voice of God or the devil.*”

The dictionary further explains that conscience is a critical inner awareness that bears witness to the norms and values one recognizes and applies. The complex of values with which conscience deals includes not only those one owns, but the entire range of values to which one is exposed during life’s journey.

The spiritual heart is “**deceitful above all things, And desperately wicked**” according Jeremiah 17:9. Also, in Genesis 8:21 the Lord describes the “**imaginings of man’s heart**” as “**evil from his youth.**”

This given Scriptural truth is a direct contradiction with the secular worldview in modern day in as much as it states that all people are born sinless and good and are generally good. God states that the true nature of the unredeemed human heart is evil. Therefore it contaminates the whole person. Jesus stated:

62 Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), *Divine Health*, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aK-CWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015] (You Tube)

63 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 172

64 Elwell, W.A. (2001), *BAKER’S EVANGELICAL DICTIONARY OF THEOLOGY*, USA, Baker Academic, p. 290

“But those things which proceed out of the mouth come from the heart, and they defile a man. “For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies.

Matthew 15:18-19 (NKJV)

The spiritual heart must therefore be changed before a person can willingly obey the Lord. King David seemed to acknowledge this truth when he stated:

Create in me a clean heart, O God, And renew a steadfast spirit within me. Do not cast me away from Your presence, And do not take Your Holy Spirit from me. Restore to me the joy of Your salvation, And uphold me by Your generous Spirit. Then I will teach transgressors Your ways, And sinners shall be converted to You.

Psalms 51:10-13 (NKJV)

In the Book of Ezekiel, one can also see the connection between the spirit and the heart and the believer's way of life. Through the prophet Ezekiel, the Lord said:

“Then I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit within them, and take the stony heart out of their flesh, and give them a heart of flesh, “that they may walk in My statutes and keep My judgments and do them; and they shall be My people, and I will be their God.

Ezekiel 11:19-20 (NKJV)

The Scripture juxtaposes two fundamental conditions of the human heart; a heart of **“good treasure”** in it, and a heart that has **“evil treasure” in it**.⁶⁵

“A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

Luke 6:45 (NKJV)

⁶⁵ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 8

6. THE PHYSIOLOGICAL HEART CHAMBERS AND THEIR CONNECTIONS

The human heart is a hollow organ divided into four chambers, two at the top and two at the bottom. The top two chambers are thin walled structures that act primarily as holding chambers for the blood.⁶⁶ They are called atria. According to the Online Etymology Dictionary⁶⁷, the original Latin word “**atrium**” means “**central court or main room of a house,**” or “**the room which contains the heart.**” Another use for the word in Latin was for the upper chamber of the heart, described as, “**skylit central court in public building.**” The heart’s atria function as entryways to the great chambers below.⁶⁸

The two bottom chambers, called ventricles, are large, thick-walled chambers that do the real work in pumping the blood. The Online Etymology Dictionary⁶⁹ describes the Latin word **ventriculus** as a “**small chamber or cavity within a bodily organ,**” “**especially of the heart**” (**ventriculus cordis**, literally “little belly,”).

The atrio-ventricular septum of the heart divides the right atrium from the left atrium and the left ventricle from the right ventricle. This septum is absolutely watertight.⁷⁰ Normally no blood can pass through the septum from one side to the other. Blood travels from the right side to left side via the lungs only. However the chambers themselves work together. The two atria contract simultaneously, and the two ventricles contract simultaneously.⁷¹

6.1 The Physiological Heart Valves

The human heart is functioning as two pumps that operate in series: the right atrium and right ventricle that pump blood from the systemic veins into the pulmonary circulation.

66 Phibbs, B. (2007), *THE HUMAN HEART: A BASIC GUIDE TO HEART DISEASE*, PA, USA Lippencott Williams and Wilkens, p. 1

67 ONLINE ETYMOLOGY DICTIONARY – *Atrium*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?term=atrium>, [Date Accessed: 30th April 2016]

68 Phibbs, B. (2007), *THE HUMAN HEART: A BASIC GUIDE TO HEART DISEASE*, PA, USA, Lippencott Williams and Wilkens, p. 1

69 ONLINE ETYMOLOGY DICTIONARY – *Atrium*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?>, [Date Accessed: 30th April 2016]

70 Phibbs, B. (2007), *THE HUMAN HEART: A BASIC GUIDE TO HEART DISEASE*, PA, USA, Lippencott Williams and Wilkens, p. 1

71 THE UNIVERSITY OF NOTTINGHAM – Practice Learning Resources, [Online] Available From: <http://www.nottingham.ac.uk/nursing/practice/resources/cardiology/function/conduction.php>; [Date Accessed: 30th November 2014]

Within the heart atrioventricular (AV) valves prevent blood from flowing backward from the ventricles into the atria: on the right, the tricuspid valve and on the left the mitral valve.

Semi-lunar valves, named for the crescent shaped cusps, separate each ventricle from its great artery: the pulmonic valve between the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery, the aortic valve between the left ventricle and the aorta.

All four of these valves lie in a plane within a connective tissue “skeleton” that separated the atria and ventricles in the which the mitral, tricuspid and aortic valves surround a fibrous triangle, called the central fibrous body.⁷²

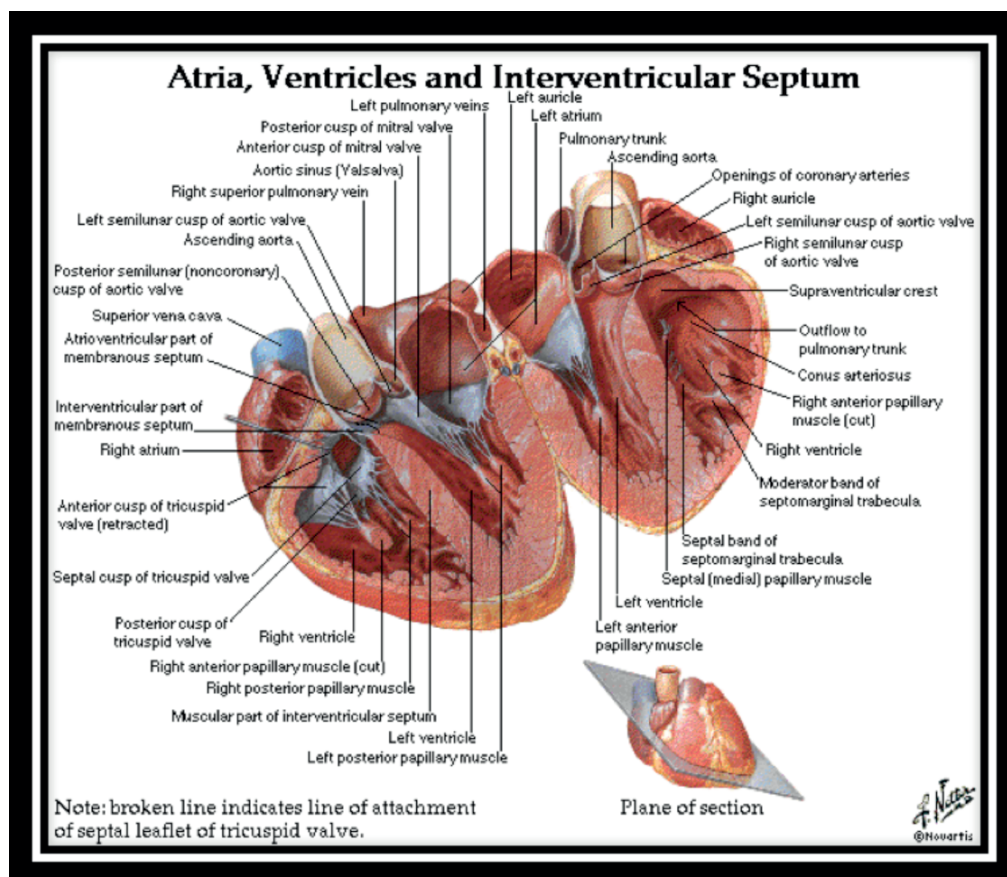


Figure 2: Anatomy of Heart⁷³

72 Katz, A.M. (2010), *PHYSIOLOGY OF THE HEART: M-MEDICINE SERIES*, PA, USA, Lippincott, Williams & Wilkens, p. 3
73 DENTISTRY AND MEDICINE – Heart Anatomy and Physiology Diagrams, [Online] Available From: <http://dentistryandmedicine.blogspot.com/2011/05/heart-anatomy-and-physiology-diagrams.html>, [Date Accessed: 30th November 2014].

6.2 Myocardial Blood Supply

6.2.1 Major Coronary Arteries

The large epicardial coronary arteries carry virtually all of the blood that supplies the heart. The major coronary arteries are the left main coronary artery, right coronary artery (RCA), left anterior descending artery (LAD), circumflex (CIRC) and posterior descending artery (PDA). All the arteries lie between the grooves in heart chambers: the RCA and CIRC between the atria and ventricles and the LAD and PDA between the left and right ventricles.⁷⁴

Two arteries arise from the aorta (RCA and Left Main), and after the Left Main artery divides in to the LAD and CIRC, continue as three vessels (RCA, LAD, CIRC). The PDA is a continuation of either the RCA or the CIRC, so that the myocardium is supplied by four major arteries (RCA, LAD, CIRC, PDA).⁷⁵

The left main coronary artery supplies blood to the left side of the heart muscle (left ventricle and left atrium). The LAD supplies the blood to the front of the left side of the heart and the CIRC encircles the heart muscle and supplies blood to the outer side and back of the heart.

The RCA supplies blood to the right ventricle, the right atrium and the sinoatrial and atrio-ventricular nodes, which regulate the heart rhythm. Together with the LAD, the RCA helps supply blood to the septum of the heart.⁷⁶

6.2.2 Collateral Vessels

When a large epicardial artery occludes, it generally causes a myocardial infarction. A myocardial infarction can be defined as a sudden deprivation of circulating blood and oxygen. The main change is necrosis of the myocardial tissue. The word “**infarction**” comes from the Latin *infarcire* meaning “**to plug up or cram.**” Formerly it was applied in pathology to a variety of morbid local conditions but recently it is more restricted to certain conditions caused by a local fault in the circulation.⁷⁷

74 Katz, A.M. (2010), *PHYSIOLOGY OF THE HEART: M-MEDICINE SERIES*, PA, USA, Lippincott, Williams & Wilkens, p. 3

75 Ibid p. 10

76 JOHN HOPKINS MEDICINE – *Anatomy and Function of the Coronary Arteries* (2016), [Online] Available From: http://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/healthlibrary/conditions/cardiovascular_diseases/anatomy_and_function_of_the_coronary_arteries_85.p00196/, [Date Accessed: 7th May 2016]

77 ONLINE ETYMOLOGY DICTIONARY – *Infarction*, (2001-2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.etymonline.com/index>.

Koerselman et.al⁷⁸ explains that coronary collaterals, or otherwise known as “natural by-passes” are anastomotic connections without an intervening capillary bed between portions of the same coronary artery and between different coronary arteries. Collateral circulation potentially offers an important alternative source of blood supply when the original vessel fails to provide for sufficient blood to a specific area.

Although collateral vessels are usually poorly developed in younger individuals, in older patients, especially those with long-standing coronary atherosclerosis, intra-coronary collaterals can enlarge and provide blood flow to regions of the heart downstream from an occluded artery.⁷⁹

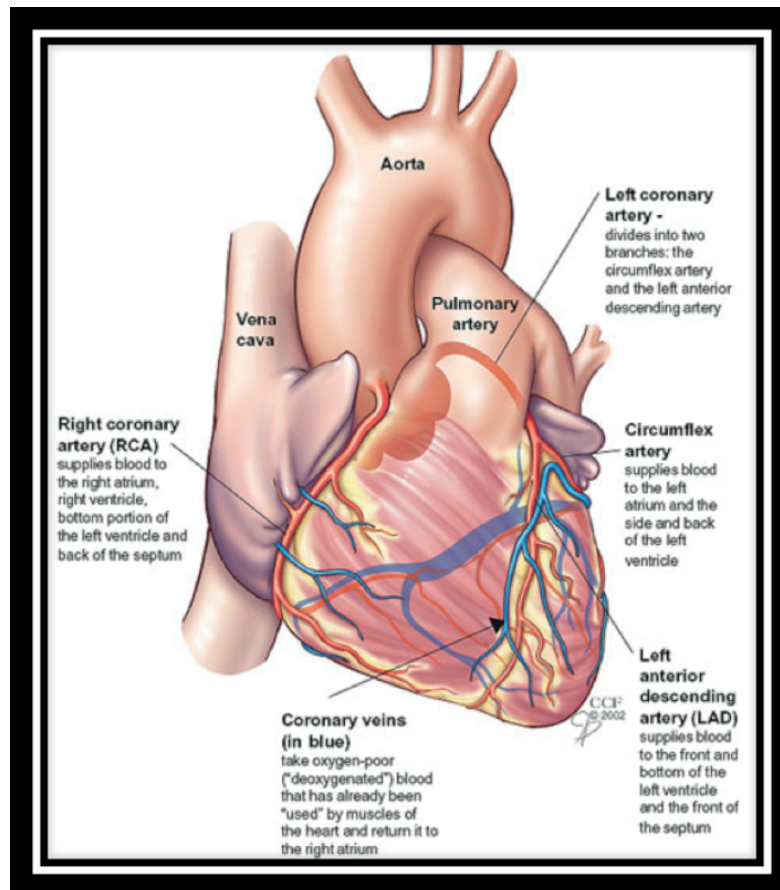


Figure 3: The Coronary Arteries⁸⁰

-
- [php?term=infarction](#), [Date Accessed: 7th May 2016]
- 78 Koerselman, J., van der Graaf, Y. de Jaegere, P. Grobbee, D.E., Coronary Collateralis: An Important and Underexposed Aspect of Coronary Artery Disease, *American Heart Association, Circulation*, 2003; 107:2507-2511
- 79 Katz, A.M. (2010), *PHYSIOLOGY OF THE HEART: M-MEDICINE SERIES*, pA, USA, Lippincott, Williams & Wilkens, p. 11
- 80 CLEVELAND CLINIC - *The Coronary Arteries*; [Online] Available From: <http://my.clevelandclinic.org/services/heart/heart->
-

7. THE CARDIAC CONDUCTION SYSTEM

The *Illustrated Manual of Nursing Practice*⁸¹ explains that the electrical conduction system of the heart regulates myocardial contraction. This system includes the nerve fibres of the autonomic nervous system and specialized nerves and fibres in the heart. The autonomic nervous system involuntarily increases or decreases heart action to meet an individual's metabolic needs.

Both sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves participate in the control of cardiac function. With the body at rest, the parasympathetic nervous system controls the heart through branches of the vagal nerve. The heart rate and electrical impulse are very slow.

In times of activity or stress, the sympathetic nervous system takes control. It stimulates the heart's nerves and fibres to fire and conduct more rapidly and the ventricles to contract more forcefully.

The heart is made up of an estimated half a billion cells. The majority of the cells make up the ventricular walls. The rapidity of atrial contraction is such that around 100 million myocardial cells contract in less than one third of a second. This happens so fast that it seems instantaneous.

To use an analogy, it is like a set of dominoes, packed in line to form a chain. Once the first domino gets pushed, a chain reaction starts to eventually push over all the dominoes until it reaches the end of the pattern.

7.1 Pacemaker Cells

Myocardial cells contain special pacemaker cells that allow electrical impulse conduction. The function of the pacemaker cells is to control heart rate and rhythm (a property known as automaticity). However, any myocardial muscle can control the rate and rhythm of contractions under certain circumstances.⁸²

blood-vessels/coronary-arteries; [Date Accessed: 1st December 2014]

81 Lippencott, Williams & Wilkens (Ed.), (2002), *ILLUSTRATED MANUAL OF NURSING PRACTICE*, PA, USA, Lippencott, Wilkins & Wilkens, p. 171

82 Lippencott, Williams & Wilkens (Ed.), (2002), *ILLUSTRATED MANUAL OF NURSING PRACTICE*, PA, USA, Lippencott, Wilkins & Wilkens, p. 171

7.2 The Sinoatrial Node (SA Node)

The sinoatrial node is located in the endocardial surface of the right atrium near the superior vena cava. The function is to pace the heart. The SA node firing spreads an impulse throughout the right and left atria, by way of internodal pathways, resulting in atrial contraction.⁸³

7.3 The Atrioventricular Node (AV Node)

The AV node is located low in the septal wall of the right atrium immediately above the coronary sinus opening. It takes up impulse conduction. Normally the AV node forms the only electrical connection between the atria and ventricles. It initially slows the impulse, delaying ventricular activity and allowing blood to fill from the atria. Then conduction speeds through the AV node and a network of fibres called a bundle of his.⁸⁴

7.4 The Bundle of His

The bundle of His arises in the AV node and continues along the intraventricular septum to form the right and left bundle branches. The fibre rapidly spread the impulse through both ventricles.⁸⁵

7.5 Purkinje Fibers

The distal portions of the right and left bundle branches are called the purkinje fibers. They fan across the subendocardial surface of the ventricles from the endocardium through the myocardium. As the impulse spreads throughout the distal conduction system, it prompts ventricular contraction.⁸⁶

83 Ibid, p. 171

84 Ibid p. 171

85 Ibid p. 171

86 Ibid p. 171

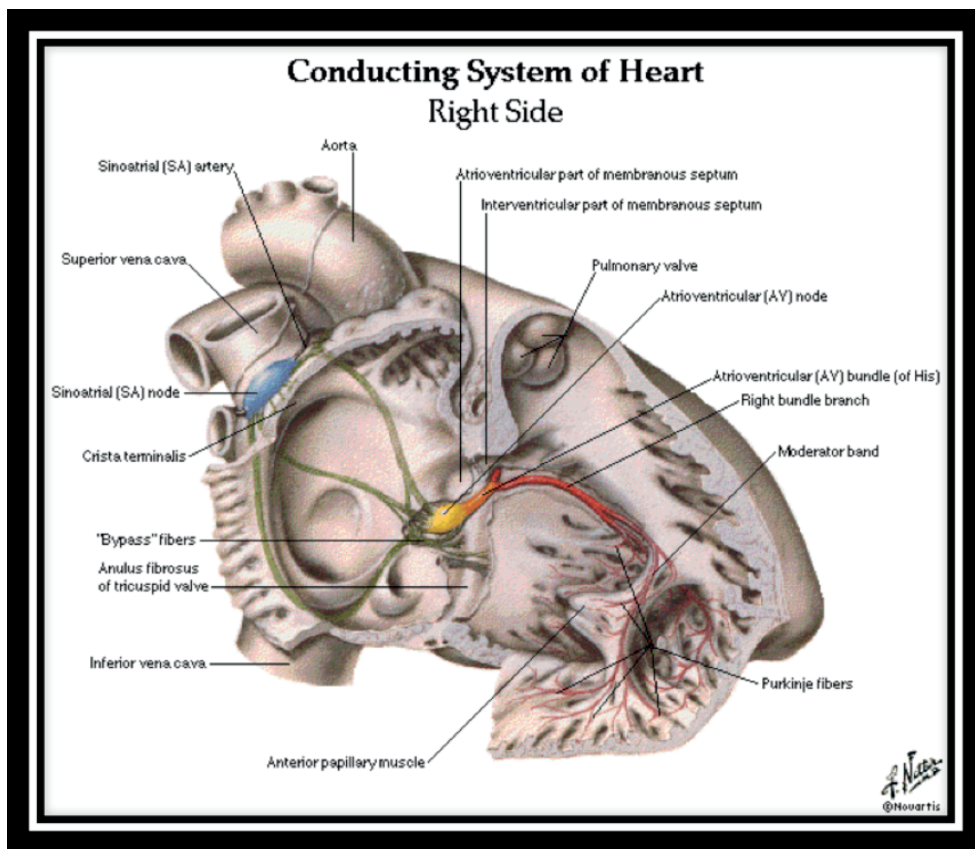


Figure 4: Conducting System of the Heart⁸⁷

7.5.1 Repolarisation and Depolarisation

The SA node and AV node contain only one stimulus. Therefore every time the nodes release a stimulus they must recharge before they can do it again.

In the case of the heart, the SA node recharges whilst the atria are refilling, and the AV node recharges when the ventricles are refilling. In this way there is no need for a pause in heart function. This process takes less than one third of a second.

The times given for the three different stages are based on a heart rate of 60 beats per minute, or 1 beat per second.

87 DENTISTRY AND MEDICINE - *Conducting System of the Heart*; *Diagrams free Download*; [Online] Available From: <http://dentistryandmedicine.blogspot.com/2011/05/heart-anatomy-and-physiology-diagrams.html>; [Date Accessed: 30th November 2014]

The term used for the release (discharge) of an electrical stimulus is “depolarisation”⁸⁸, and the term for recharging is “repolarisation”⁸⁹.

The three stages of a single heartbeat are:

- Atrial depolarisation
- Ventricular depolarisation
- Atrial and ventricular repolarisation
-

7.6 Arrhythmia

The word arrhythmia has its origin in the Greek language, *a* + *rhythmos*, which indicates **“without rhythm or any deviation from the normal pattern of the heartbeat.”**⁹⁰

Broadly defined, cardiac arrhythmias comprise any abnormality in the normal activation sequence of the myocardium. The normal rhythm of the heart, so-called, normal sinus rhythm, can be disturbed through failure of automaticity. In general, the seriousness of cardiac arrhythmias depends on the presence or absence of structural heart disease.⁹¹

The most common example of a relatively benign arrhythmia is atrial fibrillation⁹². Similarly common are PACs⁹³ and PVCs⁹⁴, which, although a nuisance, generally benign in the absence of structural heart disease. In contrast, the presence of no sustained ventricular tachycardia⁹⁵ (VT) or syncope in patients with coronary artery disease or severe left ventricular dysfunction may be a harbinger of subsequent sudden cardiac death and must not be ignored.

88 Depolarization – See Terms and Definitions

89 Repolarization – See Terms and Definitions

90 THE MEDICAL DICTIONARY – Arrhythmia, (2003-2016), [Online] Available From: <http://medical-dictionary.thefreedictionary.com/arrhythmia>, [Date Accessed: 8th May 2016]

91 CLEVELAND CLINIC, CENTRE OF CONTINUING EDUCATION, Jaeger, F.J., Cardiac Arrhythmias (2000-2015), [Online Article] Available From: <http://www.clevelandclinicmeded.com/medicalpubs/diseasemanagement/cardiology/cardiac-arrhythmias/>, [Date Accessed: 7th May 2016]

92 Atrial Fibrillation – See Terms and Definitions

93 PAC’s – See Terms and Definitions and Acronyms

94 PVC’s – See Terms and Definitions and Acronyms

95 Ventricular Tachycardia – See Terms and Definitions

7.7 Cardiac Cycle

The cardiac cycle describes the period from the beginning of one heartbeat to the beginning of the next. During this cycle, electrical and mechanical events must occur in the proper order and to the proper degree to provide to adequate blood flow to all the body parts. The cardiac cycle has two phases, systole and diastole.⁹⁶

7.8 Cardio-pulmonary Blood Circulation

De-oxygenated blood returns to the right side of the heart via the venous circulation. This blood is pumped into the right ventricle via the superior- and inferior vena cava into the right atrium. The blood is then pumped into the right ventricle and then into the lungs where carbon dioxide and oxygen is exchanged. Oxygenated blood then travels back to the left side of the heart into the left atrium via the pulmonary vein. Then the blood is pumped into the left ventricle from where it is pumped into the aorta and arterial circulation of the body.⁹⁷

8. THE SPIRITUAL CARDIAC FUNCTIONS

Mendez-Ferrell⁹⁸ is of opinion that the spiritual heart functions as a bridge that links the spirit and soul of man and is directly in contact with the physical heart.

In the same way as the physiological heart is divided into two parts, so seems the spiritual heart. The carnal side receives from the soul and a spiritual side receives from the spirit and from God. God's laws are written on the spiritual side of the heart.⁹⁹ This brings life flow towards one's entire being.

⁹⁶ Lippencott, Williams & Wilkens (Ed.), (2002), *ILLUSTRATED MANUAL OF NURSING PRACTICE*, PA, USA, Lippencott, Williams & Wilkens, p. 171

⁹⁷ Author's Note: The Circulatory system is discussed in more detail in a following chapter

⁹⁸ Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

⁹⁹ Ibid

As explained by Weller,¹⁰⁰ the heart can be either clean or dirty. Sinful actions and desires contaminate the heart and cause it to become insensitive toward the Lord and toward the concerns and needs of the other parts in the Body of Christ. The carnal ventricle is the source of all thought that contaminate the body, as written in Matthew 15:

“But those things which proceed out of the mouth come from the heart, and they defile a man. “For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies. “These are the things which defile a man, but to eat with unwashed hands does not defile a man.”

Matthew 15:18-20 (NKJV)

8.1 The Heart Valves and the Flow of Life

As previously discussed in detail, a person's life is in the spirit and its origin is from **“the breath of life,”** which comes from God. Every person, whether born-again or not, receives life from God. When a person receives the indwelling Holy Spirit, the flow of life will be an abundant stream of resurrection life, springing forth from the centre of communion to the rest of the person's being.¹⁰¹

The impartation of every perfect gift and divine nature essentially flows from a conduit, which links man's spirit to the physical part. This can be compared to a valve that opens and closes as one experiences intimacy with God.

If a person's heart is not circumcised, the valve will remain shut most of the time, allowing only enough life to keep one from dying. This valve serves as a door through which one can see the invisible Kingdom of God.

Once a person becomes born-again, Scripture teaches that the person **“is in the spirit,”** (see Romans 8:9) and this opens the valve so that one can see and experience the dimensions of heaven. As the born-again believer exercises faith and desires more intimacy with God, the valve opens more and the person experiences more flow.¹⁰²

¹⁰⁰ Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 172

¹⁰¹ Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

¹⁰² Ibid

In the opinion of the thesis, faith is a gift, which needs to be exercised and the more one practices faith, the more one grows in faith. Thus, the valve is like a muscle that grows stronger with exercise. This in turn increases the flow of life through the valve.

Now hope does not disappoint, because the love of God has been poured out in our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given to us.

Romans 5:5 (NKJV)

From this verse one learns that God's love is poured out in one's heart. Through the valve, the born-again believer's love also flows back toward God. This valve expands and one is able to contemplate His beauty and is able to see His unveiled face. As the Psalmist wrote: ***"One thing I have desired of the LORD, That will I seek: That I may dwell in the house of the LORD All the days of my life, To behold the beauty of the LORD, And to inquire in His temple."*** (Psalm 27:4 NKJV)

9. CIRCUMCISION

9.1 Circumcision as a Symbol of Covenant

God had in ancient times promised Abraham ***"I will make you a great nation."*** This promise was conditional, for it depended on Abraham's obedience, his observance of the covenant between him and God. According to the book of Genesis, the centre of this covenant was circumcision, which was an outward symbol of Abraham's good faith.

And God said to Abraham: "As for you, you shall keep My covenant, you and your descendants after you throughout their generations. "This is My covenant which you shall keep, between Me and you and your descendants after you: Every male child among you shall be circumcised; "and you shall be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskins, and it shall be a sign of the covenant between Me and you.

Genesis 17:9-11 (NKJV)

One reads in verse 14 that God also told Abraham “**And the uncircumcised male child, who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin, that person shall be cut off from his people; he has broken My covenant.**”

Gollaher¹⁰³ explains that scholars devoted to the history of the ancient Israel, its theology and rituals, were essentially different from those of other people. The Old Testament is not the product of a single author, but is composed of different narrative strands presenting distinctly different interpretations of God and the relationship between God and Israel.

The historical anthropologist, Howard Eilberg-Schwartz, points out that the Hebrew word characterizing the relationship between covenant and circumcision is integrally related. Circumcision, in other words, was not merely a sign of the covenant; it constituted a vital part of the promise itself. In a sense, the circumcision was the covenant itself.

Another historian, Gerda Lerner, remarked that it is logical and appropriate to have used the seed-producing organ, which will bring forth the promised descendants, as the leading symbol for the covenant.¹⁰⁴

A covenant is a sacred agreement; in Abraham’s case, an agreement centred on a divine promise of miraculous fertility. Scripture defines God’s part of the covenant, as God told Abraham “**As for Me, behold, My covenant is with you, and you shall be a father of many nations. “No longer shall your name be called Abram, but your name shall be Abraham; for I have made you a father of many nations. “I will make you exceedingly fruitful; and I will make nations of you, and kings shall come from you.”** (Genesis 17:4-6 NKJV)

The biblical writers used circumcision more as a metaphor than literally. In Deuteronomy 10:16 the Lord commanded the people who resisted Him “**Therefore circumcise the foreskin of your heart, and be stiff-necked no longer.**”

103 Gollaher, D. (2001), *CIRCUMCISION: A HISTORY OF THE WORLD’S MOST CONTROVERSIAL SURGERY*, New York, NY, Basic Books, p. 8-10

104 Ibid p. 10

Further on in Deuteronomy, the circumcision of the heart is described as a divine act, a kind of spiritual surgery. **“And the LORD your God will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul, that you may live.”** (Deuteronomy 30:6 NKJV)

Whitaker¹⁰⁵ explains that there are two parties necessary to circumcise the foreskin of one's heart. In Deuteronomy 10:16, God tells people to **“circumcise the foreskin of your heart, and be stiff-necked no longer,”** This is a command for the people to do. In comparison, Deuteronomy 30:6 states that God will perform the circumcision Himself. The two passages do not contradict. God cannot create perfect, righteous character unilaterally. As a person labours with God, one's character is being built. It happens over an extended period of time.

Later on in Scriptures, the prophet Jeremiah uses the same phrase, exploiting the distinction between circumcision of the foreskin and the true circumcision of the heart. The Lord tells Jeremiah **“Behold, the days are coming,” says the LORD, “that I will punish all who are circumcised with the uncircumcised-- “Egypt, Judah, Edom, the people of Ammon, Moab, and all who are in the farthest corners, who dwell in the wilderness. For all these nations are uncircumcised, and all the house of Israel are uncircumcised in the heart.”**(Jeremiah 9:25-26 NKJV)¹⁰⁶

9.2 The Foreskin of the Spiritual Heart

The foreskin of the spiritual heart surrounds the ventricles and can be seen as a dark substance. This, according the Mendez-Ferrell¹⁰⁷, is part of one's conscience that becomes thickened and insensitive due sin, un-belief and evil.

As long as the foreskin is not removed and changed through a reformed conscience, it will serve as a cap that will prevent the flow of God for illuminating and irrigating one's soul.

105 BIBLE STUDY TOOLS – Charles Whitaker – *Choosing the New Man (Part 2)*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.bibletools.org/index.cfm/fuseaction/Library.sr/CT/ARTB/k/797/Choosing-New-Man-Part-Two.htm>, [Date Accessed: 15th July 2016]

106 Gollaher, D. (2001), *CIRCUMCISION: A HISTORY OF THE WORLD'S MOST CONTROVERSIAL SURGERY*, New York, NY, Basic Books, p. 11

107 Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

This is the reason why God's calls His people to receive circumcision of the heart to bring renovation.

"Therefore circumcise the foreskin of your heart, and be stiff-necked no longer.

Deuteronomy 10:16 (NKJV)

The foreskin functions as a dark lens which cause a person to see everything distorted and causes distrust in a person. The person's heart is blocked in many ways and the person is unable to even trust God. As it is written in Titus 1:15 ***"To the pure all things are pure, but to those who are defiled and unbelieving nothing is pure; but even their mind and conscience are defiled."***

This foreskin of corruption can be seen as the veil in front of the heart, which prevents people from seeing God. People are created to see and relate to God and to accept Jesus rends the veil. When a person experiences a true conversion and the veil is rend, then one can see Jesus, who is the human image of God, and have a relationship with Him.

The Apostle Paul explained this in 2 Corinthians 3:15-18:

But even to this day, when Moses is read, a veil lies on their heart. Nevertheless when one turns to the Lord, the veil is taken away. Now the Lord is the Spirit; and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty. But we all, with unveiled face, beholding as in a mirror the glory of the Lord, are being transformed into the same image from glory to glory, just as by the Spirit of the Lord.

2 Corinthians 3:15-18 (NKJV)

9.3 Circumcision of the Heart

In the Old Testament, the circumcision of the foreskin symbolized that the individual was a member of the covenant people of God. In the New Testament, after Christ shed His blood on the cross for all people's sin and was resurrected, circumcision became a spiritual act in the human heart, although the spiritual application was also relevant in the Old Testament

as seen in Deuteronomy 10:16.¹⁰⁸

It is evident that, from the start, the circumcision ritual was intended for people's hearts. In Romans 2:28-29, Paul wrote "**For he is not a Jew who is one outwardly, nor is circumcision that which is outward in the flesh; but he is a Jew who is one inwardly; and circumcision is that of the heart, in the Spirit, not in the letter; whose praise is not from men but from God.**" People should die to their sinful nature if they want to once again be sensitive to the voice of God and the ways in which He is working.

It seems necessary for a believer to understand that circumcision of the heart needs to be maintained, because when a person stops seeking God's presence and His transformation, that individual will become stagnant and begin to backslide, justifying sin, rather than repenting and giving up sin.

A circumcised heart is a symbol of complete renunciation of one's fallen nature and total trust in a divine grace. According to Maldonado, genuine repentance is necessary in order to restore one's heart from its hardened state.

True repentance involves a new frame of mind that reflects a change in attitude. When a person realizes one's hardened spiritual condition before God and the rebellious nature that has led one away from Him, repentance is the decision one makes to turn completely away from the sin and towards God. Repentance also indicates one's decision not to rule one self any longer but to be ruled by God, according to His Word and will.

It is necessary to repent of sin, whether it is sin one is currently engaged in or a generational curse that was passed down through one's family bloodline, such as may manifest through addiction or persistent depression. Repentance will enable one to enter into God's presence again.

When a person turns from one's sins and wrong attitudes, one allows one's heart to soften toward the Lord. Without repentance, one's faith will be void.¹⁰⁹

¹⁰⁸ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 88

¹⁰⁹ Ibid p. 89

The only One able to circumcise a person's heart is Holy Spirit. He knows the condition of a person's heart and has the power and the love to circumcise one without hurting the person. Although a person's heart may not be fully hardened, there is surely some areas of one's life one needs to surrender to God so that one may be transformed.

If a person truly repents of sin, then the Holy Spirit will be able to remove the "**heart of stone**" within the person, including the wounds, pain and feelings of rejection that have caused one to harden one's heart, and will give one a "**heart of flesh**," a new, soft, and tender heart that restores one's innocence. By allowing the Holy Spirit to do this, God will cleanse, purify and sanctify ones' heart.¹¹⁰

10. SPIRITUAL CYCLES AND RHYTHMS

To every thing there is a season, and a time to every purpose under the heaven: A time to be born, and a time to die; a time to plant, and a time to pluck up that which is planted; A time to kill, and a time to heal; a time to break down, and a time to build up; A time to weep, and a time to laugh; a time to mourn, and a time to dance; A time to cast away stones, and a time to gather stones together; a time to embrace, and a time to refrain from embracing; A time to get, and a time to lose; a time to keep, and a time to cast away; A time to rend, and a time to sew; a time to keep silence, and a time to speak; A time to love, and a time to hate; a time of war, and a time of peace.

Ecclesiastes 3:1-8 (NKJV)

The Merriam-Webster dictionary¹¹¹ explain the definition of "**rhythm**" as such: "**a regular, repeated pattern of sounds or movements**," or "**a regular, repeated pattern of events, changes, activities, etc.**"

The dictionary also defines a "**cycle**" as "**a set of events or actions that happen again and again in the same order: a repeating series of events or actions.**"

¹¹⁰ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 90

¹¹¹ MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY – *Rhythm; Cycle*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/cycle>, [Date Accessed: 13th May 2016]

According to Mitchell¹¹² these rhythmic patterns can vary from seconds to thousands of years. One such phenomenon is the seasons; winter, spring, summer or fall. Within these seasons emerge different patterns such as planting, germination and harvesting.

Every person also presents with patterns and seasons. The key is to recognize the specific season in one's life. If it is seedtime in one particular part of one's life, then one cannot expect to see fruit to harvest yet. This specific time in one's life can only be discovered through prayer and meditation on God's Word.

One needs to recognize that one can be in more than one season in different areas of one's life. It is possible for a person to be planting in one area of one's life and to be harvesting in another area. Going to the next level will entail mastering the current level, a harvest (conclusion of a process) and sowing (the beginning of a new process).

In the book of Leviticus, the Lord gave a command about the right time for harvesting fruit in abundance. This also refers to the circumcision process in covenant.

'When you come into the land, and have planted all kinds of trees for food, then you shall count their fruit as uncircumcised. Three years it shall be as uncircumcised to you. It shall not be eaten. 'But in the fourth year all its fruit shall be holy, a praise to the LORD. 'And in the fifth year you may eat its fruit, that it may yield to you its increase: I am the LORD your God.

Leviticus 19:23-25 (NKJV)

According to Gollaher¹¹³, the capacity to bear fruit only comes with maturity. The circumcision process involves cutting unwanted excess and in a desire to yield better fruit.

It is very important for a person to be aware of one's heart rhythm and timing and stay connected to the Father God's heart. He is always communicating with a person and will guide one through any situation. One needs to stay alert and attentive for Satan will set traps.

112 Mitchell, J. (2015), *RHYTHM OF THE FATHER'S HEART: LIFE LEARNING CLASS REMOVING THE LAYERS*, IN, USA, West-Bow Press, Thomas Nelson & Zondervan, e-book

113 Gollaher, D. (2001), *CIRCUMCISION: A HISTORY OF THE WORLD'S MOST CONTROVERSIAL SURGERY*, New York, NY, Basic Books, p. 11

Life always presents one with learning situations and opportunity for growth.¹¹⁴

10.1 The Rhythm of God's Heart

It is very important to recognize that Father God is love itself, for Scripture states that love is of God, and **"everyone who loves is born of God and knows God..."** (1 John 4:7-8 NKJV). Further on in the verse it states: **"God is love."**

The Father's rhythm is a repeated flow of unconditional, unwavering love. His love never changes for it is constant and true. He will never withhold His love from any person. He loves people so much that He made them the object of His affection. As a result of His undeniable love for people, He deposited an extension within people to share.¹¹⁵ John 3:16 is an indication of the epiphany of His love as it states:

"For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him should not perish but have everlasting life."

John 3:16 (NKJV)

Father God as the Creator of man understands the frailty of the human condition. He understands that people would need help in nurturing His gift of love, so He provided Himself with just a prayer away from conversing with Him. In Scripture He also gives the insurance: ***"I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee..."*** (Hebrews 13:5).

God is a God of order and if a person comes into alignment with God's love, then the person has an innate desire to share the gift one has inside (flow). It has always been God's plan for people to respect the order He created and to remain in alignment with Him. He wants to be in a relationship with every person individually and to have intimacy with Him, reciprocating His love. One should always seek Him in prayer and through praise, reading His Word and have quiet introspective time with Him.

114 Mitchell, J. (2015), *RHYTHM OF THE FATHER'S HEART: LIFE LEARNING CLASS REMOVING THE LAYERS*, WestBow Press, Thomas Nelson & Zondervan, IN, USA, e-book

115 Mitchell, J. (2015), *RHYTHM OF THE FATHER'S HEART: LIFE LEARNING CLASS REMOVING THE LAYERS*, WestBow Press, Thomas Nelson & Zondervan, IN, USA, e-book

10.2 God's Rhythm in Relationships

The physical heart will not be able to function and supply life to the body if any of the intricate systems inside the heart were to fail. When looking at the different intricate systems making the heart work in perfect order, to be able to give and receive life-giving blood throughout the body, one can find God's perfect order.

In the opinion of this thesis the order in which the heart functions can be compared to the order in which relationships are suppose to operate. It is a symbiotic relationship, where provision from God brings forward a reciprocating action from a person. This can be used as a perfect example of the different functions in the Body of Christ.

Scripture states that people are the bride of Christ. In the right order, there are intensely passionate moments that a bride and groom share. According to Mitchell¹¹⁶, the intensity of these moments should mirror the passionate relationship that one shares with God.

Man, as the head of the household, need to first understand their role, embrace the concept, and treat their wives accordingly. This will allow a woman's nurturing nature to flourish both to her husband and to the rest of the family.

This should flow from a pure heart, because, from the purity of the union, love will flow down to the children, who shall also see and experience God's love and reciprocate this love. From there Christ's ministry can flow.

10.3 The Heart of Worship

¹¹⁶ Mitchell, J. (2015), *RHYTHM OF THE FATHER'S HEART: LIFE LEARNING CLASS REMOVING THE LAYERS*, WestBow Press, Thomas Nelson & Zondervan, IN, USA, e-book

Jesus saith unto her, Woman, believe me, the hour cometh, when ye shall neither in this mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, worship the Father. Ye worship ye know not what: we know what we worship: for salvation is of the Jews. But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him. God [is] a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship [him] in spirit and in truth.

John 4:21-24 KJV

When one praises and worships the Lord **“in Spirit and in truth,”** one does it in unity with Him. One returns to the Father’s heart and one has intimacy with Him. This can only be accomplished if a person has the Holy Spirit indwelling one’s heart.

When a person worships God, there is an exchange of energy. In Scripture one learns that God inhabits the praises of His children.

But thou art holy, O thou that inhabitest the praises of Israel.

Psalms 22:3 KJV

God reciprocates in His children’s praises to Him. This shows a rhythm. When a person praises and worships the Lord, then the person pulses God and God pulses back, in the same manner as the heart’s upper chambers and lower chambers work in cohesion with perfect flow.

This is like a dance with the Lord. The Holy Spirit brings the unity for His Children to meet with the Father through Jesus the Son. There is rhythm and function.

According to Jeremiah the prophet God stated that: **“I will give them a heart to know Me, for I am the LORD; and they will be My people, and I will be their God, for they will return to Me with their whole heart.”** (Jeremiah 24:7).

Hypothetically, this thesis deems to offer a simple explanation of the Holy Trinity relationship and flow within the Body by comparing the physiological circulation and its function with the flow of the Spirit in the Body of Christ. When looking at the physiology of the heart, one can see the different functions in the Trinity.

Not only does God dwell in Heaven, but He also indwells His followers. 1 Peter 2:5 states: ***“you also, as living stones, are being built up a spiritual house, a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ.”***

The apostle Paul also wrote: ***“in whom you also are being built together for a dwelling place of God in the Spirit.”*** (Ephesians 2:22 NKJV).

The right atrium can be compared to the Father's indwelling place and provision. The right atrium receives de-oxygenated blood from the body. This can be compared to one's sinful, worldly nature, which is brought to the Father to be able to receive cleansing through forgiveness of sin. In the Psalms one reads that it is not sacrifices and burnt offerings that God desires but: ***“The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit, A broken and a contrite heart—These, O God, You will not despise.”***(Psalm 51:17 NKJV)¹¹⁷

Scripture teaches that Christ indwells a person's heart:

that He would grant you, according to the riches of His glory, to be strengthened with power through His Spirit in the inner man, so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith; and that you, being rooted and grounded in love,

Ephesians 3:16-17 (NKJV)

The function of the right atrium is to pump the blood to the right ventricle, which in turn, pumps the blood to the lungs to be able to receive oxygen. One can compare the redeeming work of Christ with the right ventricle¹¹⁸, for He is the mediator between a person and the Father as seen in Scripture: ***“For there is one God and one Mediator between God and men, the Man Christ Jesus,”***(1 Timothy 2:5 NKJV).

¹¹⁷ Also compare Isaiah 57:15

¹¹⁸ Compare Ephesians 3:16-17

Through accepting His blood sacrifice, one can receive forgiveness and receive the Holy Spirit conviction for all transgressions, iniquity and sin.

From the lungs the oxygen filled blood flows back to the heart into the left atrium. From there the oxygen rich, Holy Spirit filled, blood flows to the left ventricle. Scripture teaches “**Now He who establishes us with you in Christ and has anointed us is God, who also has sealed us and given us the Spirit in our hearts as a guarantee.**” (2 Corinthians 1:21-22 NKJV)

The left ventricle then pumps blood to the whole body, supplying it with life giving, Spirit filled, oxygen (blessing and anointing).

God is the Creator and Life Giver. The heart of worship brings the worship to Father (contraction). Father comes in and reciprocates His love for the person (relaxing), thus, one brings Him praise (contraction), not using one’s will, but requesting His Will in one’s life. His Will is then to indwell the person’s heart, showing His love (relaxing).

10.4 The Rhythm in Covenant Relationships

“Are you tired? Worn out? Burned out on religion? Come to me. Get away with me and you’ll recover your life. I’ll show you how to take a real rest. Walk with me and work with me—watch how I do it. Learn the unforced rhythms of grace. I won’t lay anything heavy or ill-fitting on you. Keep company with me and you’ll learn to live freely and lightly.”

Matthew 11:28-30 (The Message)

The “**unforced rhythms of grace**” mentioned in the verse above indicates a covenant relationship with God. To be in covenant with Him can be compared to the pacemaker of life, which pulses and brings function in God’s perfect rhythm.

Stanley Grenz et.al.¹¹⁹ explains that a covenant refers to the act of God in freely establishing a mutually binding relationship with humankind. Through the covenant God bestows blessings on humans in conditional and unconditional terms. Conditionally, God blesses humans as they obey the terms of the covenant. Unconditionally, God bestows blessing on humans regardless of their obedience or disobedience to the terms of covenant. God made covenants with Noah, Abraham, Moses and David, but above all, God has fulfilled these covenants and has inaugurated the new covenant in Christ, which is for all people who trust in Him (Commentary on Hebrews 9:15, 27-28).

One can gain insight into a covenant relationship with God when one considers a marriage relationship and why God hates divorce. Weller¹²⁰ explains that, in Scripture, one can find a comparison between the separations of divorce that is found in the covenantal relationship of marriage and the break of relationship between God and man, which is very distressing to Him.

God is firstly burdened by divorce because of the great pain and anguish it causes for everyone involved in the covenant group called a family. When the Lord states: "**Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh.**" Genesis 2:24 (KJV), it seems to be an indication of some sort of strong binding force between man and woman. The rending of a covenant bond can be compared to flesh torn apart, for God stated "**they shall be one in flesh.**"

Divorce, which is the breaking of covenant, is in direct conflict with God's intention for His everlasting covenant with His people. God's intention for the husband-wife relationship is an earthly picture of God's supernatural covenant with each person, for all righteous believers is part of the Bride of Christ, which is the Church.

After explaining to husbands and wives how to be true covenant partners with each other, Paul points out: "**This is a great mystery, but I speak concerning Christ and the church.**" Ephesians 5:32 (NKJV).

119 Grenz, S.J., Guretzki, D., Nordling, C.F. (2010), *POCKET DICTIONARY OF THEOLOGICAL TERMS: THE IVP POCKET REFERENCE SERIES*, USA, Inter Varsity Press

120 Weller, A.L. dr. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY, A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE TONGUE, THE HANDS, THE FEET, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IL, USA, p. 168-169

Thus, the way Christ and the church relate to each other is the example one should follow. Conversely, the way a person relates to one's covenant partner in marriage, is designed by God to be an image of how the Lord and His people live in covenant with each other forever. The marriage covenant sends a clear picture about the steadfast, never-wavering love of God for His covenant partners.

10.5 Breaking of Covenant is Causing Arrhythmia

“Then I saw that for all the causes for which backsliding Israel had committed adultery, I had put her away and given her a certificate of divorce; yet her treacherous sister Judah did not fear, but went and played the harlot also.

Jeremiah 3:8 (NKJV)

Matthew Henry's Commentary¹²¹ states that this verse follows the explanation that the Israelites were treacherously addicted to idolatry, for in verse 6 states:

“she is gone up upon every high mountain and under every green tree, and there hath played the harlot.”

In verse 7 one reads that God, by His prophets, had invited and encouraged them to repent and reform when He said: ***“after she had done all these things, Turn thou unto me.”***

Notwithstanding this, Israel persisted in their idolatries. When God “saw it,” He took notice of it, and was much displeased with it. One should note that God keeps account, whether one does or does not, how often He has called a person to turn to him and the person refuses.

This is the reason God cast them off, and given them up into the hands of their enemies. God divorces Israel, His bride. They were no longer under His protection. As the commentary explains, those who join themselves to God's enemy will justly be divorced from Him, removed from under His covenant.

¹²¹ BLUE LETTER BIBLE – *Commentaries*, (2015), [Online] Available From: https://www.blueletterbible.org/Comm/mhc/Jer/Jer_003.cfm?a=748008, [Date Accessed: 26th May 2016]

According to Spurgeon¹²² marriage is not a relationship of original consanguinity. Marriage is a contract between two persons, not of natural birth but of voluntary contract or covenant.

In the same manner is the relationship between a believer and God. Whatever relation there was originally between God and man, it was stamped out and extinguished by the fall. Henceforth people had no relation to the Most High; they were banished from His presence as traitors to His throne, as condemned criminals revolting against His power. There could be no communion between God and man.

Through Jesus found it in His own person and in His own passion to reconcile people and bring them back into communion with Himself so that people can stand in covenant with Him again, thus, in marriage.

The marriage-union is a result of choice. If God is married unto a person, then the person is married unto God for the choice must be mutual. The first choice is with God, which was made before the foundation of the world.

“God never began to love His people, He saw them in the glass of His decrees, he foresaw them, fallen and ruined; but yet He beheld them and pitied and loved them, elected them and set them apart. God said “They shall be mine.”” (Spurgeon).¹²³

People should also choose God for the marriage to be consummated. No person becomes saved against their will, for this will be proof that the person is saved at all, for reluctance or indifference betrays an entire alienation of all the affections of the heart. If a person’s will is set against God, then the whole man is in enmity with Him.

10.6 Arrhythmia in Relationship

122 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – *Commentaries*, (2015), [Online] Available From: https://www.blueletterbible.org/Comm/mhc/Jer/Jer_003.cfm?a=748008, [Date Accessed: 26th May 2016]

123 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – *Commentaries*, [Online] Available From: https://www.blueletterbible.org/Comm/spurgeon_charles/sermons/0762.cfm?a=748008, [Date Accessed: 26th May 2016]

From the definition mentioned previously, one can understand that arrhythmia happens when there is no cohesion or good order between the different fields of the heart. The heart is still beating and pumping blood, but the rhythm is erratic. Thus, the body is still receiving all the blood and nutrients it needs but because the heart is in overdrive, and not in pace, the body also starts to suffer by feeling tired and burdened. If an arrhythmia is not being dealt with, it will eventually lead to more severe conditions affecting the whole body, such as heart failure, stroke or even death.

In a covenant relationship, arrhythmia may also occur, and if not dealt with, will make the Body of Christ suffer.

A covenant means to be in agreement with something, thus, to be in covenant with God, means to be in agreement with God, but to be in agreement with Satan also means that one is in covenant with him.

Another way of looking at covenant is by calling it a yoke. Freed¹²⁴ explains that, to be in covenant with Christ is to take on His good yoke, or one can be in covenant with the enemy and be yoked by evil.

The whole New Testament is a statement of God's covenant with His people that they can walk in fellowship and new life with Him because of Jesus. Jesus laid down His own life to redeem all sinners. He conquered the enemy through His death. Through His sacrifice every person can enter into a covenant relationship by believing and having faith in Him.

Yoking involves submission and if a person is yoked together with Christ, one is submitted to Him. By submitting to Christ's yoke, one submits to His perfect will for one's life. Where He leads, one will follow. Jesus Himself said: ***"Take My yoke upon you and learn from Me, for I am gentle and lowly in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. "For My yoke is easy and My burden is light."*** Matthew 11:29-30 (NKJV)

¹²⁴ Freed, S. (2012), *THE JEZEBEL YOKE: BREAKING FREE FROM BONDAGE AND DECEPTION*, Minnesota, USA, Baker Books, E-Book

Christ's yoke offers a person relief, ease, refreshment and blessing. His yoke is "**easy**" and "**light**."

If a person is yoked with God, there is peace and one experiences His divine rest, but if a person submits to the spirit of Jezebel the attendant fear and intimidation will provoke one in an ungodly way in an attempt to control one's circumstances. Control is a form of witchcraft and is one of the most obvious signs of one who is affected by a Jezebel spirit.

One learns from Scriptures that Jezebel operated in all forms of witchcraft. A military commander named Jehu was anointed and appointed by God to destroy the house of Ahab and Jezebel. He said the word to Joram, the illegitimate king of Israel: "**How can peace exist as long as fornications of your mother Jezebel and her witchcrafts are so many?**" 2 Kings 9:22 (AMP). A spirit of Jezebel entrenches a territory with sin of witchcraft and fornication.

Freed¹²⁵ explains that fornication is desiring something out of God's timing, and it nullifies the purity of a covenant.

In marriage, it is fornication for a man or woman to have sexual union before a marriage vow is in place. Similarly, if one gets out of God's timing and attempt to manipulate one's way into a position of authority inside the Body of Christ, it is also a form of spiritual fornication.

In the Temple of Baal where Jezebel worshiped, there were prostitutes. In the Book of Revelation one reads that the Church of Thyatira was rebuked because it tolerated Jezebel and her fornications. In modern time one needs to consider the seduction of the enemy concerning God's timing.

In the book "*Breaking the Threefold Demonic Cord: How to Discern and Defeat the Lies of Jezebel, Athaliah and Delilah*" (Freed: 2008)¹²⁶, speaking of Baal, the false god Jezebel worshipped it states:

125 Freed, S. (2012), *THE JEZEBEL YOKE: BREAKING FREE FROM BONDAGE AND DECEPTION*, Minnesota, USA, Baker Books, E-Book

126 Freed, S. (2008), *BREAKING THE THREEFOLD DEMONIC CORD: HOW TO DISCERN AND DEFEAT THE LIES OF JEZEBEL, ATHALIAH AND DELILAH*, MI, USA, Chosen Book, E-Book

“The spirit behind Baal insists that we have “whom” we want, “when” we want him, and that he “do” what we want. The spirit is based upon performance, rather than relationship.

Today a similar thing occurs when a leader cannot immediately be available to a congregation.”

God knows every person’s times and seasons and if one cannot wait for His timing, then the person will have no peace. When Jezebel is active, there is no peace.

In ministry, when it is pushed too fast, there is a Jezebel spirit at work. When the ministry practices safety without taking risks, sitting in a comfort zone, then an Ahab spirit is at work.

When two Jezebel spirits work together, then the outcome leads to nothing. In the same manner, two Ahab spirits working together will lead to nothing. The heart of the relationship will stun or fibrillate. A Jezebel and Ahab working together will see result, because they don’t work against each other, but this will cause arrhythmia due to a battle for power, due to spiritual fornication. A person who leaves their spiritual covering prematurely, trying to do things in their own timing, will end up in desolation and even spiritual barrenness.¹²⁷

11. THE PHYSIOLOGICAL HEART-KIDNEY RELATIONSHIP

In addition to excreting waste products, the kidneys help to regulate blood pressure through regulation of extracellular fluid volume. Hypertension can be caused by pathological changes in kidney tissue or in the associated nervous or hormonal regulatory system.

Medical scholars continue with discussions about the complex relationship between hypertension and renal disease. It is a well-known medical fact that people with hypertension are at risk of developing renal disease.

¹²⁷ Freed, S. (2012), *THE JEZEBEL YOKE: BREAKING FREE FROM BONDAGE AND DECEPTION*, MI, USA, Baker Books, E-Book

Similarly, abnormal activation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system¹²⁸ that regulates several aspects of renal function can cause secondary hypertension, hypertension for which a cause can be identified.¹²⁹

11.1 The Biblical Heart-Kidney Relationship

11.1.1 Kidneys Mentioned in the Bible

In an article in the *Journal of the American Society of Nephrology*, written by Dr. G. Eknoyan (The Kidneys in the Bible: What Happened? November 2015, Volume 16)¹³⁰ it states that kidneys are mentioned 11 times in the Bible. Most commonly it pertains to the parts of sacrificial animals that are to be burned in Temple offerings in the Old Testament.¹³¹

In the instructions given for the sacrificial offering of bulls, rams, sheep and doves, the statement **“And you shall take all the fat that covers the entrails, the fatty lobe attached to the liver, and the two kidneys and the fat that is on them, and burn them on the altar.”** (Exodus 29:13 NKJV), is repeated monotonously, as Moses installs Aaron as high priest, who then makes the prescribed sacrificial offerings: **“Then he took all the fat that was on the entrails, the fatty lobe attached to the liver, and the two kidneys with their fat, and Moses burned them on the altar.”**(Leviticus 8:16 NKJV).

There is a reference to the kidneys as nourishment when in the recounting of God’s loving actions on behalf of Israel, Moses recalls how the Lord found Jacob abandoned and fed him **“Butter of kine, and milk of sheep, with fat of lambs, and rams of the breed of Bashan, and goats, with the fat of kidneys of wheat; and thou didst drink the pure blood of the grape.”**(Deuteronomy 32:14 KJV).

128 Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone System – See Terms and Definitions

129 Battle, C.U. (2009), *ESSENTIALS OF PUBLIC HEALTH BIOLOGY: A GUIDE FOR THE STUDY OF PATHOPHYSIOLOGY*, London, UK, Jones & Bartlett Publishers, P. 419

130 Eknoyan, G. Dr. (2005), ‘The Kidneys in the Bible: What Happened?’ *Journal of the American Society of Nephrology*, vol. 16, no. 12, November, pp. 3464-3471

131 Friedman, R.E. (2005), *THE BIBLE WITH SOURCES REVEALED*, NY, USA, Harper Collins

Eknoyan is of opinion that, because only the best of everything was to be offered to God, it is not unexpected that the kidneys and their surrounding fat would be part of the sacrificial offerings, and because it was believed that the Hebrew God did not eat like the gods of Egypt and Mesopotamia, the offerings were not placed, but burned on the altar, so that smoke from the burnt offer would ascend skyward where God's Spirit dwells.

It also seems that the blades used for sacrificial slaughtering have been considered blessed and used by God in the slaughter of the enemies of Israel: ***"The sword of the LORD is filled with blood, it is made fat with fatness, and with the blood of lambs and goats, with the fat of the kidneys of rams: for the LORD hath a sacrifice in Bozrah, and a great slaughter in the land of Idumea."*** (Isaiah 34:6 KJV).

11.2 The Spiritual Kidney Function

Nicolson¹³² states that to differentiate between anatomic references to animal kidneys as body parts burned on the altar in the Torah from its subsequent figurative use in later books authored by more poetic biblical scribes, the translators of the King James Bible elected to use the term "reins" rather than kidneys in referring to the latter instances, perhaps reflecting their stated commitment to enrich the language with *"civility and eloquence."*

The most common body organ used as a spiritual reference in the Bible was the heart, as a symbol of intellect and wisdom, and blood as a symbol of the life principle.¹³³ The kidneys receive special attention in the Bible as the seat of conscience, emotions, desire and wisdom. The "reins" which is implied by the Oxford English Dictionary¹³⁴ as the loins, is considered the site of physical strength and prowess (see Job 40:7; 2 Samuel 20:8).

However, according to Eknoyan¹³⁵ unlike the kidneys, in the Bible, the heart is rarely referred to as an anatomical instrument (see 1 Samuel 25:37).

132 Nicolson, A. (2003), *THE MAKING OF THE KING JAMES BIBLE*, NY, USA, Harper Collins

133 Smith, C.R. (2004), *THE PHYSICIAN EXAMINES THE BIBLE*, NY, USA, Hallmark-Hubner Press Inc.

134 OXFORD ENGLISH DICTIONARY – loins, kidneys, reins, [Online] Available From: <http://www.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/english/kidney>, [Date Accessed: 11th May 2016]

135 Eknoyan, G. Dr. (2005), 'The Kidneys in the Bible: What Happened?' *Journal of the American Society of Nephrology*, vol. 16, no. 12, November, pp. 3464-3471

Conversely, the liver, which is cited repeatedly as an anatomic organ alongside the kidneys in animal sacrificial offerings, is used only once figuratively in the Bible as the site of intense grief.

Mine eyes do fail with tears, my bowels are troubled, my liver is poured upon the earth, for the destruction of the daughter of my people; because the children and the sucklings swoon in the streets of the city.

Lamentation 2:11 (KJV)

The kidneys are mentioned five times in the Bible as the organs examined by God to pass judgment on a person. They are mentioned either before or after, but always parallel with the heart, as seen in Jeremiah 17:10 where it is written: ***“I the LORD search the heart, I try the reins, even to give every man according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his doings.”***

Also in Psalm 26:2: ***“Examine me, O LORD, and prove me; try my reins and my heart.”***

All five Biblical references towards kidneys as spiritual organs are mentioned in Jeremiah and Psalms, both of which are poetic and epigrammatic in style and, hence, their free metaphoric use of the kidneys and heart as the central essence of a person, or, as one would call it in modern language, the psyche of a person.

This metaphoric use of the heart and kidneys does not seem to be due to transference from a specific anatomic meaning but in a more general meaning of the deeper “inwards” of a person, a term also used in conjunction with the sacrificial use of the kidneys mentioned above.

Both the kidneys and the heart are internal organs, well hidden from view, but accessible to the look of God.

The kidneys are mentioned four additional times in the Bible, sometimes in direct connection with the heart, as the site of emotions and intellect. Some of the attributes principally assigned to one of the two organs are at times credited to the other. Thus, whereas the heart is the organ considered to be the site of wisdom and the governing centre of rational processes, it is a function that is attributed also to the kidneys, as in, ***“I will bless the LORD,***

who hath given me counsel: my reins also instruct me in the night seasons.” (Psalm 16:7 KJV).

Proverbs 23:16 states: “**Yea, my reins shall rejoice, when thy lips speak right things**”(K-JV). The kidneys are considered the site of affection and of faithfulness as stated in Isaiah 11:5 “**And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.**”

Hypothetically, the kidneys seem to share their position as the site of affections with the heart as in the following verse of grief: “**Thus my heart was grieved, and I was pricked in my reins.**” (Psalm 73:21 KJV). No other internal organ of the body is mentioned in parallel in the Bible as often as are the heart and the kidneys.

11.2.1 The Kidneys as a Site of Punishment

Divine infliction to the kidneys is mentioned three times in the Bible. Job, lamenting his calamities comments that “**His archers compass me round about, he cleaveth my reins asunder, and doth not spare...**” (Job 16:13 KJV). Further in Job is stated: “**Whom I shall see for myself, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another; though my reins be consumed within me**” (Job 19:27 KJV). Jeremiah also states: “**He hath caused the arrows of his quiver to enter into my reins**” (Lamentations 3:13 KJV).

One might expect that spiritual injury to kidneys would result in kidney disease, as has been suggested by some interpreters of these verses.^{136, 137} It might also suggest suffering or deep sorrow felt in the “inward parts,” much like that of the literal current use “hurting deep inside.”¹³⁸

Eknoyan¹³⁹ is of opinion that the advances in medicine, psychology and linguistic termi-

¹³⁶ Kopple, J.D.: The biblical view of the kidney, American Journal of Nephrology, Volume 14:279-281, 1994

¹³⁷ Dvorjetski, E: The history of nephrology in the Talmudic corpus, American Journal of Nephrology Volume 22:119-129, 2002

¹³⁸ Eknoyan, G. Dr. (2005), ‘The Kidneys in the Bible: What Happened?’ *Journal of the American Society of Nephrology*, vol. 16, no. 12, November, pp. 3464-3471

¹³⁹ Eknoyan, G. Dr. (2005), ‘The Kidneys in the Bible: What Happened?’ *Journal of the American Society of Nephrology*, vol. 16, no. 12, November, pp. 3464-3471

nology resulted in the biblical metaphoric attributes of the kidneys being associated with the brain and the mind. In recent versions of the Bible, the term “mind” is substituted often where the authors of the original text used the kidneys, yet the brain is not mentioned in the original scriptures.

There is a possibility of a more consciousness of a physical basis in the metaphor used for the kidneys. It can be compared to the modern use of the metaphoric heart as people speak of something being “the heart of the matter” etc.

Despite the absence of the kidneys being mentioned in the later books of the Bible, the Hebrew use of the kidneys as the site of prudence, craftiness and shrewdness persisted and permeated the biblical teachings of the Christian era.

There is a single mention of the kidneys in the New Testament. In Revelations 2:23 is written: “**And I will kill her children with death; and all the churches shall know that I am he which searcheth the reins and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works.**” (KJV). This might also be an indication toward the early Christian fathers stating “*In the kidneys are seated reasoning and there dwells in them the faculty of discernment; they distinguish truth from falsehood, and judge what is base and what is noble.*” (Ephraem 307-373 CE) ¹⁴⁰

12. BLOOD PRESSURE

As the heart pumps blood through the circulatory system, the blood that is being pumped exerts pressure against the interior walls of the arteries. The pressure exerted in the arteries by the contraction of the ventricles is called the systolic blood pressure.¹⁴¹ Once the ventricles have fully contracted, it begins to relax and refill with blood from the left atria. The pressure inside the arteries falls, which can be measured as the diastolic pressure.¹⁴²

“Systolic” is derived from the Greek word **systole**, “**a drawing together, contraction**,” from **syn-** “**together**” + stemword related to **stelllein** “**to bring together, draw in; to put, set,**

¹⁴⁰ Hogg HW: “Heart and reins” in ancient literature of the Near East. *J Manchester Univ Egyptian Oriental Soc* 1 :49 -91, 1911

¹⁴¹ Rippe, J.M., (2015), *PREVENTING AND REVERSING HEART DISEASE FOR DUMMIES*, USA, John Wiley & Sons, p. 114

¹⁴² Katz, A.M. (2010), *PHYSIOLOGY OF THE HEART: M-MEDICINE SERIES*, PA, USA, Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, p. 10

place.”¹⁴³

“Diastolic” is also derived from a Greek word meaning “**drawing asunder, dilation,**” from **diastellein**, from *dia-* “**through, thoroughly, entirely**” + *stellein* “**to set in order, arrange, array, equip, make ready.**”

One’s physiological blood pressure is measured in millimetres of Mercury with an instrument called a sphygmomanometer. Soto¹⁴⁴ explains that blood is either flowing through the arteries, veins or capillaries. The change in force of blood flow is called a blood pressure variance. Changes in variance can be a result of internal change in the body or external change such as acute injury.

Internal changes in blood pressure are primarily caused by constriction or dilation of the arteries or veins, which prevents or hinders the completion of the cardiac cycle. This variance can be noted on blood pressure measurement or ECG. When a person’s blood pressure is above normal range, the person can be at risk for stroke, cardiovascular disease or kidney disease.

When arteries are not open and cannot move nutrients, gasses and waste products through them, pressure builds up and blood circulation slows down. Over a period of time, the arteries become blocked with waste products, which can result. The body tries to compensate for the smaller blood passages by increasing the arterial pressure, which causes an increase in blood pressure.

The kidneys are involved in the maintenance of peripheral vascular resistance and participate in the volume control of cardiac output by regulating urinary salt and water excretion. Arterial pressure is equal to cardiac output multiplied by total peripheral resistance; thus, the kidneys are indispensable for regulation of blood pressure.

When a person’s blood pressure rises above normal, the kidneys excrete an increased volume of fluid, and progressive loss of this fluid causes blood pressure to return to normal.

143 ONLINE ETYMOLOGY DICTIONARY – *Systolic*, (2016), [Online] Available From: http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?allowed_in_frame=0&search=systole, [Date Accessed: 4th May 2016]

144 Soto, C. (2015), *ECG: ESSENTIALS OF ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY*, MA, USA, Cengage Learning, p. 121

Conversely, when a person's blood pressure falls below normal, the kidneys retain fluid and the pressure normalizes.

Blood pressure regulation in the kidneys involve the interplay of renal blood flow, sympathetic nerve and pressure-natriuresis control.

12.1 Spiritual Blood Pressure

Just as a person's physiological blood pressure can be used as an indicator of one's physical health status, so does a person have a spiritual blood pressure, which can be used as a measuring tool in one's faith in Christ Jesus.

According to Grange¹⁴⁵, life is full of stresses, which cause fluctuation in one's spiritual blood pressure or a fluctuation in one's faith in Christ. Mendez-Ferrell¹⁴⁶ explains that the human spirit has substances of which, according to Scripture, faith is a measurable substance.

Hebrews 11:1-2 states ***"Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen. For by it the elders obtained a good testimony."***

In the same manner as physiological blood pressure has upper limits and lower limits, so does one's spiritual blood pressure. Upper limits can be seen in sin, such as pride, anger, rage etc. and lower limits can be seen in a form such as addictions, depression, suicidal thoughts, hopelessness etc. Romans 12:3 states: ***"For I say, through the grace given to me, to everyone who is among you, not to think of himself more highly than he ought to think, but to think soberly, as God has dealt to each one a measure of faith."***

A person might try to stabilize one's spiritual blood pressure artificially, but one can choose to come to God and trust in Him for healing through faith. In Luke 8:48, Jesus told the woman who suffered from blood flow for 12 years: ***"And He said to her, "Daughter, be of good***

145 Grange, M.J. RN, (2010), *NEITHER ROOT NOR BRANCH: THE DISASTER MANUAL FOR DEPRESSION*, USA, Tafford Publishing, p. 116-117

146 Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

cheer; your faith has made you well. Go in peace.”

Scripture teaches that if a person has the faith as small as a mustard seed, nothing is impossible and one is strong and sound (see Matthew 17:19-20).

Just as faith is a “***substance of things hoped for***” but “***not seen***”, one’s physical blood pressure is also a result of things hoped for but not seen. A physiological blood pressure is a measure of one’s life sustainability. If a person’s blood pressure is too low or weak, then life cannot be sustained in the body.

Without a spiritual blood pressure, which is faith in Jesus Christ, one is also spiritually dead. Through faith, one can repent of one’s sin. The trial of faith, or one can say, gaining a good spiritual blood pressure, is more precious than gold. As the first book of Peter states:

that the genuineness of your faith, being much more precious than gold that perishes, though it is tested by fire, may be found to praise, honor, and glory at the revelation of Jesus Christ,

1 Peter 1:7 (NKJV)

In Medical practice one often finds a person presenting with hypertension of unknown cause. This is called “Essential Hypertension.” It is difficult to reduce the blood pressure, but it cannot be ignored. It is usually ascribed to **environmental stressors** and genetic factors. One might consider this type of physical hypertension as an indicator of one’s **lack of faith** and trust in God. Scripture teaches: “***Cast your burden on the LORD, And He shall sustain you; He shall never permit the righteous to be moved***” (Psalm 55:22 NKJV). Also 1 Peter 5:6-7 states: “***Therefore humble yourselves under the mighty hand of God, that He may exalt you in due time, casting all your care upon Him, for He cares for you.***”

People in all walks of life experience more stress than ever before. Stress and anxiety takes its toll on the spiritual as well as the physical body. Stress is one of the main causes for hypertension, which in turn can lead to heart disease and strokes.

In John 14:1 Jesus said: “**Let not your heart be troubled; you believe in God, believe also in Me.**” (John 14:1 NKJV). Here Jesus condemns anxiety and stress stating that it is not a solution for one’s troubles. **Anxiety and fear is destructive** and it is due to a lack of faith in His provision for one’s life.

2 Timothy 1:7 states: “**For God has not given us a spirit of fear, but of power and of love and of a sound mind.**”

According to Cobb¹⁴⁷, fear is a waning of faith. When one fears, one cannot rely on God for full protection.

God wants people to have a “**sound mind.**” Hebrews 13:5 says: “**Let your conduct be without covetousness; be content with such things as you have. For He Himself has said, “I will never leave you nor forsake you.”**” (NKJV)

God is omnipresent and omnipotent. His presence will constantly remain. Further on in the text is stated: “**So we may boldly say: “The LORD is my helper; I will not fear. What can man do to me?”**” (Hebrews 13:6 NKJV)

A person’s actions must match one’s belief. One cannot claim to have faith in Jesus Christ’s atonement work, if one is not prepared to lay down one’s old life. Scripture states:

Therefore the Lord said: “Inasmuch as these people draw near with their mouths And honor Me with their lips, But have REMOVED THEIR HEARTS FAR FROM ME, And their fear toward Me is taught by the commandment of men, Therefore, behold, I will again do a marvelous work Among this people, A marvelous work and a wonder; For the wisdom of their wise men shall perish, And the understanding of their prudent men shall be hidden.

Isaiah 29:12-13 (NKJV) (Author’s Emphasis Added)

13. THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

¹⁴⁷ Cobb, J. (2007), *IN JESUS NAME RECEIVE YOUR SPIRITUAL HEALING*, USA, Joletha Cobb Ministries, p. 113-114

NOW HE WHO SEARCHES THE HEARTS KNOWS WHAT THE MIND OF THE SPIRIT IS, because He makes intercession for the saints according to the will of God. And we know that all things work together for good to those who love God, to those who are the called according to His purpose.

Romans 8:27-28 (NKJV) (Author's Emphasis Added)

13.1 Defining the Brain

The Merriam Webster Dictionary¹⁴⁸ defines the brain as: ***“the portion of the vertebrate central nervous system enclosed in the skull and continuous with the spinal cord through the foramen magnum that is composed of neurons and supporting and nutritive structures and that integrates sensory from inside and outside the body in controlling autonomic function (as heartbeat and respiration), in coordinating and directing correlated motor responses, and in the process of learning.”***

Another definition offered is: ***“intellect or mind;” “intellectual endowment.”***

Weller¹⁴⁹ explains that the brain is the body organ, which is central to the coordination of the entire communication system of the body. The brain manages everything in the body and around the body. It receives stimuli through the nerves in the body and sends out signals. It makes judgments upon information received and then compared to the information stored from previous experiences and lessons learned. The brain manages everything from creating new and imaginative concepts all the way to moving body parts.

The brain is primarily a collection of amazing intricate interrelated nerve cells, each with its own specialization. Each nerve cell requires a rich supply of body energy for the brain alone consumes approximately 20% of all the body's oxygen.

148 MERRIAM WEBSTER ONLINE DICTIONARY – *Brain*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/brain>, [Date Accessed: 29th May 2016]

149 Weller, A.L. Dr. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY, A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE TONGUE, THE HANDS, THE FEET, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 193

13.2 Organization of the Nervous System

The Nervous system is divided into two parts, namely the central nervous system and the peripheral nervous system.

13.2.1 Central Nervous System

According to Roy¹⁵⁰, the central nervous system consists of the brain and the spinal cord. The central nervous system is encased in a complete bony structure, the brain in the cavity of the skull and the spinal cord within the vertebral canal of the spinal column. The central nervous system is the integrative and control centre of the nervous system. It receives sensory input from the peripheral nervous system and formulates responses to this point.

13.2.2 Peripheral Nervous System

The peripheral nervous system's function is to connect receptors and effectors in outlying parts of the body with the central nervous system. It consists of nerves, which are the processes of many neurons held together by connective tissue and ganglia. Ganglia are groups of nerve cell bodies associated with the nerve.

The peripheral nervous system can be divided into twelve pairs of cranial nerves, which arise from the brain and brain stem, 31 pairs of spinal nerves, which arise from the spinal cord and leave the vertebral column through the in-vertebral foramina.

The peripheral nervous system can be sub-divided functionally into somatic and autonomic divisions.

The somatic nervous system is also called the voluntary nervous system and the autonomic nervous system is called the involuntary nervous system. The autonomic nervous system

150 Roy, S.H. (2007), *COMPREHENSIVE MCQ'S IN BIOLOGY*, New Delhi, IN, Golden Bells, p. 505

can be subdivided into the sympathetic- and parasympathetic divisions¹⁵¹.

13.2.3 Cerebrospinal Fluid

The cerebrospinal fluid is a clear watery fluid contained in the subarachnoid space, the ventricles of the brain and the central canal of the spinal cord.

It's function is to protect the soft tissues from blows by cushioning the entire nervous system, maintain constant pressure inside the cranium and to serve as a medium for exchange of food material, wastes, respiratory gasses and other material.

Scripture teaches that all people are “**fearfully and wonderfully made**.”¹⁵² The totality of a person's brain is encased in one's skull. The brain gives direction to all the body does while interpreting everything the body receives and perceives. Yet it is hidden away, only known by what it reveals about itself, by the actions, attitudes and words it expresses through extensions of itself.¹⁵³

13.3 Defining The Mind

The Merriam Webster Dictionary¹⁵⁴ defines the mind as: “**the element or complex of elements in an individual that feels, perceives, thinks, wills and especially reasons.**”

The medical definition for “mind” is: “**the organized conscious and unconscious adaptive mental activity of an organism.**”

The English Oxford Online Dictionary¹⁵⁵ agrees with this definition but further defines the “mind” as such: “**the person's ability to think and reason; the intellect.**”

151 Roy, S.H. (2007), *COMPREHENSIVE MCQ'S IN BIOLOGY*, New Delhi, IN, Golden Bells, p. 505

152 See Psalm 139:14

153 Weller, A.L. Dr. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY, A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE TONGUE, THE HANDS, THE FEET, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 194

154 THE MERRIAM WEBSTER ONLINE DICTIONARY - *Mind* (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/mind>, [Date Accessed: 30th May 2016]

155 OXFORD DICTIONARIES – *Mind*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/english/mind>, [Date Accessed: 30th May 2016]

13.4 Biblical Definition for “mind”

The Baker’s Evangelical Dictionary of Bible Theology¹⁵⁶ renders the mind as “***the part of the human being in which thought takes place and perception and decision to do good, evil, and the like come to expression.***”

There are a number of terms in the Hebrew and Greek languages of the Bible that are used for “mind/reason.” Some explanations overlap in meaning and others are viewed as the internal person from differing perspectives. According to Towner¹⁵⁷, the importance of this dimension of human existence can be seen especially in its relation to God and His revelation.

In the Old Testament, a rather limited vocabulary serves different purposes in different contexts and can refer alternately to the seat of a person’s thought and emotional life, the emotions and also the inner person. The references to the “mind” or “reason” most often refer to “heart,” “spirit,” or “soul,” but are not limited to these meanings. Mind is used to cover dimensions of the human being in a holistic manner.

In the Greek-speaking world, the array of terms that figure in the development of the concept of the mind and reason include basic term ***nous*** (Strong’s: 3563)¹⁵⁸ meaning, “***mind, reason, intellect, understanding***” and even, in the broadest sense in modern terms “***worldview.***”

The ***phren***, (Strong’s: 5424)¹⁵⁹ which indicate “***mind or cognitive faculties***” also comes into play.

In the Hebrew as well as the Greek culture, the intellectual and emotional dimensions of hu-

156 BIBLE STUDY TOOLS: Baker’s Evangelical Dictionary of Bible Theology – *Mind*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionaries/bakers-evangelical-dictionary/mind-reason.html>, [Date Accessed: 30th May 2016]

157 Ibid

158 STRONG’S GREEK LEXICON – *Nous* (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.eliyah.com/cgi-bin/strongs.cgi?-file=greeklexicon&isindex=nous>, [Date Accessed: 30th May 2016]

159 STRONG’S GREEK LEXICON – *phren* (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.eliyah.com/cgi-bin/strongs.cgi?-file=greeklexicon&isindex=nous>, [Date Accessed: 30th May 2016]

man life are thought of as the whole person, heart, soul and spirit, which are not considered as separate from the inner person, but each is reference to the whole inner person and is to be viewed in relation to the body. As a result, the inner thought and knowledge dimension is regarded in close relation to right conduct.

13.4.1 The Heart as the Mind

In the Hebrew language, the term “**heart**” (*leb*, or *lebab*), in its figurative usage, is the most important term for the inner person. This offers a view of the inner person from a number of angles, of which the concern here is the reference to the thought or will of human beings or to the organ of understanding.

In the verse in 2 Chronicles 12:14, which states: “**And he did evil, because he did not prepare his heart to seek the LORD,**” the term “heart” means, “*to make up the mind, or to decide.*”¹⁶⁰

“Calling to mind” or “recalling” is meant in Deuteronomy 30:1; Jeremiah 51:50, Isaiah 46:8 etc. Wisdom and understanding are located in the heart as stated in 1 King 3:12: “**I have given you a wise and understanding heart,**”¹⁶¹ and perceived with the heart as stated in Proverbs 18:15 “**The heart of the prudent acquires knowledge.**”¹⁶²

Scripture also states that it is the heart that plans or purposes to act as stated in Proverbs 16:1 “**The preparations of the heart belong to man,**” and in verse 9 “**A man’s heart plans his way.**”

God’s mind is also sometimes described in this manner when one reads Jeremiah 19:5 “**I did not command or speak, nor did it come into My mind.**”¹⁶³

The Bible also refers to decisions of a moral nature to take place in the heart as in Genesis

160 Also compare Nehemiah 4:6

161 Also compare Proverbs 16:23

162 Compare Proverbs 22:17 and Ecclesiastes 1:1 and 8:16

163 See also Jeremiah 32:35; 44:21

20:5 ***"In the integrity of my heart and innocence of my hands I have done this,"*** and Job 11:13 ***"if you would prepare your heart..."***

According to Scriptures, evil will also be manifested in the heart, where decisions to disobey and rebel take place as stated in Jeremiah 17:9 ***"The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked..."***

The heart and mind can be perverse and therefore incapable of apprehending truth and wisdom as stated in Proverbs 10:20 ***"The heart of the wicked is worth little."***¹⁶⁴

Deception also occurs in the heart as stated in Isaiah 44:20 ***"A deceived heart has turned him aside..."***

"Heart" thus serves as a reference to the person as a thinking, perceiving and willing being, bringing together the ideas of knowledge, understanding and will.¹⁶⁵

13.4.2 The Spirit of Man as the Mind

The Hebrew term ***ruach***¹⁶⁶ depicts the inner person from the perspectives of the mind, understanding and reason on different occasions. The human mind can be viewed in relation to skills and planning in Exodus 28:3 where it states: ***"...whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom..."*** and also 1 Chronicles 28:12. In Ezekiel 11:5 and 20:32 the spirit is reference as to the conscious thoughts of a man.

Daniel 5:20 has the mind-set or determination of the will in view in this description of Nebuchadnezzar: ***"his heart became arrogant and hardened with pride."*** In this case, it is a mind set against God in rebellion.

¹⁶⁴ See also Proverbs 11:20; 12:8; 17:6; 17:20.

¹⁶⁵ BIBLE STUDY TOOLS: Baker's Evangelical Dictionary of Bible Theology – *Mind*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionaries/bakers-evangelical-dictionary/mind-reason.html>, [Date Accessed: 30th May 2016]

¹⁶⁶ See Chapter 1 for further detail on the topic of the human spirit.

13.4.3 The Soul as the Mind and Reason

Towner explains that another term for the inner person that can refer to the intellectual or mental dimension of life is “soul” (*nephesh*)¹⁶⁷. In the well-known command of Deuteronomy 6:5, “**You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your strength,**” the soul, along with the heart, contributes to a description of the whole inner person as a thinking, knowing and willing force, which must decide to serve God.¹⁶⁸

“Soul” describes a man from the perspective of the choices he makes in Deuteronomy 18:6, “**...and comes with all the desire of his mind to the place which the Lord chooses,**” and as a thinking, inquiring being in Ecclesiastes 7:28 “**Which my soul still seeks but I cannot find...**” The thought, counsel, or mind of God is also described with the Hebrew term “soul” in 1 Samuel 2:35. The same term can stand for one’s wish or determination as in 2 Kings 9:15 “And Jehu said, “**If you are so minded, let no one leave or escape from the city to go and tell it in Jezreel.**”

13.5 The Physical Heart-Brain Relationship

“For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies.

Matthew 15:19 (NKJV)

It seems that ancient writers better understood the close relationship between the heart and the brain than modern scientists. Only now this close relationship is beginning to be appreciated by the latest studies on the human heart. Researchers in the field of neuropsychology have challenged several long-standing assumptions about emotions. Where scholars in medicine and psychology once maintained that emotions were purely mental expressions

¹⁶⁷ Refer to Chapter 1 for a more thorough explanation of the soul.

¹⁶⁸ Compare 1 Chronicles 22:19; 28:9

generated by the brain alone it is now known that emotions have as much to do with the body as they do with the brain. According to Herbst¹⁶⁹, emotions are thus a product of the brain, heart and body acting in concert.

The heart is not merely an organ that pumps blood, but is a sensory organ and a sophisticated information encoding and processing centre, with an extensive intrinsic nervous system sufficiently sophisticated to qualify as a “**heart brain**.” Its circuitry enables it to learn, remember and make functional decisions independent of the cranial brain.

Moreover, numerous experiments have demonstrated that patterns of afferent neurological input to the brain not only affect autonomic regulatory centres, but also influence higher brain centres involved in perception and emotional processing.¹⁷⁰

13.5.1 The “Heart-Brain”

Mc Craty¹⁷¹ explains that the physical heart sets the pace and rhythm for the whole body. Although they are not as strong as the heart’s rhythms, rhythm is also generated from the respiratory and digestive systems and from the brain waves. The heartbeat produces 40 to 60 times more electrical amplitude than the brain and broadcasts an electrical signal that permeates every cell in the body. The strength of the heart’s magnetic field is five thousand times greater than the field generated by the brain and it can be measured several feet away from the body in all directions.

David Paterson, Ph.D., a professor at Oxford University explores the two areas of the brain and the heart. His work shows that one’s brain is not the sole source of one’s emotions, but indeed, one’s heart and brain work together in producing emotions.¹⁷² **One’s heart**

169 Herbst, T. dr. (2014), *THE DARK SIDE OF LEADERSHIP: A PSYCHO-SPIRITUAL APPROACH TOWARDS UNDERSTANDING THE ORIGIN OF PERSONALITY DISFUNCTIONS, DERAILMENT AND THE RESTORATION OF PERSONALITY*, IN, USA, Author House, p. 111-113

170 McCraty, R. & Childre, D. Dr. (2002), *THE APPRECIATIVE HEART: THE PSYCHOPHYSIOLOGY OF POSITIVE EMOTIONS AND OPTIMAL FUNCTIONING*. Heart Math Research Centre, Institute of Heart Math, Publication No. 02-026, Boulder Creek, CA, USA, pp. 1-21

171 McCraty, R. & Childre, D. Dr. (2002), *THE APPRECIATIVE HEART: THE PSYCHOPHYSIOLOGY OF POSITIVE EMOTIONS AND OPTIMAL FUNCTIONING*. Heart Math Research Centre, Institute of Heart Math, Publication No. 02-026, Boulder Creek, CA, USA, pp. 1-21

172 MERCOLA.COM – Modern Research Reveals Your Heart Does Have a Mind of its Own (Published: 5th March 2016), [Online] Available From: http://articles.mercola.com/sites/articles/archive/2016/03/05/brain-heart-emotion.aspx?e_cid=20160305Z1_DNL_art_1&utm_source=dnl&utm_medium=email&utm_content=art1&utm_campaign=20160305Z1&et_cid=DM99277&et rid=1388064683, [Date Accessed: 12th March 2016]

contains neurons, predominantly around the right ventricle surface, similar to those in one's brain and **one's heart and brain are closely connected**, creating a **symbiotic emotional whole**.

A heart's own intricate nervous system contains around forty thousand neurons. This is referred to as the "heart-brain." This heart-brain can sense, feel, remember, learn and process information. According to Tota & Hagen¹⁷³, there are more nerves going from one's heart up to one's brain than from the brain to the heart. This is an indication that the **rhythmic beating pattern of one's heart tells the brain how the body feels**.

With every beat, a person's **heart sends neural messages to the parts of the brain that govern emotions and higher reasoning capacities**. Any change in the rhythmic pattern in one's heart alters the pattern of neural activity that one's brain receives, and affects the way one feels and processes information. (McCraty & Childre: 2002)¹⁷⁴

Scientific studies show that positive emotions long associated with the heart, such as love, care, compassion and appreciation quickly bring heart rhythms into coherent waveforms. Coherent heart rhythms pull one's brain waves into more synchronization with the heart, which help bring alignment to one's mind and emotions. In turn, when mind and emotions align with the heart rhythm, mental clarity and perception improves according to studies. (Childre & Rozman: 2006)¹⁷⁵

13.5.2 Emotions and the Heart

In the film "*Of Hearts and Minds*,"¹⁷⁶ science documentary film maker David Malone explores the human heart, juxtaposing the modern scientific view of the heart as a mere pump, versus its long history as a symbol of love and the centre of innate wisdom and human character.

173 Tota, A.L. & Hagen, T. (2015), *ROUTLEDGE INTERNATIONAL HANDBOOK OF MEMORY STUDIES*, USA, Routledge, e-book

174 McCraty, R. & Childre, D. Dr. (2002), *THE APPRECIATIVE HEART: THE PSYCHOPHYSIOLOGY OF POSITIVE EMOTIONS AND OPTIMAL FUNCTIONING*. Heart Math Research Centre, Institute of Heart Math, Publication No. 02-026, Boulder Creek, CA, USA, pp. 1-21

175 Childre, L. Dr. & Rozman, D. (2006), *TRANSFORMING ANXIETY: THE HEARTMATH SOLUTION FOR OVERCOMING FEAR AND WORRY AND CREATING SERENITY*, New Harbinger Publications, CA, USA, p.44

176 Pure Science Specials – Of Hearts and Minds (2013), Youtube Video, Date Watched: 12th March 2016, Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Xwx5fbEIMfk>

“The heart is a pump that does respond when the brain asks it to, but it is not enslaved to the brain. Its relationship to the brain is more like a marriage... with each dependent on the other. It seems science is now restoring to the heart something that rightfully belongs to it: Our emotions.”(Malone)

Intense negative emotions put one's heart health at risk. Intense anger, for example, boosts one's heart attack risk five-fold, and one's stroke risk three-fold. Intense grief after the loss of a loved one also raises one's risk of having a heart attack. The day immediately following one's loss, one's risk of a heart attack increases 21 times and remains six times higher than normal for several weeks. Research also shows that people exposed to traumatic experiences have higher rates of cardiac problems than the general population.¹⁷⁷

It would stand to reason that a positive outlook reduces one's heart attack risk and may even heal one's heart.

Research has found that:

- Positive psychological well-being is associated with a consistent reduced risk of coronary heart disease
- Emotional vitality may protect against Coronary heart disease in men and women
- Cheerful heart disease patients live longer than pessimistic heart patients
- Very optimistic people have lower risks of dying from any cause, as well as lower risks of dying from heart disease, compared to highly pessimistic people.¹⁷⁸

13.6 The Bible and the Heart/Mind

For the word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, AND IS A DISCERNER OF THE THOUGHTS AND INTENTS OF THE HEART.

Hebrews 4:12 (NKJV) (Author's Emphasis Added)

¹⁷⁷ MERCOLA.COM – Modern Research Reveals Your Heart Does Have a Mind of its Own (Published: 5th March 2016), [Online] Available From: http://articles.mercola.com/sites/articles/archive/2016/03/05/brain-heart-emotion.aspx?e_cid=20160305Z1_DNL_art_1&utm_source=dnl&utm_medium=email&utm_content=art1&utm_campaign=20160305Z1&et_cid=DM99277&et rid=1388064683, [Date Accessed: 12th March 2016]

¹⁷⁸ Ibid

Herbst¹⁷⁹ explains that the ‘transplanted memory phenomenon’ has proven that there is **no way the heart cannot store memories, thoughts and passions**. This is a clear indication that the Biblical concept of the heart as the seat of one’s soul, intellect and character can no longer be taken as purely poetic or romantic.

As mentioned previously, the heart in the Bible is not necessarily a physical reference of the blood-pumping organ inside one’s chest. The Biblical heart involves the mind, will, emotions and conscience of man. Proverbs 3:5 is a clear indication that God’s acceptance of man is based on the condition of one’s heart as it states: **“Trust in the LORD with all your heart, And lean not on your own understanding.”**

Moreover, one reads that God demands one’s whole heart as stated in Psalm 119:34 **“Give me understanding, and I shall keep Your law; Indeed, I shall observe it with my whole heart. ...”** In verse 69 **“The proud have forged a lie against me, But I will keep Your precepts with my whole heart.”**

The qualifications mentioned by Timothy and Titus are both extremely important for Christians as leaders in the Body of Christ, that is, to have the heart of a father as well as a heart of a servant.¹⁸⁰

Demazio explains that a Christian leader has at least three reasons to guard one’s heart, the first being the heart as the source of all attitudes and actions as stated in Proverbs 4:23 **“Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life.”**

Philippians 4:7 goes further in stating: **“and the peace of God, which surpasses all understanding, will guard your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.”**

The second reason is that the heart is the source of all that one ministers or speaks. It is out of the storehouse of the heart that a person brings forth good or evil. In Matthew 12:34-35

179 Herbst, T. dr. (2014), *THE DARK SIDE OF LEADERSHIP: A PSYCHO-SPIRITUAL APPROACH TOWARDS UNDERSTANDING THE ORIGIN OF PERSONALITY DISFUNCTIONS, DERAILMENT AND THE RESTORATION OF PERSONALITY*, Author House, IN, USA, p. 111-113

180 Demazio, F. (1998), *THE MAKING OF A LEADER*, Oregon, USA, Bible Temple Publishing, p. 69

is stated: **“Brood of vipers! How can you, being evil, speak good things? For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks. A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good things, and an evil man out of the evil treasure brings forth evil things.”**

The third reason for the heart of a believer is to prevent it from cause spiritual defilement to God's people or to himself. This can be seen in the following word of Jesus:

“Not what goes into the mouth defiles a man; but what comes out of the mouth, this defiles a man.” ... But He answered and said, “Every plant which My heavenly Father has not planted will be uprooted. Let them alone. They are blind leaders of the blind. And if the blind leads the blind, both will fall into a ditch.”

Matthew 15:11, 13-14 (NKJV)

It is clear that a believer's heart is rendered very important to God. Jesus warned that from the unguarded heart can flow wicked thoughts, sexual immorality, murders, stealing, covetous desires, dangerous and destructive wickedness, unrestrained and indecent conduct, an eye that looks for evil, a mouth that slanders and makes malicious representations and a heart that is prideful against God and man.¹⁸¹

14. CONCLUSION

Hypothetically, when a person looks at the different functions of a physical heart, one will be able to find spiritual truths which will help one to understand God's intention for what it rendered as the “heart” in the Biblical references. Even before physical birth, the heart function of the foetus can be observed and examples extracted to compare the spiritual life of man to the physical development. A larger perspective of the “spiritual heart” can be formed as well as the initial purposes for one's “heart.”

The spiritual heart gives a person direction and purpose in life. It is the essence of who the person is. All a person's ideas, all the possibilities for words and actions on a person's part, run through one's heart. It acts, in a sense, as a **spiritual filter**. Depending on

¹⁸¹ Demazio, F. (1998), *THE MAKING OF A LEADER*, Bible Temple Publishing, Oregon, USA, p. 69

the quality of the filter, **it will allow certain possibilities to flow through to actual action. This filtering process, then allows the spiritual heart to influence attitudes, perspectives, decisions and actions.**¹⁸²

Regeneration means to have the divine life of God in addition to the human life which one already possess. Therefore, regeneration requires another birth in order to possess another life. To be regenerated, to be born again, does not mean to adjust or correct one self. It means to have the life of God. To be regenerated is to be born of God (John 1:13), and to be born of God is to have the life of God, that is, the eternal life (John 3:15-16).¹⁸³

Although Jesus brought salvation for every person to receive, **a carnal man, who's heart has not yet been regenerated, has not received the seed through the blood of Jesus Christ so that His love can be poured out in the person's heart.** God remains the person's Creator and sustains one's life. The person receives spiritual nutrition and life supplies from God, although the person's heart has not changed into a new-born's heart. The person is alive but has not received eternal life. There is not perfect relationship and cohesion yet, although there is function.

People are conceived in sin because they are conceived in the flesh and no good thing abides in the flesh. It is corrupt in sin. That is why a person needs to be born again. The man of flesh is ruined by sin and must die; the man of the spirit has to be born in a person so that the person is capable to receive the will of God and live by it.¹⁸⁴

With the first breath of air flowing into the new-born infant's lungs, oxygenating the baby's blood, the foetal heart changes into a perfect functioning organ with four chambers. Its main function is to provide every part of the body with nutrition and oxygen by the pumping of blood.

A person becomes born again by the seed of Christ as one reads in 1 Peter 1: 22-23 "**Since you have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit in sincere love of**

182 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 172

183 Lee, W. (1987), *THE KNOWLEDGE OF LIFE*, Living Stream Ministry, CA, USA, p. 26-28

184 Ambridge, L.N., (2011), *WHO SAYS YOU CAN'T BE PERFECT?*, Xilbris Corporation, USA, p. 78-79

the brethren, love one another fervently with a pure heart, having been born again, not of corruptible seed but incorruptible, through the word of God which lives and abides forever..."

With the rebirth of a person, receiving the "**Breath of God**", the Body starts to function as it is intended to function. Christ's blood, which is Holy Spirit filled, now flows through the whole body.

Through the seed of Christ's blood, **His love is poured out in the believer's heart through the Holy Spirit** (See Romans 5:5). The person becomes a child of God and does not have to be ashamed to come before Him as Adam and Eve did after the fall.

Through the seed of Christ a person is now born again with a heart reflecting the heart of God. It is through the power of the Holy Spirit that the Seed of Christ is sown into the heart of man. The Holy Spirit is the provider for the new-born child of God.

To restore humans to the heart with which they were created, pure and whole in His likeness, God came to earth in the person of Jesus Christ. He came not only to teach people how to live but also to die for one's sin and rebellion, to break the hold that **the corrupt sin nature had on one's heart.**¹⁸⁵

Salvation is only the beginning of one's relationship with the heavenly Father. God wants people to draw continually closer to Him and, as His children, reflect His nature. That is why **He calls people to have increasingly transformed hearts that will represent His own heart.**¹⁸⁶

Weller¹⁸⁷ is of opinion that because the **heart is that part of a person that is most open to spiritual communication from the Lord**, regeneration of the whole person must begin with the heart.

¹⁸⁵ Ibid p. 31

¹⁸⁶ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 33

¹⁸⁷ Weller A.L. Dr. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE TONGUE, THE HANDS, THE FEET, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 174

Everything in one's life begins in the heart as Scripture indicates:

Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life.

Proverbs 4:23 (NKJV)

"A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

Luke 6:45 (NKJV)

The condition of one's heart determines the condition of one's life. Just as God designed the physical heart to pump blood to the different organs in the body, distributing minerals and nutrients, He designed the spiritual heart to "pump" life to one's entire being; producing mental, emotional and physical health.¹⁸⁸ Hypothetically the source flowing from the spiritual heart will either be influenced by the Kingdom of God or by the kingdom of darkness.

Every person, whether born-again or not, receives life from God. When a person receives the indwelling Holy Spirit, the flow of life will be an abundant stream of resurrection life, springing forth from the centre of communion to the rest of the person's being.¹⁸⁹

The circumcision of the heart is described as a divine act, a kind of spiritual surgery. ***"And the LORD your God will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul, that you may live."*** (Deuteronomy 30:6 NKJV)

The foreskin of the spiritual heart surrounds the ventricles and can be seen as a dark substance. This, according the Mendez-Ferrell¹⁹⁰, is part of one's conscience that becomes thickened and insensitive due sin, un-belief and evil.

188 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 39

189 Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

190 Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

As long as the foreskin is not removed and changed through a reformed conscience, it will serve as a cap that will prevent the flow of God for illuminating and irrigating one's soul. **This is the reason why God's calls His people to receive circumcision of the heart to bring renovation.**

"Therefore circumcise the foreskin of your heart, and be stiff-necked no longer.

Deuteronomy 10:16 (NKJV)

The only One able to circumcise a person's heart is Holy Spirit. He knows the condition of a person's heart and has the power and the love to circumcise one without hurting the person. Although a person's heart may not be fully hardened, there is surely some areas of one's life one needs to surrender to God so that one may be transformed.

If a person truly repents of sin, then God will be able to remove the "**heart of stone**" within the person, including the wounds, pain and feelings of rejection that have caused one to harden one's heart, and will give one a "**heart of flesh**," a new, soft, and tender heart that restores one's innocence. By allowing the Holy Spirit to do this, God will cleanse, purify and sanctify ones' heart.¹⁹¹

"Are you tired? Worn out? Burned out on religion? Come to me. Get away with me and you'll recover your life. I'll show you how to take a real rest. Walk with me and work with me—watch how I do it. LEARN THE UNFORCED RHYTHMS OF GRACE. I won't lay anything heavy or ill-fitting on you. Keep company with me and you'll learn to live freely and lightly."

Matthew 11:28-30 (The Message) (Author's Emphasis Added)

The "**unforced rhythms of grace**" mentioned in the verse above indicates a covenant relationship with God. To be in covenant with Him can be compared to the pacemaker of life, which pulses and brings function in God's perfect rhythm.

¹⁹¹ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 90

One can understand that arrhythmia happens when there is **no cohesion or good order between the different fields of the heart**. The heart is still beating and pumping blood, but the rhythm is erratic. Thus, the body is still receiving all the blood and nutrients it needs but because the heart is in overdrive, and not in pace, the body also starts to suffer by feeling tired and burdened. If an arrhythmia is not being dealt with, it will eventually lead to more severe conditions affecting the whole body, such as heart failure, stroke or even death.

In a covenant relationship, arrhythmia may also occur, and if not dealt with, will make the Body of Christ suffer.

The most common body organ used as a **spiritual reference in the Bible was the heart, as a symbol of intellect and wisdom**, and blood as a symbol of the life principle.¹⁹² The kidneys receive special attention in the Bible as the seat of conscience, emotions, desire and wisdom. The “**reins**” which is implied by the Oxford English Dictionary¹⁹³ as the loins, is considered the site of physical strength and prowess (see Job 40:7; 2 Samuel 20:8).

Hypothetically, the kidneys seem to share their position as the site of affections with the heart as in the following verse of grief: “**Thus my heart was grieved, and I was pricked in my reins.**” (Psalm 73:21 KJV). No other internal organ of the body is mentioned in parallel in the Bible as often as are the heart and the kidneys.

According to Grange¹⁹⁴, life is full of stresses, which cause fluctuation in one’s spiritual blood pressure or a fluctuation in one’s faith in Christ. Mendez-Ferrell¹⁹⁵ explains that the human spirit has substances of which, according to Scripture, faith is a measurable substance.

Hebrews 11:1-2 states “**Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen. For by it the elders obtained a good testimony.**”

Just as faith is a “**substance of things hoped for**” but “**not seen**”, one’s physical blood pressure is also a result of things hoped for but not seen. A physiological blood pressure is

192 Smith, C.R. (2004), *THE PHYSICIAN EXAMINES THE BIBLE*, Hallmark-Hubner Press Inc. NY, USA

193 OXFORD ENGLISH DICTIONARY – loins, kidneys, reins, [Online] Available From: <http://www.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/english/kidney>, [Date Accessed: 11th May 2016]

194 Grange, M.J. RN, (2010), *NEITHER ROOT NOR BRANCH: THE DISASTER MANUAL FOR DEPRESSION*, Tafford Publishing, USA, p. 116-117

195 Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

a measure of one's life sustainability. If a person's blood pressure is too low or weak, then life cannot be sustained in the body.

Without a spiritual blood pressure, which is faith in Jesus Christ, one is also spiritually dead. Through faith, one can repent of one's sin. The trial of faith, or one can say, gaining a good spiritual blood pressure, is more precious than gold. As the first book of Peter states:

that the genuineness of your faith, being much more precious than gold that perishes, though it is tested by fire, may be found to praise, honor, and glory at the revelation of Jesus Christ,

1 Peter 1:7 (NKJV)

In the Hebrew as well as the Greek culture, the intellectual and emotional dimensions of human life are thought of as the whole person, heart, soul and spirit, which are not considered as separate from the inner person, but each is reference to the whole inner person and is to be viewed in relation to the body. As a result, the inner thought and knowledge dimension is regarded in close relation to right conduct.

For the word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, AND IS A DISCERNER OF THE THOUGHTS AND INTENTS OF THE HEART.

Hebrews 4:12 (NKJV) (Author's Emphasis Added)

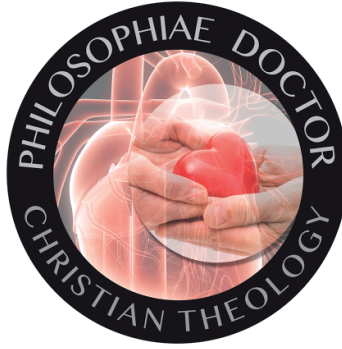
Herbst¹⁹⁶ explains that the 'transplanted memory phenomenon' has proven that there is **no way the heart cannot store memories, thoughts and passions**. This is a clear indication that the Biblical concept of the heart as the seat of one's soul, intellect and character can no longer be taken as purely poetic or romantic.

As mentioned previously, the heart in the Bible is not necessarily a physical reference of the blood-pumping organ inside one's chest.

¹⁹⁶ Herbst, T. dr. (2014), *THE DARK SIDE OF LEADERSHIP: A PSYCHO-SPIRITUAL APPROACH TOWARDS UNDERSTANDING THE ORIGIN OF PERSONALITY DISFUNCTIONS, DERAILEMENT AND THE RESTORATION OF PERSONALITY*, Author House, IN, USA, p. 111-113

The Biblical heart involves the mind, will, emotions and conscience of man. Proverbs 3:5 is a clear indication that God's acceptance of man is based on the condition of one's heart as it states: "***Trust in the LORD with all your heart, And lean not on your own understanding.***"

---oOo---



Chapter Three

THE PHYSIOLOGICAL AND SPIRITUAL FUNCTION OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM IN MANKIND

1. INTRODUCTION

“The hidden value of His blood is the spirit of self-sacrifice, and where the blood really touches the heart, it works out in that heart, a like spirit of self-sacrifice. We learn to give up ourselves and our lives, so as to press into the full power of that new life, which the blood has provided.”

— Andrew Murray, The Power of the Blood of Jesus¹

GOD USES THE NATURAL WORLD TO EXPLAIN TO BELIEVERS HOW IT WORKS IN THE SPIRITUAL EQUIVALENT. Specialization is a part and wonder of the human body. It underlines the lessons of Scripture about the body of Christ and its specialized cells, parts, gifts and ministries.²

By comparing the function of **blood** in one's natural body with the function of Jesus' **blood** in one's spiritual life, one can recognize more clearly that His **blood** constantly **cleanses, nourishes, heals and protects**, that is, His Church and all who actively believe in Him.

No new genetic code has been added to the human race since Adam's creation. God forming Adam from the dust of the ground and breathing His Spirit into Him was the beginning of all people. The Spirit of life breathed into Adam and passed on down the generations is eternal. It is from the very breath of God, for **“He Himself gives to all mankind life and breath.”** (Acts 17:25).³

All people's spirits come from the breath of the Creator. This spirit is the gift of life that a person needs to cling to and not lose.

¹ Murray, A. (2013), *THE POWER OF THE BLOOD OF JESUS*, USA, Start Publishings LLC, E-Book

² Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA; iUniverse

³ Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, E-Book

Life is a person's connection to the Loving Creator; the Heavenly Father.

The author of Ecclesiastes wrote: **"As you do not know what is the way of the wind, Or how the bones grow in the womb of her who is with child, So you do not know the works of God who makes everything."** (Ecclesiastes 11:5 NKJV). Thus, the Bible confirms that a baby in the womb has spirit.

There is no doubt that the created human being has life. There is a definite process of growth and formation occurring right from the moment of conception that can only come about if the new human being has **life**, or **spirit**, because, as noted, **the body without the spirit is dead**.

The spirit of Adam, which was breathed into his nostrils, permeated his entire being, thus it follows that all people's spirits permeate their entire being. The Apostle Paul wrote: **"For what man knows the things of a man except the spirit of the man which is in him? Even so no one knows the things of God except the Spirit of God."** (1 Corinthians 2:11)

In order for one's spirit to **"know the things of man"** the spirit has to have access to the entire man, not just a part of man. Additionally, the entire person has life, as the spirit is life.⁴

Hypothetically, if **"life is in the blood"** and blood flows through all extremities, then, although invisible to the naked eye, one's spirit also permeates the whole body. It makes sense therefore that if one were only to see one's spiritual body, it might look much the same as one's physical body, although a different substance. One would expect the spiritual body to take the same form or shape as one's physical body, as one would expect one's spirit to be in the boundaries of one's body.

The various compounds and chemicals that make up the physiology of blood operate in a way that is still not fully understood, even with modern medical science. Human blood and its functions in the body is a subject, so complex, that an entire medical speciality, called haematology, is dedicated to its study.

⁴ Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, E-Book

Blood is a miracle fluid that only God could make. Though science still does not fully understand how blood functions, it is clear that, without blood, life ends. Blood contains that indefinable ingredient that gives life to every cell in the body.⁵

The Pictorial Encyclopaedia of the Bible explains blood as:

“The viscous fluid essential to life which circulates throughout the body in veins, in arteries, and capillaries.”⁶

Harper’s Bible Dictionary states that the term “blood” can be understood in biblical writings:

“not only as that which is essential to life, but also the seat of life’s power. Though sometimes used simply to designate mortal life (usually in connection to flesh), it was often with God, the life giver.”⁷

Like any other component in the body, the heart of man cannot function if it does not receive oxygen and nutrients through life giving blood, but blood needs a force to be able to circulate. That force is the heart, which functions as the blood-pump.

The author of Proverbs states: ***“Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life.”*** (Proverbs 4:23 NKJV) As **life is spirit**, it seems that **spirit flows from the heart**. This references to a spiritual heart, but one may presume that the spiritual heart is in the same place as the physical heart as explained in the previous chapter of this thesis.

One’s spirit can be moulded and changed over one’s lifetime as one’s heart changes or is changed by God. This in effect changes one’s soul and physical being.⁸

The heart is referred to in Scripture much more than man’s spirit or the soul, because the state of one’s heart is what most affects one’s relationship with God. It is also the seed sown in the heart, which affects the condition of one’s spirit.

5 Baxter, M.K. & Lowery, T.L. (2005), *THE POWER OF THE BLOOD*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, Kindle Book

6 Tenney, M.C. (1975), *THE ZONDERVAN PICTORIAL ENCYCLOPAEDIA OF THE BIBLE: VOLUME 1*, MI, USA, Zondervan Publishing, p. 626

7 Achtemeier, P.J. (1985), *HARPER’S BIBLE DICTIONARY*, NY, USA, Harper, p. 136

8 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, E-Book

Similar to the physical body, the body of Christ needs proper circulation. The heart (God) is at the centre of one's spiritual life and the life-giving force.

In the opinion of the thesis, the spiritual force of the heart, causing the circulation of blood in the body, comes either from Jesus or from the kingdom of darkness. A person must choose to die to their old nature first for the heart to become flesh.⁹ Scripture teaches that seed only comes to life unless it dies.

Foolish one, what you sow is not made alive unless it dies.

1 Corinthians 15:36 (NKJV)

Everything in one's life begins in the **heart**¹⁰ as Scripture teaches:

"A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

Luke 6:45 (NKJV)

The condition of one's heart determines the condition of one's life. Just as God designed the physical heart to pump blood to the other organs in the body, distributing minerals and nutrients, He designed the spiritual heart to "pump" life to one's entire being, producing mental, emotional and physical health.¹¹

The key to the heart is the love of Christ. The biggest gift a person should be prepared to receive is the gift of love, this will unlock a person's heart. The heart is the seat of love and all world religions recognizes the importance of the **heart**. This is explained in the Book of Romans:

⁹ See Ezekiel 11:19; 36:26

¹⁰ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, p. 39

¹¹ Ibid p. 39

Now hope does not disappoint, because the love of God has been poured out in our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given to us.

Romans 5:5 (NKJV)

All forms of deception also flow from the heart. Jesus taught His disciples:

"Do you not yet understand that whatever enters the mouth goes into the stomach and is eliminated? But those things which proceed out of the mouth come from the heart, and they defile a man. For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies. These are the things which defile a man, but to eat with unwashed hands does not defile a man."

Matthew 15:17-20 (NKJV) (Author Emphasis Added)

One's heart will not necessarily be deceived, but it has the ability to deceive a person. Until one's heart is fully transformed, and one is living in godly humility and self-denial, one will have improper motivations and selfish intentions that deviate from the purposes of God. One cannot allow one self to be guided by any untransformed part of the heart.¹²

If a person's faith does not flow from one's heart, it is merely intellectual acknowledgment or mental assent of God and His ways. Under such conditions, one cannot expect to receive results from God.¹³ If a person lacks the motivation of love, one will not have a genuine desire to serve God and will make little effort in that regard.

Yet, even in the midst of one's selfishness and rebellion, God continues to draw one near to Him. His Holy Spirit guides one, motivates one, and convicts one's heart, thus working in a person **"both to will and to do for His good pleasure"** (Philippians 2:13).

God never pushes a person or forces a person to do anything. His manner of reaching out to people contrasts with the way in which Satan operates. Satan's demons push a person. They try to pressure one to take certain actions, or they try to snare one, in order to lead one into sin and destroy one's life.

¹² Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, p. 34

¹³ Ibid p. 36

The enemy desires more than anything else to usurp the dwelling place of God within i.e. the heart of the person.¹⁴

2. THE IMPORTANCE OF BLOOD

“...To Him who loved us and washed us from our sins in HIS OWN BLOOD...” (Revelation 1:5b NKJV) (Author Emphasis Added)

When a person visualizes the redeemed throng in heaven, described in the book of the Revelation, one hears them singing, not about their goodness, not about how they kept the law and been faithful, but this is the song.

In estimation, blood is mentioned about seven hundred times in the Bible from Genesis to Revelation, thus can be seen as an utterly important component.

According to De Haan,¹⁵ Israel's Passover in the Old Testament is a pivotal event in history. The Word of God sets forward an awe-inspiring demonstration of God's power and path to liberating not only people as individuals and families, but also a nation!

Hayford¹⁶ explains that the process of that deliverance unfolded as God sent a series of plagues on the land of Egypt. Each represented a confrontation with both Pharaoh's resistance and the demonic gods that the people of Egypt worshiped. Each plague demonstrated the Sovereign God's power to break the back of the real but limited power of the darkness of evil.

There is a big lesson in spiritual warfare when looking at Moses' continued confrontation of Pharaoh, and then his recurrent appeal to God to break through. The greatest lesson in the epic struggle recorded in Exodus 5-13 is the message of redemption's source of ultimate power; the BLOOD OF THE LAMB.

¹⁴ Ibid p. 37

¹⁵ De Haan, M.R. (1983), *CHEMISTRY OF THE BLOOD*, USA, Zondervan, p. 29

¹⁶ Hayford, J., Hayford Bauer, R. (2011), *PENETRATING THE DARKNESS: DISCOVERING THE POWER OF THE CROSS AGAINST UNSEEN EVIL*, MI, USA, Chosen Books, pp. 77-78

As Pharaoh continued to refuse the release of God's people from slavery into freedom, each plague revealed God's greater power, but the last set forth the message of the fountainhead of all salvation and victory.

The Passover, as it was instituted there, gives a person the underlying concepts necessary to understand what God ultimately was to accomplish at the cross of Jesus Christ. The Passover provided the final judgment against Egypt, the world power of that era, prefiguring the power of the cross to defeat the dark powers that rule this world.¹⁷

What determined if a home came under judgment was the mark of the **BLOOD OF THE LAMB** on the doorposts. As Exodus 12:13 proclaims: "***The blood shall be a sign.***"

According to De Haan,¹⁸ when God said: "***When I see the blood, I will pass over you,***" He did not say: "*When I see your goodness, your morality, your works, your fervent religious worship, I will pass over you.*" It is simply this: "***When I see the BLOOD, I will pass over you.***"¹⁹

It is evident that the blood provided protection for all who would come within its shelter and find freedom from certain destruction. The Passover is also a focal point for understanding the **POWER OF THE BLOOD** as it is used throughout Scripture in the redemptive process. All sacrifice in the Old Testament system is founded on the principle that it is through the offering of the *blood* of sacrifice that one receives great deliverance, great protection and a great God-provided future.

This central tenet of the old covenant; freedom from sin and spiritual death through the BLOOD OF THE LAMB; is a mighty forecasting picture that was fulfilled in the Person of **Jesus, the Lamb of God**, at the cross.

Hayford²⁰ is of opinion that, when one speaks of the BLOOD OF CHRIST, one is **dealing with life**. People are referring to what Scripture calls '*precious*' for a good reason.

17 Ibid p. 78

18 De Haan, M.R. (1983), *CHEMISTRY OF THE BLOOD*, USA, Zondervan, p. 29

19 Exodus 12:13

20 Hayford, J., Hayford Bauer, R. (2011), *PENETRATING THE DARKNESS: DISCOVERING THE POWER OF THE CROSS AGAINST UNSEEN EVIL*, MI, USA, Chosen Books, pp. 79

but with the PRECIOUS BLOOD OF CHRIST, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot.

1 Peter 1:19 (NKJV) (Author Emphasis Added)

As surely as the Passover lamb secured deliverance for Israel, Jesus' **blood** paid the inestimable price of liberty from the bondage of human sin, human failure and hellish spiritual torment. The BLOOD OF JESUS is so foundational to the universal order of things that the Bible refers to Jesus as the "**Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.**" See Revelation 13:8

Even before Jesus began His ministry, John the Baptist announced the advent of the Messiah. When Jesus appeared at the waters of baptism, John stopped his preaching, looked at Jesus and said, "**Behold! The Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!**" (John 1:29).

There was not one person listening to that declaration who would not have understood the implications of those words, but it would prove difficult for the "religious" people to come to terms with the idea that Messiah, the King, was also the Lamb.

Over centuries, the hope of a Messiah, which had first been prophesied as the one who would bruise the head of the serpent (see Genesis 3:15), had diluted to an expectation of political overthrow of hostile forces and the reinstituting of the Davidic kingdom. These things would all happen, but not in the way Israel had come to expect! The victory would be won; not through force, but through sacrifice. John was raising a signal not only to his hearers but to all of history.

When people talk about the subject of **blood**, most Western sensibilities cringe at the thought. In Biblical times, the slaughter of animals for food, and the attendant bloodiness, was a daily occurrence in the culture. Israel did not have an issue because of "**blood**," but the concept of the Lamb of God caused an issue, because their expectation was for a King. Still, they knew from the Law; and they knew from daily life; that "**life was in the blood**" (Leviticus 17:14), **both physical and spiritual life.**²¹

²¹ Ibid p. 80

Weller²² states that there is a key lesson to be learnt in the Bible for all people. In Leviticus 17:11 is written “**For the life of the FLESH IS IN THE BLOOD, and I have given it to you upon the altar to make atonement for your souls; for it is the BLOOD THAT MAKES ATONEMENT for the soul.**”

The phrase: “**The life of the flesh is in the blood,**” offers an indication that the **blood** of a human being is where life flows. This is why severe haemorrhaging causes death.

Animals also have **blood**, which contains **life**. God established a rule, stating that a person is not allowed to consume the **blood** of an animal when the person eats meat (Leviticus 3:17). In doing so, the person takes in the wild nature of the animal for “**life is in the blood.**”²³

This rule had two purposes. The first purpose was to protect God’s people as part of His physical dietary plan for them. The second purpose was more powerful in as much as this law set up a powerful teaching tool for Jesus to use when He began His earthly ministry.

In the Old Testament, an animal was “bleeding to death” for people’s sin. According to Hayford²⁴ the **blood** of that sacrifice covered the sin of the person offering the sacrifice. The sacrifices were not permanent, but awaiting God’s ultimate gift of the final sacrifice, Jesus.

In Hebrews 10:5 one reads: “**For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and goats could take away sins. Therefore, when He came into the world, He said: ‘Sacrifice and offering You did not desire, but a body You have prepared for Me.’**”

Jesus came to provide for people what they could not provide for themselves. **HE SHED HIS BLOOD** for people as a **covering**, as a **protection** from sin and death, as a **cleansing** for sin and **provision** of forgiveness.²⁵

22 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 166-167

23 Ibid p. 166

24 Hayford, J., Hayford Bauer, R. (2011), *PENETRATING THE DARKNESS: DISCOVERING THE POWER OF THE CROSS AGAINST UNSEEN EVIL*, MI, USA, Chosen Books, p. 81

25 Ibid p. 81

In John 6, Jesus compassionately takes care of the needs of thousands of hungry people who had been listening to His teachings. After this He made an astounding statement, which disgusted most of the religious Jews.²⁶ Jesus said:

"Whoever eats My flesh and drinks My blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day. "For My flesh is food indeed, and My blood is drink indeed. "HE WHO EATS MY FLESH AND DRINKS MY BLOOD ABIDES IN ME, AND I IN HIM.

John 6:54-56 (NKJV) (Author Emphasis Added)

Later on in verse 66 one can read: ***"From that time many of His disciples went back and walked with Him no more."***

The issue, which the Jews displayed towards Jesus' statement, was the fact that the Law specifically ordered the people not to consume blood, that it is a direct violation against God.²⁷

What they did not understand from listening to Jesus with a carnal view was that He was challenging them to take Him into their lives through the SYMBOL OF HIS BLOOD. HIS LIFE IS IN HIS BLOOD. The challenge is to take Him in and to take on His very nature, because life is in the BLOOD OF THE MESSIAH.

Every Christian who is prepared to take part in the **sacrament of Holy Communion** should recall Jesus' teaching about His body. The wine or grape juice one needs to consume is a mere symbol of the **blood** He shed and the bread is a mere symbol of His body.

This symbol of Jesus' life should be taken into a person's life and the eternal life He promised to all who believe in Him. His life is in the **blood** and if a person believes this and regularly take the sacrament of Holy Communion, one will be **filled anew the Holy Spirit**.²⁸

26 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 168

27 Ibid p. 168

28 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 167

Jesus, Himself, confirmed that the entire Old Testament was simply a portrait of Himself. As a result, the only written Word from God that man needed up to the time of Jesus, was the Old Testament. When Jesus and the New Testament writers referred to the “Scriptures,” they were speaking of the Old Testament.²⁹

One day when Jesus was talking to the Jews, He made a statement saying: “**Your search the Scriptures, for you believe they give you eternal life. And the Scriptures point to me! Yet you won’t come to me so that I can give you this life eternal.**” (John 5:39-40)

It is the opinion this thesis that, just as **blood** constantly flows through man’s natural bodies to sustain life, the BLOOD OF JESUS continually causes in the spiritual being of those who have identified with His death and resurrection.

By comparing the function of **blood** in one’s natural body with the function of His **blood** in one’s spiritual life, one can recognize more clearly that His **blood** constantly **cleanses, nourishes, heals and protects**, that is, His Church and all who actively believe in Him. GOD USES THE NATURAL WORLD TO EXPLAIN TO BELIEVERS HOW IT WORKS IN THE SPIRITUAL EQUIVALENT.

This is highlighted by Weller’s³⁰ opinion as he writes: “**Specialization is a part and wonder of the human body. It underlines the lessons of Scripture about the body of Christ and its specialized cells, parts, gifts and ministries.**”

3. GENESIS OF BLOOD

3.1 Physiological Blood

To be able to form an understanding about the intricate composition and function of blood, it is necessary to return to the origin. The human heart and the blood are in co-dependency.

²⁹ Booker, R. (1981), *THE MIRACLE OF THE SCARLET THREAD*, PA, USA, Destiny Image Publishers, p. 14

³⁰ Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 168

Not only does a human heart need life giving blood to remain functional, but also the blood needs the heart to be able to flow and supply life to the rest of the body, for **blood needs to keep moving to remain life giving**.

In a developing embryo, the heart has developed enough by the third week after fertilization to begin beating. Circulation patterns are clearly established by the fourth week of embryonic life. It is critical to the survival of the developing human that the circulatory system forms early to supply the growing tissue with nutrients and gasses, and to remove waste products.^{31 32}

Blood cells and vessel production in structures outside the embryo, called the yolk sac, chorion³³ and connecting stalk, begin at about 15 to 16 days following fertilization. The development of the circulatory elements within the embryo itself begins approximately two days later. During the first few weeks, blood vessels begin to form from the embryonic mesoderm. The precursor cells are known as hemangioblasts³⁴. These in turn differentiate into angioblasts³⁵, which give rise to the blood vessels and pluripotent stem cells³⁶, which differentiate into the formed elements of blood.³⁷

Together, these cells form masses known as blood islands scattered throughout the embryonic disc. Spaces appear on the blood islands that develop into vessel lumens. The endothelial lining of the vessels arise from the angioblasts within these islands. Surrounding mesenchymal cells³⁸ give rise to the smooth muscle and connective tissue layers of the vessels. While the vessels are developing, the pluripotent stem cells begin to form the blood.

Vascular tubes also develop on the blood islands, and they eventually connect to one another as well as to the developing, tubular heart. Thus, the developmental pattern, rather than beginning from the formation of one central vessel and spreading outward, occurs in many regions simultaneously with vessels later joining together.

31 OPEN STAX CNX – Anatomy and Physiology – *Development of Blood Vessels and Fetal Circulation* [Online] Available From: <https://legacy.cnx.org/content/m46610/1.3/?collection=col11496/1.6&legacy=true>, [Date Accessed: 18th March 2016]

32 **Author's Note: The subject on the developing of the human heart in-utero will be discussed in detail in a later chapter of this study.**

33 Chorion – See Terms and Definitions

34 Hemangioblasts – See Terms and Definitions

35 Angioblasts – See Terms and Definitions

36 Pluripotent Stem Cells – See Terms and Definitions

37 Ibid

38 Mesenchymal Cells – See Terms and Definitions

This angiogenesis – the creation of new blood vessels from existing ones – continues as needed throughout life as a person grows and develops. Whether a given vessel develops into an artery or a vein is dependent upon local concentrations of signalling proteins.³⁹

The blood, which flows in an unborn baby's arteries and veins, is not derived from the mother but is produced within the body of the foetus. Yet, it is only after the sperm has entered the ovum and the foetus begins to develop that blood appears.⁴⁰

It is unnecessary that a single drop of blood be given to the developing embryo in the womb of the mother. The mother provides the foetus with nutritive elements for the building of the little body, but all the blood, which forms in it, is formed in the embryo itself. From the time of conception to the time of birth, not one drop of blood ever passes from the mother to the child.

In the textbook *Midwifery: Volume I*, written by Mac Call Sellers (1993)⁴¹ it is explained that the placenta is the connecting link between the baby and the mother. It is a circular or disc-shaped organ, with the chorionic membrane extending outwards from its edges to form a sac. The umbilical cord is attached to the centre of the foetal side of the placenta. The chorionic sac and the foetal side of the placenta are lined with the amniotic membrane, which is filled with amniotic fluid in which the foetus floats.

The foetus, together with the placenta, the umbilical cord and the membranes, are referred to as the foeto-placental unit.

The baby is a true parasite, living within and deriving all its nourishment from and through the mother. In this way, the baby can develop correctly, as the baby's genetic make-up intends. Regular growth will take place and the baby will thrive until term, when, on delivery, it should present as an average new-born baby.⁴²

39 Ibid

40 De Haan, M.R. (1983), *CHEMISTRY OF THE BLOOD*, USA, Zondervan, p. 30

41 Mc Call Sellers, P. (1993), *MIDWIFERY: VOLUME I*, SA, Juta & Co. Ltd., pp. 66-67

42 Ibid p. 67

All the nourishment, which the baby derives from the mother, is obtained through the placenta, which permits an exchange of nutrients from the maternal bloodstream, through the placental membrane and into the foetal bloodstream. In this way, the maternal blood and the foetal blood do not contact with each other at all, unless there is an abnormal breakdown in the placental membrane. The mother and the foetus each have their own separate blood circulations and can have different blood groups.⁴³

Should the placenta not be as efficient as it is meant to be, the baby will not receive all the necessary nourishment. This could also occur if the mother's intake of nourishment is insufficient or if the mother has an abnormal condition, preventing the nourishment from either reaching the placenta or from penetrating the placental membrane.⁴⁴

3.2 Spiritual Blood

Thomas⁴⁵ is of opinion that no new genetic has been added to the human race since Adam's creation. God forming Adam from the dust of the ground and breathing His Spirit into Him was the beginning of all people. The Spirit of life breathed into Adam and passed on down the generations is eternal. It is from the very breath of God, for **"He Himself gives to all mankind life and breath."** (Acts 17:25).

All people's spirits come from the breath of the Creator. This spirit is the gift of life that a person needs to cling to and not lose. Life is a person's connection to the Loving Creator - the Heavenly Father.

Scriptures confirm that a baby in the womb has spirit. The author of Ecclesiastes wrote: **"As you do not know what is the way of the wind, Or how the bones grow in the womb of her who is with child, So you do not know the works of God who makes everything."** (Ecclesiastes 11:5 NKJV)

It is the opinion of this thesis that, right from the moment of conception, there is no doubt that the created human being has life.

⁴³ Ibid p. 67

⁴⁴ Mc Call Sellers, P. (1993), *MIDWIFERY: VOLUME I*, SA, Juta & Co. Ltd., pp. 66-67

⁴⁵ Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, E-Book

There is a definite process of growth and formation occurring right from the moment of conception that can only come about if the new human being has life, or spirit, because, as noted, the body without the spirit is dead.

The spirit of Adam, which was breathed into his nostrils, permeated his entire being, thus it follows that all people's spirits permeate their entire being. The Apostle Paul wrote: **"For what man knows the things of a man except the spirit of the man which is in him? Even so no one knows the things of God except the Spirit of God."** (1 Corinthians 2:11)

In order for one's spirit to **"know the things of man"** the spirit has to have access to the entire man, not just a part of man. Additionally, the entire person has life, as the spirit is life. (Thomas)⁴⁶

Hypothetically, if **"life is in the blood"** and blood flows through all extremities, then, although invisible to the naked eye, one's spirit also permeates the whole body. It makes sense therefore that if one were only to see one's spiritual body, it might look much the same as one's physical body, although a different substance. One would expect the spiritual body to take the same form or shape as one's physical body, as one would expect one's spirit to be in the boundaries of one's body.

The author of Proverbs states: **"Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life."** (Proverbs 4:23 NKJV) As life is spirit, it seems that spirit flows from the heart. This references to a spiritual heart, but one may presume that the spiritual heart is in the same place as the physical heart as explained in the previous chapter of this thesis.

One's spirit is directly affected by the state of one's spiritual heart. For example, Solomon wrote: **"A merry heart makes a cheerful countenance, But by sorrow of the heart the spirit is broken."** (Proverbs 15:13 NKJV)

When Zachariah described God the Creator he stated that God **"forms the spirit of man within him"** (Zachariah 12:1). The word **"forms"** used in this verse's origin in Hebrew is

46 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, E-Book

yatsar (Strong's: H3335)⁴⁷. This means to “**form, fashion or frame**” as “**of individuals at conception, from what already exists.**”

As Thomas⁴⁸ explains, one's spirit can be moulded and changed over one's lifetime as one's heart changes or is changed by God. This in effect changes one's soul and physical being.

The heart, which will be discussed in more detail further on in the study, is referred to in Scripture much more than is the spirit or the soul, because the state of one's heart is what most affects one's relationship with God. It is also the seed sown in the heart, which affects the condition of one's spirit.

4. BLOOD DEFINED

De Haan⁴⁹ explains that, in the body, there are various kinds of tissues. It can be defined as muscle, nerve, fat, gland, bone, connective tissue etc. All these tissues have one thing in common: they are fixed cells, microscopically small and have a specific and limited function. Unlike these fixed tissues, the blood is fluid and mobile, that is, it is not limited to one part of the body but is free to move through the entire body and supply the fixed cells with nourishment and carry off the waste products.

The various compounds and chemicals that make up the physiology of blood operate in a way that is still not fully understood, even with modern medical science. Human blood and its functions in the body is a subject, so complex, that an entire medical speciality, called haematology, is dedicated to its study.

Baxter⁵⁰ explains that blood is a miracle fluid that only God could make. Though science still does not fully understand how blood functions, it is clear that, without blood, life ends. Blood contains that indefinable ingredient that gives life to every cell in the body.

47 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance – *Formeth*, [Online] Available From: https://www.blueletterbible.org/nkjv/zec/12/1/t_conc_923001, [Date Accessed: 19th March 2016]

48 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, E-Book

49 PASTOR M.R. DE HAAN (M.D.) – *The Chemistry of the Blood, Sermon 1: “The Life is in the Blood,”* [Online] Available From: http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/BTP/Dr_MR_DeHaan/Chemistry/01.htm, [Date Accessed: 29th February 2016]

50 Baxter, M.K. & Lowery, T.L. (2005), *THE POWER OF THE BLOOD*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, Kindle Book

The Pictorial Encyclopaedia of the Bible explains blood as:

“The viscous fluid essential to life which circulates throughout the body in veins, in arteries, and capillaries.”⁵¹

Harper’s Bible Dictionary states that the term “blood” can be understood in biblical writings:

“not only as that which is essential to life, but also the seat of life’s power. Though sometimes used simply to designate mortal life (usually in connection to flesh), it was often with God, the life giver.”⁵²

According to Mosby’s Medical Dictionary⁵³, blood can be defined as ***“the liquid pumped by the heart through all the arteries, veins and capillaries.”***

The dictionary further explains that the blood is composed of clear yellow fluid, called plasma, and the formed elements, which are called red cells, white cells and platelets.

The major function of the blood is to transport oxygen and nutrients to the cells and to remove carbon dioxide and other waste products. Adults normally have a total blood volume of 7% to 8% of body weight, or 70 ml/kg of body weight for adult men and 65 ml/kg of body weight for adult women.⁵⁴

The Bible reveals the importance of this vital “river of life” that flows in people’s bodies. God has assigned to blood a certain sacredness that is mysteriously connected to life by His own decree⁵⁵:

“Only be sure that you do not eat the blood, for the blood is the life; you may not eat the life with the meat. “You shall not eat it; you shall pour it on the earth like water. “You shall not eat it, that it may go well with you and your children after you, when you do what is right in the sight of the LORD.

Deuteronomy 12:23-25 (NKJV)

51 Tenney, M.C. (1975), *THE ZONDERVAN PICTORIAL ENCYCLOPAEDIA OF THE BIBLE: VOLUME 1*, MI, USA, Zondervan Publishing, p. 626

52 Achtemeier, P.J. (1985), *HARPER’S BIBLE DICTIONARY*, NY, USA, Harper, p. 136

53 Mosby, (2013), *MOSBY’S MEDICAL DICTIONARY: 9th REVISED EDITION*, USA, Elsevier Health Sciences, p. 220

54 Ibid p. 220

55 Baxter, M.K.with Lowery, T.L. (2005), *THE POWER OF THE BLOOD*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, Kindle Book

From Scripture one learns that “**life is in the blood,**” (Genesis 9:4; Leviticus 17:11,14). Weller⁵⁶ explains that blood basically consists of four components that accomplish astounding functions continuously throughout the body. The major ingredients of which blood consists are as follows:

- a. Blood Plasma – Plasma is the liquid portion of blood with a yellowish colour, free of its formed elements and particles. It comprises an average of 55% of a person’s blood. It is 92% water and the other 8% is composed of glucose, amino acids, fats, globulins, antibodies, urea and other waste products, hormones, enzymes, vitamins and minerals.⁵⁷
- b. There are approximately 25 trillion erythrocytes (also called red cells, red blood cells or corpuscles) in the human body. It is the major cellular element of the circulating blood and transports oxygen as its principle function.⁵⁸ 300 billion erythrocytes are being replaced on a daily basis in the body,⁵⁹ that is slightly more than 1% a day, thus a constant level is usually maintained.⁶⁰ Their function is to carry oxygen and waste products in the haemoglobin (which gives blood the red colour). Acute blood loss, haemolytic anaemia, or when the body shows an additional need for oxygen, such as in thin air, erythrocyte production is increased greatly. Erythrocytes originate in the marrow of flat bones or at the end of long bones. These disc shaped cells float along in the blood stream and survives for three to four months.⁶¹
- c. There are 35 billion leukocytes (white cells), which are outnumbered 700 to 1 by red blood cells. Leukocytes don’t just float along in the blood stream, but are self-propelled. Their function is to attack “enemies” in the body and to destroy them. Sometimes they will die for the cause of keeping the body healthy. This is the primary immune system of the body. Sometimes leukocytes develop a specialization against certain diseases. Particular vaccines are developed to trigger this specialization in the while blood cells. When it happens, it is said that the body is immune to the enemies.⁶²

56 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse

57 Mosby, (2013), *MOSBY’S MEDICAL DICTIONARY: 9th REVISED EDITION*, USA, Elsevier Health Sciences, p. 222

58 Ibid p. 643

59 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 166

60 Mosby, (2013), *MOSBY’S MEDICAL DICTIONARY: 9th REVISED EDITION*, USA, Elsevier Health Sciences, p. 643

61 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 166

62 Ibid p. 167

- d. There are 1.5 trillion platelets in the human body. If collected together, they will only fill two teaspoons. Though small in volume, they are essential to life. Without platelets in the body, a person would bleed to death. Each platelet has a lifespan of two to four days. Their function is to determine the clotting factor in the body. They stick to almost anything. They burst apart at the point of a cut or a puncture in the skin, releasing chemicals. These chemicals react to the fibrinogen in the plasma and create an amazing network of crystals. This network catches the red blood cells and causes a clot to form and stop the bleeding.⁶³

5. LIFE IN THE BLOOD

Hayford⁶⁴ explain that in the Old Testament, when food laws were being listed for the people, one of the principal laws was the forbidding of the eating of blood, because “**the life is in the blood.**” This is a known fact, because a person can **easily bleed to death.**

When it came to the Old Testament sacrifices, the concept held true, because an animal was “**bleeding to death**” for people’s sin. The blood of that sacrifice covered the sin of the person offering the sacrifice. It is known that those sacrifices were not permanent, but awaiting God’s ultimate gift of the final sacrifice, Jesus. As Hebrews states:

But in those sacrifices there is a reminder of sins every year. For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and goats could take away sins. Therefore, when He came into the world, He said: “Sacrifice and offering You did not desire, But a body You have prepared for Me.

Hebrews 10:3-5 (NKJV)

Jesus came and provided for man what man could not provide for them. He **shed His blood for all people as a covering**, as a **protection** from sin and death, as a **cleansing** for sin and **provision** of forgiveness – THERE IS LIFE IN JESUS’ BLOOD!⁶⁵

Any prayer power or partnership with the Father that a person has, have all been secured for the person and released for the person through the gift of the cross.

⁶³ Ibid p. 167

⁶⁴ Hayford, J. with Hayford Bauer, R. (2011), *PENETRATING THE DARKNESS*, MI, USA, Chosen Books, p. 80

⁶⁵ Ibid, p. 81

But Jesus' sacrifice has provided for man and impacts man's ability to penetrate the darkness through prayer.

Jesus has not called people to come begging before Him. Pagan deities require that as seen in the books of the Kings when Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal (see Kings 18). Those misguided priests were shedding their own blood in an effort to get their god to act in their behalf. God does not require begging, but He does want people to learn to **access the power of His sacrifice**.

Just as Israel came "*under the blood*" at Passover, believers in Jesus Christ and His sacrifice can **come "under" that protective covering**. When a person prays to Father God, the person comes **under the blood of Jesus**, or to pray for a matter to be covered the blood of Jesus, a **spiritual dynamic is operating. It is the dynamic of life**.⁶⁶

5.1 Understanding Father God's Heart Through the Blood

According to Hayford⁶⁷, every believer in Christ should know how to appropriate the power of the blood of Jesus. Like the Passover, the blood has been applied to the doorways of a person's **heart**. Just as surely as the blood provided for Israel then, it provides protection, deliverance and promise for people's lives. It is the primary key for growing in the faith, boldness and breakthrough one longs for. Scripture states:

Therefore, brethren, having boldness to enter the Holiest by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way which He consecrated for us, through the veil, that is, His flesh, and having a High Priest over the house of God, let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience and our bodies washed with pure water.

Hebrews 10:19-22 (NKJV)

Today as believers in Jesus Christ, people can appropriate four direct provisions by reason of the blood being shed for them. In understanding what He has provided, one learns what it means for one to access the power of what Jesus accomplished on the cross.

⁶⁶ Ibid, pp. 81-82

⁶⁷ Hayford, J. with Hayford Bauer, R. (2011), *PENETRATING THE DARKNESS*, MI, USA, Chosen Books, p. 83

When a person “*pleads the precious blood of Jesus*,” one is claiming all that He has provided for the person of **protection from spiritual death, deliverance from the slavery of sin, a new beginning wherever hope has waned and a witness to a watching world.**

In “*pleading the blood*,” a person is driving back the forces of darkness that seek to afflict one’s planet and inflict the ploys of the Adversary, because those hellish powers cannot stand before the power of the blood of Jesus Christ.⁶⁸

6. DNA

For since the creation of the world His invisible [attributes] are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, [even] His eternal power and Godhead, so that they are without excuse,

Romans 1:20 (NKJV)

DNA or Deoxyribonucleic acid is a molecule that contains the instructions an organism needs to develop, live and reproduce. These instructions are found inside every cell, and are passed down from parents to their children. The entire human genome contains about 3 billion bases and about 20 000 genes.

DNA molecules are so long that they cannot fit into cells without the right packaging. To fit inside cells, DNA is coiled tightly to form structures one calls chromosomes. Each chromosome contains a single DNA molecule. Humans have 23 pairs of chromosomes, which are found inside the cell’s nucleus.⁶⁹

In Ephesians 1:4 it states that even before God made the world, He loved all people and chose all people in Christ to be holy and without fault in His eyes. In making a one-of-a-kind-person everyone is the Lord not only fashioned the physical person but the spirit and soul as well.

⁶⁸ Ibid, p. 83

⁶⁹ LIVESCIENCE – DNA: Definition, Structure and Discovery (June 2013), [Online] Available From: <http://www.livescience.com/37247-dna.html>, [Date Accessed: 25th June 2015]

Wollensack⁷⁰ is of opinion that scientists know very little about DNA. What they do know, is that every detail about the development and function of the human body exists in an incredibly complex genetic code contained in something so small that it is invisible to the naked eye. The amount of information contained in this tiny molecule is said to be equal to that of a stack of eighty copies of the Bible.

Until recently researchers dismissed the bulk of the information “written” into the genetic code as merely “junk DNA.” This was in fact encrypted on a higher level than they had previously understood.

He has made everything beautiful in its time. Also He has put eternity in their hearts, except that no one can find out the work that God does from beginning to end.

Ecclesiastes 3:11 (NKJV)

The mechanisms of man’s DNA reflect the Creators ingenuity.

The physical human body decays and dies, but the soul and spirit are of eternal significance. The question can be asked that, if it is remotely possible for the One who has taken such great care in creating each person individually and unique, has done any less in the aspects of spirit and soul that live for eternity?⁷¹

Every person has been in God’s heart and mind even before He made the world. He has carefully planned every facet of a person; spirit, soul and body. Nothing about a person is accidental.

The sophistication seen in DNA is found in throughout God’s creation. Patterns of God’s works can be observed in the Lord’s handiwork. What is visible in the material world reflects a purposeful design that exists in the higher, spiritual dimension.

⁷⁰ Wollensack, P. Dr. (2014), *DISCOVERING YOUR SPIRITUAL DNA*, Hamden, CT, Harvest Equippers International, Kindle Book

⁷¹ Wollensack, P. Dr. (2014), *DISCOVERING YOUR SPIRITUAL DNA*, Hamden, CT, Harvest Equippers International, Kindle Book

The operation of a DNA molecule in the physical world points to a similar reality in spiritual world, the realm of spiritual DNA.

6.1 Defining Spiritual DNA

Wollensack⁷² explains that spiritual DNA is a unique combination of abilities and attributes that comprises a person's soul and spirit that the Lord gave to an individual before the person was born for the purpose of glorifying God.

God has endowed every person with their own unique spiritual DNA. Thus, every person, no matter what their religious beliefs are, were born in God's image with unique spiritual DNA encoded with a unique purpose for God.

The unrighteous, un-believing world accepts myths such as the "self-made man or woman," or "big-bang theory." In most part, all people are what they are because of God made them to be.

It is important to keep in mind that God's intention in equipping a person with their distinctive spiritual DNA is not only to fulfil their purpose on earth, but also that they will glorify Him. It is important to note that Spiritual DNA is not about "self-realization," as New-age believers teach, but it is and will always be about God.

The notion of spiritual DNA is first seen "in the beginning" when God made man in His image and likeness, when He breathed life into Adam's nostrils He endowed Adam with a portion of His own nature.

As with all the descendants of Adam every person receives much of their spiritual inheritance by means of God's spiritual DNA.

Neither the new nature of man nor the fruit of the Spirit is connected to the one-of-a-kind, pre-determined, complex patterns within someone, like DNA.

⁷² Wollensack, P. Dr. (2014), *DISCOVERING YOUR SPIRITUAL DNA*, Hamden, CT, Harvest Equippers International, Kindle Book

These acts are connected to the work of the Holy Spirit in one's life and helps in developing the spiritual DNA.

7. BLOOD FUNCTION

7.1 Blood Cleanses the Body

But if we walk in the light as He is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and THE BLOOD of Jesus Christ His Son CLEANSES us from all sin.

1 John 1:7 (NKJV)(Author Emphasis Added)

The first function blood has, is to transport respiratory gasses. Haemoglobin carries the oxygen from the lungs to the body tissue for oxidation of food and production of energy. From the tissue, carbon dioxide is carried to the lungs where it is exhaled.⁷³

One of the most important functions of blood is to clear away the waste products such as carbon dioxide, urea, and lactic acid, each cell produces as it lives and functions. If blood were unable to do this, the accumulation of waste would become so toxic that it would kill the cells.⁷⁴

In the Bible one learns that “***the wages for sin is death***”(Romans 6:23). Every wrong doing on a person's life accumulates and condemns man to death before God. The verse further states that “***but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.***” Without the blood of Jesus, man is spiritually dead. According to John 1:1 one would be deceived if he claims to be without sin.⁷⁵

The only way for victory to come is to depend upon God and His tools. If one is to become cleansed and purged by the blood of Jesus, one must yield completely to Him and His working in conflicting situations,⁷⁶ as Scripture states:

73 Ashalatha, P.R. & Deepa, G. (2012), *TEXTBOOK OF ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY FOR NURSES*, USA, JP Medical Ltd., p. 416

74 Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 22

75 Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 22

76 Miller, B. (2003), *HEALING OF THE SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY*, USA, Christ Unlimited Ministries, p. 34

Therefore if anyone cleanses himself from the latter, he will be a vessel for honor, sanctified and useful for the Master, prepared for every good work. Flee also youthful lusts; but pursue righteousness, faith, love, peace with those who call on the Lord out of a pure heart.

2 Timothy 2:21-22 (NKJV)

When comparing the original Greek text in 1 John 1:7, the tense for the word “**cleanses**” (Strong’s: G2513)⁷⁷ denotes a present continuous action. This means that once a person becomes a believer, the blood of Jesus Christ keeps on cleansing one from every sin!⁷⁸

There is assurance to know that one is always forgiven in the continuous “wash cycle” of Jesus’ blood. Because one is continually cleansed, one is always in the light. Of course a person will fail at times, but the person remains in the light because the blood is continuously washing the person.⁷⁹

Miller⁸⁰ states that when the Holy Spirit points out sin to a person, the person needs to confess that sin, so that one can be **cleansed**. Not only does the blood of Jesus Christ bring cleansing to the body, Scripture states in Hebrew 9:14: “**how much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself without spot to God, cleanse your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?**”

The Lord desires that all the evil in one’s heart and mind and conscience be purged so that one can have the mind of Christ⁸¹. The cleansing process is accomplished by applying the Word of God to one’s life, for Scripture states: “**You are already clean because of the word which I have spoken to you.**” (John 15:3 NKJV)

Through fellowship with the Word (Jesus)⁸² and by reading the Word (Bible), one shall be

77 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong’s Concordance – Cleanse, [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong=G2511&t=NKJV>, [Date Accessed: 17th March 2016]

78 JOSEPH PRINCE MINISTRIES; *Jesus’ Blood Keeps on Cleansing You*, (2014), [Online] Available From: <http://www.joseph-prince.org/daily-grace/grace-inspirations/single/jesus-blood-keeps-on-cleansing-you/>, [Date Accessed: 26th February 2016]

79 JOSEPH PRINCE MINISTRIES; *Jesus’ Blood Keeps on Cleansing You*, (2014), [Online] Available From: <http://www.joseph-prince.org/daily-grace/grace-inspirations/single/jesus-blood-keeps-on-cleansing-you/>, [Date Accessed: 26th February 2016]

80 Miller, B. (2003), *HEALING OF THE SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY*, USA, Christ Unlimited Ministries, p. 35

81 See 1 Corinthians 2:16

82 John 1:1 state: “**In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. He was in the beginning with God...**” Further on in the text in verse 14 is stated: “**The Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us. We have seen His glory, the glory of the one and only Son, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth.**”

made clean. The more of the Word a person applies, the more the person shall become clean. When Jesus offered up His blood, He did it so that every person can become clean, holy vessels.⁸³

In Revelation one reads about the saints whose robes are washed white in the blood of the Lamb. If one washes any garment in blood it would not come out white, but **“God’s chemical laboratory of redemption has provided a way to wash away all filth and stain, and wonder of wonders it is by the washing in the Blood of the Lamb.”** (De Haan: 20⁸⁴)

7.2 Blood is Necessary for Regeneration and Sanctification

Physical blood contains plasma and cells that are vital to maintaining life. It is not only the carrier of life, oxygen and nutrients, but also sustains life and growth.

Sanctification needs to be distinguished from regeneration. The main idea of sanctification is separation from what is sinful, on the one hand, and consecration to what is righteous and according to God’s will on the other.⁸⁵

Sanctification is a progressive process, which proceeds in the life of the regenerated sinner on a moment-by-moment basis. Yet, sanctification is spoken of in similar terms to regeneration.

Stephen B. Lampman⁸⁶, in his book *“Reflections of the Transforming Power of God,”* explains reflection as the bringing to life from the state of being dead toward God. God confided to Adam that in the day of his disobedience he would die in his spiritual nature toward God (see Genesis 2:16-17).

Jesus told Nicodemus that for a person to be able to enter the kingdom of God the person must be born again, that is, born from above (see John 3:3-5).

83 Miller, B. (2003), *HEALING OF THE SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY*, USA, Christ Unlimited Ministries, p. 36

84 De Haan, M.R. (1983), *CHEMISTRY OF THE BLOOD*, USA, Zondervan, p. 20

85 Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 22

86 Lampman, S.B. (2014), *REFLECTIONS OF THE TRANSFORMING POWER OF GOD*, USA, Lampman Press, E-Book

The apostle Paul, reminding the Ephesians of their way of life before spiritual rebirth wrote:

And you [He made alive], who were dead in trespasses and sins, in which you once walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit who now works in the sons of disobedience, among whom also we all once conducted ourselves in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind, and were by nature children of wrath, just as the others. But God, who is rich in mercy, because of His great love with which He loved us, even when we were dead in trespasses, made us alive together with Christ (by grace you have been saved),

Ephesians 2:1-5 (NKJV)

Sanctification can be explained as the commencement of spiritual growth at the time of regeneration and will continue throughout a person's life. Regeneration and sanctification are the work of the Holy Spirit accomplished within a person. A person initiates neither.

The regenerated life will be evidenced by sanctification. From the time a person is regenerated, the person is being changed in the relationship with the Creator, one's thought process and one's conduct of life. Sanctification is the result of regeneration. If regeneration has occurred in one's life, some amount of sanctification will follow. The Holy Spirit cannot fail in His commission. To those whom He is sent He will regenerate, and those He regenerates, He will sanctify, that is, He will bring conformity to the image of God.⁸⁷

Smith⁸⁸ states that, the actual application of Christ's blood by the Holy Spirit to one's sins in regeneration, is what Peter meant when he stated that spirit baptism saves. Any regeneration without a rational knowledge of God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit is ruled out. (John 3:16, 36; John 5:24).

In addition, water baptism is the affirmation and sign of that which the baptism of the spirit has affected in the depth of the heart of the Believer. Baptism shows death and resurrection, the burial of the sacrificed sinner with Christ, and the birth of regenerated man, born from above by the Holy Spirit.

⁸⁷ Ibid

⁸⁸ Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 23

Jesus said in John 3:3 “**Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.**”⁸⁹

7.3 Blood Nourishes the Body

Most of a person's body cells do not have direct access to the food and oxygen they need to live and function. All that a person eats is of no use unless it is properly digested and then delivered for the person by every living cell. All the oxygen that is drawn through the mouth and nose into the lungs is of no use if nothing in a person's body could deliver it, even to the cells.⁹⁰

Another purpose of the blood is to distribute the needed nutrients to all parts of the body. The plasma of the blood carries the proteins, hormones, vitamins, enzymes and salts throughout the body.⁹¹

Jesus; blood is a similar source of life for the born-again believer. It not only removes all the unclean things, but also continues to deliver to the new creation, all that His sacrificial love purchased for people.⁹²

God feeds people through the Word by quickening the right word to a person. **The written Word of God must be balanced by the Spirit of God.** The dead letter of the law will bring death, but the Spirit brings life as Scripture states:

who also made us sufficient as ministers of the new covenant, not of the letter but of the Spirit; for the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life.

2 Corinthians 3:6 (NKJV)

⁸⁹ Author's Note: An in depth study about the “new-birth” in Christ in comparison to a new-born baby will be done in the following chapter.

⁹⁰ Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 23

⁹¹ Miller, B. (2003), *HEALING OF THE SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY*, USA, Christ Unlimited Ministries, p. 41

⁹² Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 24

Through Jesus' blood, He offers spiritual bread and living water to nourish and strengthen all those who belong to Him. The incredible love that His shed blood represents, meets the need and fully satisfies the emptiness of all who turn to Him and seek Him with all their hearts. He alone provides true nourishment and satisfaction that will never be found in any other relationship.⁹³

If a person consumes more energy than is expended, the excess energy is stored for later use. A small amount of energy gets stored in the liver and the muscles, but most excess energy is stored as fat.⁹⁴

Many people seem to become spiritual gluttons as they listen to good teachings over and over, but they do not apply the truth to their own lives. One must use what is consumed.

People are not only to be hearers of the Word but doers of the Word,⁹⁵ for it is written in Romans 10:17 **"So then faith [comes] by hearing, and hearing by the word of God."** Also in James 1:22 is commanded of believers to **be doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving yourselves.**

By applying the blood of Jesus to one's life, one shall have His life.⁹⁶

7.4 Blood is Important for Healing

Another function of the human blood is its capacity to bring healing to the physical body. Blood consists of many essential substances necessary to keep bodies healthy. Should the body become ill, the blood alters its normal values to adjust and promote healing.

White blood cells are the body's first defence against invaders. When bacteria enter the body, the white blood cells are produced in great numbers.

They travel to the infection and engulf the invaders.⁹⁷

93 Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 24

94 Grosvenor, M.B. & Smolin, L.A. (2009), *VISUALIZING NUTRITION: EVERYDAY CHOICES*, USA, John Wiley & Sons, p. 300

95 Miller, B. (2003), *HEALING OF THE SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY*, USA, Christ Unlimited Ministries, p. 42

96 Ibid p. 42

97 Ibid, p. 38

The analogy to spiritual warfare is that similar to white blood cells in physical blood, so also the blood of Jesus fights off Satan and his demonic angels. The Kingdom of Heaven within a believer begins to war against the Kingdom of hell.⁹⁸

The blood of Jesus spiritually does the same for the body of Christ as white blood cells does for the physical body. When Satan invades, the Holy Spirit stands ready to come to one's aid and bring the needed healing. God desires for man to walk in divine health, spirit, soul and body. If a person stays in close communion with Him, one will find that the spiritual man will not become sick and depleted, needing continual healing.⁹⁹

To be effective in this war, one must "***Be strong in the Lord and in the power of His might,***" (Ephesians 6:10), "***put on the whole armour of God,***" (verse 11) and go forth to engage and defeat the enemy.

Believers must fight and "***overcome Satan by the blood of the Lamb and the word of their testimony.***" (Revelation 12:11)

One of Satan's aims is to drain a person of spiritual strength and weaken a person to the point where a person has no resistance against his attacks. Staying in the flow of God's Spirit prevents this, as the person then possess His strength to overcome any attack.¹⁰⁰

Jesus' shedding of blood on the cross ended His earthly life, which He voluntarily gave to die in people's place as the Lamb of God slain to redeem mankind. Hebrews 2:14-15 tells man:

Inasmuch then as the children have partaken of flesh and blood, He Himself likewise shared in the same, that through death He might destroy him who had the power of death, that is, the devil, and release those who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.

Hebrews 2:14-15 (NKJV)

98 Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 24

99 Miller, B. (2003), *HEALING OF THE SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY*, USA, Christ Unlimited Ministries, p. 38

100 Ibid p. 38

Another form of defence blood possesses, is substances like platelets and fibrin that functions to clot wounds. If one's blood did not clot in the event of even the smallest cut, the human body would eventually bleed to death.

Blood carries a host of factors and cells that promote blood clotting and healing. Its response to injury is immediate, and critical components in the blood set off a cascade of events that rapidly plugs and heals the wound.¹⁰¹

In the same manner, Jesus' blood not only **cleanses** man from sin and **nourishes** him, but also **heals** when one is hurt or injured. In addition to **principles of health**, the Bible teaches that human beings may look to God for **direct healing** when other avenues of help have failed. Scripture teaches that God has healed and can heal man of every kind of disease. (See Matthew 8:16-17)

Healing is promised as the first instalment of the resurrection through the indwelling of the Holy Spirit.

But if the Spirit of Him who raised Jesus from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Christ from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His Spirit who dwells in you.

Romans 8:11 (NKJV)

7.5 Blood is Essential for Homeostasis

Homeostasis can be described as the normal state of a person's body's internal environment, relative to physical and chemical parameters. These conditions must be kept relatively constant despite changes in a person's external environment and activity level. Things that challenge homeostasis are referred to as stress. Moving fluids, including blood, lymphatic fluid, cerebrospinal fluid and interstitial fluid play a major role in the maintenance of homeostasis. Deviation from homeostasis may result in injury, disease or death.¹⁰²

¹⁰¹ Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 28

¹⁰² Clark, R.K. (2005), *ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY: UNDERSTANDING THE HUMAN BODY*, London, UK, Jones & Bartlett Learning, p. 84

The human body is very good at keeping its temperature within a narrow, safe range in spite of large variations in temperatures outside the body. The body temperature is a measure of the body's ability to generate and get rid of heat. By maintaining a good circulation, the blood flow keeps a person's core body temperature at a steady temperature.¹⁰³

If a person were to work out in the sun on a hot day, the person's body would heat up. As the body temperature rises, the nervous system detects the movement away from homeostasis, and takes steps to counteract this change. It would cause a person to sweat. The value of this is that when water evaporates, it absorbs a large quantity of heat. This cools the surface of the body. Once the body has turned to homeostasis, these cooling systems will be shut off. They will not be cooled below homeostasis.

The same principle applies in the opposite direction. If a person's body cools down, the body would also leave the normal temperature range. The body then has to conserve heat and maybe generate more heat. To conserve heat, blood flow to the skin will be reduced. Diverting the moving fluid away from the surface of the body keeps the blood from being cooled and then carrying the coolness to the core of the body. Instead, heat is held in the core of the body.¹⁰⁴ To generate heat, a person will begin to shiver which is rapid contraction of the muscles. This extra muscle activity helps generate more heat. Under normal conditions, this keeps the body temperature within a narrow, safe range.¹⁰⁵

In Revelation 3:15-16 Jesus said to the Church of Laodicea:

"I know your works, that you are neither cold nor hot. I could wish you were cold or hot. So then, because you are lukewarm, and neither cold nor hot, I will vomit you out of My mouth."

Revelation 3:15-16 (NKJV)

A "**cold person**" means somebody that has denied every cardinal doctrine of the faith. For that person faith is just a formality and the person is in active opposition to the Word of God

¹⁰³ Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 28

¹⁰⁴ Clark, R.K. (2005), *ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY: UNDERSTANDING THE HUMAN BODY*, London, UK, Jones & Bartlett Learning, p. 84

¹⁰⁵ Smith, L. (2012), *AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF*, Pretoria, SA, Self-Published, p. 28

and the Gospel of Christ. A **“hot person”** is somebody with real spiritual fervour and passion for the Gospel of Jesus Christ and who has a personal relationship with Jesus.

Furthermore, one learns from Scripture that one of the blessings spoken of in salvation is **“shielding from the heat of the sun”** which refers to the protection and prosperity, which God grants to His own both now in this life and in the future Kingdom.

The sun shall not strike you by day, Nor the moon by night. The LORD shall preserve you from all evil; He shall preserve your soul.

Psalm 121:6-7 (NKJV)

And there will be a tabernacle for shade in the daytime from the heat, for a place of refuge, and for a shelter from storm and rain.

Isaiah 4:6 (NKJV)

“They shall neither hunger anymore nor thirst anymore; the sun shall not strike them, nor any heat;

Revelation 7:16 (NKJV)

Many Churches today have departed from the faith and have a form of godliness but are denying the power thereof. This is a heart-searching message for this hour because there is a great bifurcation in Christianity today. The line of division comes where the great bifurcation consists of those who believe the Word of God and follow it, love it, obey it and those who reject it.¹⁰⁶

7.6 Blood is a Messenger

The human body secretes and circulates some fifty different hormones through the blood. A wide variety of the chemical substances are produced by endocrine cells, most of which

¹⁰⁶ Pfeiffer, C.F.; Vos, H.F.; Rea, J. (2003), *WYCLIFFE BIBLE DICTIONARY*, MA, USA, Hendrickson Publishers, p 768

are in glands. The hormones enter the blood stream to circulate throughout the body and activate target cells. The endocrine system, tightly linked to the nervous system, controls a large number of the body's functions, such as metabolism, homeostasis, growth, sexual activity and contraction of the smooth and cardiac muscles.¹⁰⁷

In the same manner as the blood's primary function is to send messages to various parts of the body, so is the primary calling of the Believer to be a messenger of the Gospel of Jesus Christ. Just like blood, this commission involves all the ingredients needed for the successful work of the Church.

And Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. "Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, "teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, [even] to the end of the age." Amen.

Matthew 28:18-20 (NKJV)

The Wycliffe Bible Dictionary¹⁰⁸ explains that the Great Commission is not an isolated command arbitrarily imposed upon Christianity. It is rather a logical summation and natural outflow of the character of God as He is revealed in the Scriptures¹⁰⁹; of the missionary purpose and thrust of God as unfolded in the Old Testament¹¹⁰ and historically incarnated in the calling of Israel¹¹¹, of the life, theology and saving work of Christ as disclosed in the Gospels¹¹²; of the nature and work of the Holy Spirit as predicted by the Lord and manifested on and after Pentecost¹¹³ and of the nature and design of the Church of Jesus Christ as made known in Acts¹¹⁴ and the epistles¹¹⁵.

The Commission is thus firmly anchored in the total body of revelation in both the Old and New Testament.

107 VISUAL DICTIONARY – THE VISUAL REFERENCE; *Hormones: The body's Chemical Messengers*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.ikonet.com/en/visualdictionary/static/us/hormones>, [Date Accessed: 3rd March 2016]

108 Pfeiffer, C.F.; Vos, H.F.; Rea, J. (2003) *WYCLIFFE BIBLE DICTIONARY*, MA, USA, Hendrickson Publishers, p. 768

109 See Ezekiel 33:11; 1 Timothy 2:4; 2 Peter 3:9

110 See Isaiah 49:6; 56:3-8

111 See Genesis 12:1-3; Exodus 19:5-6

112 See Matthew 9:35; 11:1; Luke 19:10

113 See Acts 2:17; 13:2-4

114 See Acts 2:9-11, 21, 39; 13:46-49

115 See Romans 10:18; Ephesians 2:11-22

It forms an organic unit and an integral part within that revelation, and receives its true meaning and force only if seen in this larger relationship.¹¹⁶

7.7 The Legal Grounds

God does not arbitrarily do random acts, or display His power for the sake of simply showing His power. There is reason and intention behind the things that God does. His laws apply universally, and while He can supersede them, He chooses to act within them. He set them in place for a reason.¹¹⁷

Thus, for Him to provide a way for humankind to be forgiven and come again into fellowship with Him, a just retribution for sin had to be satisfied: The sentence pronounced against people had to be met. The ticket had to be paid; the debt made good; the judgment against people fulfilled. God could not allow imperfect, blemished sinners into His presence; not because He has pride, but because His holiness constitutes a “completeness” that would disintegrate all that is unholy. On one’s own, one would not be able to survive in His presence. A way had to be made, and that was done through the shed blood of Jesus Christ; whose blood legally covers one’s unholiness.

Once accepted, the power of the blood grants authority! Just as it was visible at Passover, there were far-reaching effects in the lives of the people, based on the power of the blood and what it accomplished. Pleading the blood of Jesus is a heaven-given resource that grants one license to confront the darkness and to challenge and overthrow the works of hell, because the blood authorizes one’s extending its legal claim to expel evil. “Claiming the blood” is not a cry of desperation; it is a legal term available in the same sense as an attorney in court makes a “plea” on legal grounds, based upon a body of evidence.

When a person comes before the court of heaven in prayer and “plead the blood,” the person is accessing that which is proven to neutralize the power of sin, the power of affliction, the power of death and the power of hell.

¹¹⁶ Ibid p. 370

¹¹⁷ Ibid p.89

It is important to remember that in every circumstance one faces in life one has the legal right, through the blood of Jesus Christ, to enter a plea and to lay claim to the evidence, His slain body, His shed blood at the cross, His resurrection, His allocating His assigned authority to people as “partakers in the firm.”

The evidence on people’s behalf is due to what He accomplished at the cross. People have nothing of their own. It is to that legal right one makes the plea of the blood of Jesus. His blood purchased all people’s salvation, and now, whether one faces demonic, physical or personal attack, condemnation or the temptation to sin, one can lay personal claim to that same plea.

The plea is that the defendant is not guilty and cannot be bound. It is because of the evidence of the blood verifying the fact that one’s plea is just and appropriate. It verifies the fact that God’s legal requirements for justice have been met and satisfied. Romans 3:24-26 states:

being justified freely by His grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus, whom God set forth [as] a propitiation by His blood, through faith, to demonstrate His righteousness, because in His forbearance God had passed over the sins that were previously committed, to demonstrate at the present time His righteousness, that He might be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus.

Romans 3:24-26 (NKJV)

Hayford¹¹⁸ states that the evil principalities and powers were marshalling their troops when they duped mankind into taking the Creator-Redeemer and killing Him on a cross in Jerusalem. The apparent victory of evil was no victory at all. The act of slaying the Lamb would rebound upon them, for in the mightiness of Jesus’ resurrection He broke the power of evil forever. 1 Corinthians 2:7-8 says:

But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, the hidden [wisdom] which God ordained before the ages for our glory, which none of the rulers of this age knew; for had they known, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.

1 Corinthians 2:7-8 (NKJV)

¹¹⁸ Ibid, p. 90

Satan thought he had won the day, but what was accomplished at the cross became his downfall. The victory was accomplished there, once and for all!

There is now, in fact, no circumstance in life in which the **blood of Jesus is not key to God's releasing, protecting, delivering power**, whether it is removing the potential of confusion, overcoming the impact of rebellion, breaking the torment of fear or healing the shame of the past.

When a person enter one's plea, one is to do so on the basis of the evidence, the blood of Jesus Christ, and through it, all evil has been broken in its power, all sin neutralized, the power of death overwhelmed and every human need paid for once and for all. Whatever difficulty one faces stand firm and lay hold of the victory at hand when one pleads the blood of Jesus.¹¹⁹

8. BLOOD CIRCULATION

To understand the mechanics of the circulatory system, it becomes clear that a force is needed to pump the blood through the body. This force, which is the main pumping mechanism of the circulatory system, is the **heart**.

According the Thesaurus¹²⁰, a force can be defined in physics as any influence that causes an object to undergo a certain change, concerning its movement, direction, or geometrical construction. In other words, a force is that which can cause an object with mass to change its velocity.

In medicine a force can be defined as: "**the capacity to do work or cause physical change; energy, strength, or active power.**"¹²¹

Similar to the physical body, the body of Christ needs proper circulation. The heart (God) is at the centre of one's spiritual life and the life-giving force.

119 Ibid, p. 90

120 THESAURUS.COM – *Force*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/force>, [Date Accessed: 5th March 2016]

121 Ibid

In the opinion of the thesis, the spiritual force of the heart, causing the circulation of blood in the body, comes either from Jesus or from the kingdom of darkness. A person must choose to die to their old nature first for the heart to become flesh.¹²² Scripture teaches that seed only comes to life unless it dies.

Foolish one, what you sow is not made alive unless it dies.

1 Corinthians 15:36 (NKJV)

Maldonado¹²³ explains that everything in one's life begins in the **heart** as Scripture teaches:

"A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

Luke 6:45 (NKJV)

The condition of one's heart determines the condition of one's life. Just as God designed the physical heart to pump blood to the other organs in the body, distributing minerals and nutrients, He designed the spiritual heart to "pump" life to one's entire being, producing mental, emotional and physical health.¹²⁴

The key to the heart is the love of Christ. The biggest gift a person should be prepared to receive is the gift of love, this will unlock a person's heart. The heart is the seat of love and all world religions recognizes the importance of the **heart**. This is explained in the Book of Romans:

Now hope does not disappoint, because the love of God has been poured out in our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given to us.

Romans 5:5 (NKJV)

¹²² See Ezekiel 11:19; 36:26

¹²³ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, p. 39

¹²⁴ Ibid p. 39

All forms of deception also flow from the heart. Jesus taught His disciples:

"Do you not yet understand that whatever enters the mouth goes into the stomach and is eliminated? But those things which proceed out of the mouth come from the heart, and they defile a man. For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies. These are the things which defile a man, but to eat with unwashed hands does not defile a man."

Matthew 15:17-20 (NKJV) (Author Emphasis Added)

Maldonado¹²⁵ is of opinion that one's heart will not necessarily be deceived, but it has the ability to deceive a person. Until one's heart is fully transformed, and one is living in godly humility and self-denial, one will have improper motivations and selfish intentions that deviate from the purposes of God. One cannot allow one self to be guided by any untransformed part of the heart.

If a person's faith does not flow from one's heart, it is merely intellectual acknowledgment or mental assent of God and His ways. Under such conditions, one cannot expect to receive results from God.¹²⁶ If a person lacks the motivation of love, one will not have a genuine desire to serve God and will make little effort in that regard.

Yet, even in the midst of one's selfishness and rebellion, God continues to draw one near to Him. His Holy Spirit guides one, motivates one, and convicts one's heart, thus working in a person ***"both to will and to do for His good pleasure"*** (Philippians 2:13).

God never pushes a person or forces a person to do anything. His manner of reaching out to people contrasts with the way in which Satan operates. Satan's demons push a person. They try to pressure one to take certain actions, or they try to snare one, in order to lead one into sin and destroy one's life. The enemy desires more than anything else to usurp the dwelling place of God within i.e. the heart of the person.¹²⁷

125 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, p. 34

126 Ibid p. 36

127 Ibid p. 37

9. THE HUMAN BODY'S PHYSIOLOGICAL CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

This thesis deems to offer a simple explanation about anatomical and physiological processes pertaining to the **heart**, in an effort to help the reader draw a visible parallel between the physical human body and the spiritual functions and the spiritual “flow” in the body. The theological aspects pertaining to the **heart**, as referred to in Scripture, is under examination, thus, the physiological aspects will merely be used as basic background information to expand on the main topic of this study.

9.1 The Physiological Cardiovascular System

The circulatory system, also called the cardiovascular system, is an organ system that permits blood to circulate and transport nutrients, oxygen, carbon dioxide, hormones, and blood cells to and from the cells in the body to provide nourishment and help in fighting diseases, stabilize temperature and pH, and maintain homeostasis¹²⁸. (Dorland: 2011)¹²⁹

The cardiovascular system is composed of the heart, arteries, capillaries, and veins. This remarkable system transports oxygenated blood from the lungs and heart throughout the body via arteries. The blood goes through the capillaries, which are situated between the arteries and veins. (Stein et. al.: 2005)¹³⁰

The major functions are, circulation of blood, delivery of oxygen and other nutrients to the tissues of the body, and removal of carbon dioxide and other products of cellular metabolism. The blood that has been depleted of oxygen by the body is returned to the lungs and heart via the veins.¹³¹

9.2 The Physiological Respiratory System

The human respiratory system is a biological system consisting of specific organs and structures used for the process of respiration. The respiratory system is involved in the in-

128 Homeostasis – See Terms and Definitions

129 Dorland, (2011), *DORLAND'S ILLUSTRATED MEDICAL DICTIONARY*, USA, Elsevier Health Sciences, Cardiovascular

130 Stein, Alice, M.(Ed.) (2005), *NCLEX-RN REVIEW, 5TH EDITION*, USA, Thomas Delmar Learning, p. 239-241

131 Ibid, p. 241

take and exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide between a person and the environment.¹³²

Respiration takes place in the respiratory organs called lungs. The passage of air into the lungs to supply the body with oxygen is known as inhalation, and the passage of air out of the lungs to expel carbon dioxide is known as exhalation.¹³³ The respiratory system consists of two components:

The first component is a gas-exchange system that provides a large surface area for the uptake of oxygen from, and release of carbon dioxide to, the environment. **The lungs perform this function.**

The second component is a transport system that delivers oxygen to the tissues from the lungs, and carbon dioxide to the lungs from the tissues. The **cardiovascular system performs this function.** (Hicken & Renshaw: 2013)¹³⁴

9.2.1 Breathing or Ventilation

Respiration refers to the processes involved in oxygen transport from the atmosphere (**inhalation/inspiration**) to the body tissues and the release and transportation of carbon dioxide produced in the tissues to the atmosphere (**exhalation/expiration**). This process is collectively called **breathing or ventilation**.¹³⁵

10. EXEGETICAL ETYMOLOGY PERTAINING TO THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

While a person's physical heart is a vital organ, which keeps one alive, it also carries with it many symbolic meanings.

132 Maton, A.J; Hopkins, S. et.al. (2010), *HUMAN BIOLOGY AND HEALTH*, USA, Englewood Cliffs: Prentice Hall, pp. 108-118

133 Ibid. p.117

134 Hickin, S., Renshaw, J. & Chapman, R. (2013), *CRASH COURSE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM*, USA, Elsevier Health Sciences, Chapter 1

135 Hickin, S., Renshaw, J. & Chapman, R. (2013), *CRASH COURSE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM*, USA, Elsevier Health Sciences, Chapter 1

Looking at the Hebrew and Greek words that are translated as **heart** or are related to the **heart**, one will discover some important biblical perspectives.

Both Hebrew and Greek languages used in the Bible, have a word with four different, but related meanings. Quite often that word should be understood as referring to all four possibilities. One word enlightens or informs one's understanding of the other three.

10.1 Hebrew Words Related to "Heart"

The most frequently used word for "**heart**" in the Old Testament is the Hebrew word **lebab** (Strong's: 3824).¹³⁶ The word is translated as "**heart**" and carries with it the understanding that the **heart** is the innermost organ of the human body. **Lebab** is used to refer to the "**inner man, the mind, the will and heart.**"¹³⁷

A similar Hebrew word is **leb** (Strong's: 3821)¹³⁸. **Leb** also refers to "**the inner man, the mind, the will or the intellect.**" Here one finds the seat of human emotions; therefore, it is a similar symbolic meaning to the idea of the heart in modern western civilization.¹³⁹

Another common Hebrew word, **Nephesh** (Strong's: 5315)¹⁴⁰, refers to a living soul, a breathing creature, that is, one that has a beating **heart**.

In some of the Biblical translations the Hebrew word **sekvi** (Phonetic: **sek-vee**; Strong's: 7907)¹⁴¹ can also be translated to the **heart** as considered "**that part of man that makes one aware of one's surroundings, that causes one to be observant.**"

It was also common in Hebrew culture to relate the feelings of a person to the belly or the intestines as well as to the **heart**.

136 BIBLE HUB – Strong's Concordance – Heart (2016) [Online] Available From: <http://biblehub.com/hebrew/3824.htm>, [Date Accessed: 15th February 2016]

137 Ibid

138 Ibid

139 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, IN, USA

140 BIBLE HUB – Strong's Concordance – *Nephesh* (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://biblehub.net/searchstrongs.php?q=-nephesh> [Date Accessed: 15th February 2016]

141 BIBLE HUB – Strong's Concordance – *sekvi* (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://biblehub.net/searchstrongs>. [Date Accessed: 15th February 2016]

The word **meeh** (phonetic: **may-aw**; Strong's: 4578)¹⁴² would be used.

The Hebrew word **bal** (Phonetic: **bawl**; Strong's: 1079)¹⁴³ stresses the **heart** to be the seat of all anxiety.

10.2 Greek Words Related to "Heart"

The most common word in the Greek language for "**heart**," is **kardia** (Strong's: 2588)¹⁴⁴. In the modern western mind, this word is used only for the physical **heart**, but in the Greek language, used in the New Testament, the term goes way beyond the physical **heart** itself. In Greek as well as Hebrew, the **heart** is seen as the seat of all thoughts and feelings, therefore it is closely related to the mind.¹⁴⁵

When the Greek word, **sklērokardia**¹⁴⁶ (Strong's: 4641)¹⁴⁷ (pronounced **sklay-roo-car-dee-a**,) is used to describe a person, the person is being described as "**hard hearted**." A similar use of that prefix (**sclera**) is used in medical terms to refer to **hardening of the arteries (arteriosclerosis)**.¹⁴⁸

As seen in Hebrew, there is also a word in the Greek language, which refers the human being as breathing, living soul. The word is **psuche** (Strong's: 5590). On one occasion in Scripture it is translated as "**heart**." More often than not, **psuche** refers to the "**soul or breath of the human being**."

Apo is used as a prefix when something is being described as "**leaving or going away**." When using the prefix with **psuche** (pronounced **a-poe-pso-kho**), it describes a person who is going faint, or whose **heart is failing**.

142 BIBLE HUB – Strong's Concordance – **meeh** (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://biblehub.net/searchstrongs>. [Date Accessed: 15th February 2016]

143 BIBLE HUB – Strong's Concordance – **bawl** (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://biblehub.net/searchstrongs>. [Date Accessed: 15th February 2016]

144 BIBLE HUB – Strong's Concordance – **kardia** (2016) [Online] Available From: <http://biblehub.com/greek/2588.htm>, [Date Accessed: 16th February 2016]

145 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 162

146 See Matthew 19:8

147 BIBLE HUB – Strong's Concordance – **Sklērokardia**, (2016) [Online] Available From: <http://biblehub.com/greek/4641.htm>, [Date Accessed: 16th February 2016]

148 Ibid, p. 163

In the Hebrew language the word **ruach**, and in the Greek language **pneuma** denotes to the same meaning, namely, “**breath, wind, air and spirit.**”

The LSJ Greek-English Lexicon¹⁴⁹ describes the term “**pneuma**” as an ancient Greek word for “**breath**,” and in a religious context for “**spirit**” or “**soul**.” The term has various technical meanings for medical writers and philosophers of classical antiquity, particularly in regard to physiology, and is also used in Greek translations of the Hebrew Bible and in the Greek New Testament.

It seems that **pneuma** implies air set in motion; there is action; hence the stress on its inherent power, particularly in the spiritual realm. Again, when referring specifically to God’s Spirit, it indicates an activity or action of God or the manifestations that result from the move of God’s Spirit.¹⁵⁰

In physiological terms “**pneumo**” is used as a prefix in describing aspects associated with breathing or lungs. An example of the **pneumo** prefix is in the word pneumonia, which is the name of the disease caused by bacteria or viral infections that inflame the lungs.¹⁵¹

According to the American Heritage Dictionary of the English language¹⁵², “**the origin for pneumo is from Greek pneuma, meaning wind or breath.**”

11. SPIRITUAL RESPIRATION

John Wesley¹⁵³, in his sermon entitled, “*The Great Privilege of Those that are Born of God*” (1872)¹⁵⁴ states, when a person becomes born-again, the Spirit, or breath of God, is imme-

149 LSJ; THE ONLINE LIDDLE-SCOTT-JONES GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON – *Pneuma*, [Online] Available From: <http://stephanus.tlg.uci.edu/ljsj/#eid=86566&context=lsj&action=from-search>, [Date Accessed 15th January 2016]

150 THE ENRICHMENT JOURNAL, Tucker, D.L., *The Person and Work of the Holy Spirit Series, The Holy Spirit in the Old and New Testaments: Some Implications for Today*, (Article) Publishing Date: 14 April 2010 [Online] Available From: http://enrichmentjournal.ag.org/top/holyspirit_articledisplay.cfm, [Date Accessed: 5th February 2016]

151 YOUR DICTIONARY, The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language – *Pneumo*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.yourdictionary.com/pneumo>, [Date Accessed: 9th February 2016]

152 YOUR DICTIONARY, The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language – *Pneumo*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.yourdictionary.com/pneumo>, [Date Accessed: 9th February 2016]

153 John Wesley (28 June 1703 – 2 March 1791) was an Anglican minister and theologian who, with his brother Charles and fellow cleric George Whitefield, is credited with the foundation of the evangelical movement known as Methodism. His work and writings also played a leading role in the development of the Holiness movement and Pentecostalism. (Wells, J.C. (2008), “*WESLEY*,” *LONGMAN PRONUCIATION DICTIONARY* (3rd. Ed.), Harlow, UK)

154 WESLEY CENTER ONLINE – *The Sermons by John Wesley; Sermon 19 – The Great Privilege of Those That are Born of God*; [Online] Available From: <http://wesley.nnu.edu/john-wesley/the-sermons-of-john-wesley-1872-edition/sermon-19-the-great-privilege-of-those-that-are-born-of-god/>; [Date Accessed: 18th January 2016]

diately inspired, breathed into the new-born soul; and the same breath which comes from God, returns to God.

He states that: “As it is continually received by faith, so it is continually rendered back by love, by prayer, and praise, and thanksgiving; love and praise, and **prayer being the breath of every soul** which is truly born of God.”¹⁵⁵

This is what Wesley called a new kind of “**spiritual respiration**.” Spiritual life is **not only sustained, but also increased day by day, together with spiritual strength, motion and sensation**. After rebirth, all the spiritual senses are awakened and capable of discerning spiritual good and evil.

11.1 The Breath of God

The Spirit of God has made me, And the breath of the Almighty gives me life.

Job 33:4 (NKJV)

Physiologically, the word “inspire” means to “**breath in**” and “expire” means to “**breath out**.” Lawrence¹⁵⁶ explains, in simple terms, the words mean in and out. One has to do with something that takes place inside a person and the other has to do with something that terminates or runs out.

Theologically, to inspire means, “**to be under the influence of the Spirit of God**”¹⁵⁷ or, “**extraordinary or supernatural divine influence**.”¹⁵⁸ One of the definitions for inspire, in *The American Heritage Dictionary*¹⁵⁹ is, “**to affect, guide or arouse by divine influence**.”

¹⁵⁵ Ibid

¹⁵⁶ Lawrence, E. (2006), *BREATH OF GOD: UNLEASHING THE FATHER'S PRESENCE INTO YOUR LIFE*, USA, Thomas Nelson Inc. pp. 106-107

¹⁵⁷ Ibid

¹⁵⁸ ONLINE BIBLE DICTIONARY – Bible Study Tools (2016), - *Inspiration* [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionary/inspiration/>, [Date Accessed: 4th February 2016]

¹⁵⁹ THE AMERICAN HERITAGE DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE – *Inspire*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <https://www.ahdictionary.com/word/search.html?q=inspire&submit.x=0&submit.y=0>, [Date Accessed: 4th February 2016]

With this in mind, when Adam drew in his first breath, his lungs were filled with the breath of God.¹⁶⁰ He also became affected, guided and aroused by the Divine influence. He was created to live an **inspired life**.¹⁶¹

11.2 Holy Spirit – The Breath of God

Leary¹⁶² explains, whereas Jesus is the Word of God, Scripture teaches that the Holy Spirit is the Breath of God. In Job 34:14-15 is written: “***If He should set His heart on it, If He should gather to Himself His Spirit and His breath, All flesh would perish together, And man would return to dust.***”

Yet, the breath of God is quite different from the air one breathes or the general wind. Man’s breath, as man’s spirit, is the very **force of his physical life** and yet it is distinguishable from man himself. Scripture further teaches that the spirit or breath of the creature can be separated from its body and when this takes place, physical death ensues, but not so with God.¹⁶³

Weller¹⁶⁴ concurs with this opinion as he states that, when a person is born to their physical parents, they have the **breath of life**. When a person becomes borne again through the redemptive work of Jesus Christ, by the gracious action of the Father, one receives the **breath of eternal life within**, because the Holy Spirit is resident inside one’s heart.

ONE’S PHYSICAL BREATH GIVES ONE POWER TO LIVE AND ACCOMPLISH GREAT THINGS. ONE’S SPIRITUAL BREATH, THE INDWELLING HOLY SPIRIT, INFUSES A PERSON WITH POWER TO ACCOMPLISH THINGS BEYOND ONE’S LIMIT OF HUMAN CAPABILITIES. ONE’S PHYSICAL BREATH LASTS UNTIL ONE’S SPIRITUAL BREATH REMAINS FOR ETERNITY.¹⁶⁵

160 See Genesis 2:7

161 Lawrence, E. (2006), *BREATH OF GOD: UNLEASHING THE FATHER’S PRESENCE INTO YOUR LIFE*, USA, Thomas Nelson Inc. pp. 106-107

162 Leary, P. (2009), *THE CONTROVERSIAL BIBLE MATTERS*, USA, Lulu.Com, pp. 557-558

163 Ibid p. 558

164 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 163

165 Ibid p. 164

For as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also.

James 2:26 (NKJV)

While God is a Spirit Being, He nonetheless breathes, and moreover expresses emotion in response to life.

A clear distinction can be made between spirit and soul of man. Leary¹⁶⁶ is of opinion that the **spirit is the life essence and breath the evidence of life.**

The soul is the thinking and feeling aspect of man, the conscience. **The spirit and soul of man are as separate as the mind and the brain.** This is clearly indicated in Hebrews 4:12 comparing the Word of God to a two-edged sword “***piercing even to the division of soul and spirit.***”

Likewise, there is also a **difference between spirit and basic oxygen.** As already discussed, the words translated as spirit; including Holy Spirit, in Scripture are ***ruach*** (O.T.) and ***pneuma*** (N.T.) and both primarily means **wind or breath.**

However, it does not square with reason that the **Holy Spirit** is just a natural force like the wind, as He is inarguably **supernatural.** Although He moves as the wind, He also manifested in the form of a dove or as fire, which mere wind cannot do. (Leary: p. 558)¹⁶⁷

As Weller¹⁶⁸ explains, in both the Hebrew and Greek languages, considering the activity of air, wind and breath, discovers the work of the Spirit. One cannot see any of these; only the effect it has on the things surrounding one is visible, for example, the wind blowing through the leaves.

One cannot see the Holy Spirit, but one can see what the Spirit of God is doing by observing someone in whom the Holy Spirit indwells by faith in Jesus.

¹⁶⁶ Ibid p. 557

¹⁶⁷ Leary, P. (2009), *THE CONTROVERSIAL BIBLE MATTERS*, USA, Lulu.Com, p. 558

¹⁶⁸ Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 163

This is what is being referred to as the **gifts or fruit of the Holy Spirit**. One cannot see the Spirit, but one can see what the Spirit is doing as each committed believer uses the gifts and fruit of the Holy Spirit that are given to each one. (Weller: p. 164)

From Scriptures one knows that the **Holy Spirit also speaks, intercedes, acts and feels**. Wind is not capable of such animate things. Wind is not holy, but the Spirit of God is renowned holy. (Leary: p. 556)

Though mankind breathes air or the wind to sustain his life, the mere element oxygen and that by itself is not the very life source in man that comes from God. It is only part of it. In large part, as John wrote:

In Him was life, and the life was the light of men. ... That was the true Light which gives light to every man coming into the world.

John 1:4, 9 (NKJV)

The word “*light*” in the referenced passage comes from the Greek word **phōs**(Strong’s 5456)/**phōtizō**(Strong’s 5460):¹⁶⁹ the basis of the English word photo and its many extensions.

Jesus’ “lighting” every man that comes into the world is where the “**spark of life**” comes from and the capacity in man for spiritual awareness or enlightenment and the source from which **man draws intelligence**.(Leary: p. 557)¹⁷⁰

Leary¹⁷¹ explains, that in John 1:4,9, is the admission of Jesus being; or being the cause of; the very electrical conductivity that takes place in the **human body**, which **generates the pulse** and energy of life.

This thesis will only partially concur with Leary’s statement, in as much as, the “Light” does

¹⁶⁹ BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong’s; *Light* (2016), [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?strong=G5460&t=NKJV>, [Date Accessed: 9th February 2016]

¹⁷⁰ Leary, P. (2009), *THE CONTROVERSIAL BIBLE MATTERS*, USA Lulu.Com, USA, pp. 557-558

¹⁷¹ Ibid p. 558

cause the electric conductivity, but in this study a more specific statement will be made about the Scripture teaching that the **heart** is “**the source of life**,” or as stated in different references “**the springs of life**,”¹⁷² or “**the issues of life**.”¹⁷³ Thus, the conducted pulse, which pumps life to the rest of the body, originates in the **heart**.

Guard your heart more than anything else, because the source of your life flows from it.

Proverbs 4:23 (NIV)

Leary explains that the life in man is owing to the light in man, which emanates from Jesus Christ who is “**the light of life**,” (John 8:12). Man becomes an animate breathing creature through the impartation of God’s Spirit¹⁷⁴ and it is that “**breath of life**” which **gives man life**, whereas it is the **Light of God, which makes man come alive**.¹⁷⁵¹⁷⁶

Humans are breathing beings with heartbeats. Humans are also the beings in which God’s Spirit indwells when one surrenders to the Lord Jesus Christ. (Weller: p. 163)¹⁷⁷

12. CONCLUSION

In estimation, blood is mentioned about seven hundred times in the Bible from Genesis to Revelation, thus can be seen as an utterly important component.

Israel’s Passover in the Old Testament is a pivotal event in history. The Word of God sets forward an awe-inspiring demonstration of God’s power and path to liberating not only people as individuals and families, but also a nation!¹⁷⁸

¹⁷² See ISV, NAS, ESV etc.

¹⁷³ See KJV, ASV, Webster’s Bible Translation etc.

¹⁷⁴ See Genesis 2:7, Job 27:1-3, Isaiah 40:7, John 20:21-22

¹⁷⁵ Ibid p. 558

¹⁷⁶ **Author’s Note: The heart and its spiritual application will be explained in full detail further on in this thesis. The different components of the circulatory system will be connected in an effort to create a clear link between the physical aspects and the spiritual aspects of the appropriate systems.**

¹⁷⁷ Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 163

¹⁷⁸ De Haan, M.R. (1983), *CHEMISTRY OF THE BLOOD*, Zondervan, USA, p. 29

It is evident that the blood provided protection for all who would come within its shelter and find freedom from certain destruction. The Passover is also a focal point for understanding the **POWER OF THE BLOOD** as it is used throughout Scripture in the redemptive process.

All sacrifice in the Old Testament system is founded on the principle that it is through the offering of the **blood** of sacrifice that one receives **great deliverance, great protection and a great God-provided future.**

This central tenet of the old covenant; freedom from sin and spiritual death through the BLOOD OF THE LAMB; is a mighty forecasting picture that was fulfilled in the Person of **Jesus, the Lamb of God**, at the cross.

Hayford¹⁷⁹ is of opinion that, when one speaks of the BLOOD OF CHRIST, one is **dealing with life**. People are referring to what Scripture calls '**precious**' for a good reason.

but with the PRECIOUS BLOOD OF CHRIST, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot.

1 Peter 1:19 (NKJV) (Author Emphasis Added)

As surely as the Passover lamb secured deliverance for Israel, Jesus' **blood** paid the inestimable price of liberty from the bondage of human sin, human failure and hellish spiritual torment. The BLOOD OF JESUS is so foundational to the universal order of things that the Bible refers to Jesus as the "**Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.**" See Revelation 13:8

There is a key lesson to be learnt in the Bible for all people. In Leviticus 17:11 is written "**For the life of the FLESH IS IN THE BLOOD, and I have given it to you upon the altar to make atonement for your souls; for it is the BLOOD THAT MAKES ATONEMENT for the soul.**"¹⁸⁰

179 Hayford, J., Hayford Bauer, R. (2011), *PENETRATING THE DARKNESS: DISCOVERING THE POWER OF THE CROSS AGAINST UNSEEN EVIL*, MI, USA, Chosen Books, pp. 79

180 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 166-167

Right from the moment of conception, there is no doubt that the created human being has **life**. There is a definite process of growth and formation occurring right from the moment of conception that can only come about if the new human being has **life, or spirit**, because, as noted, the body without the spirit is dead.

The spirit of Adam, which was breathed into his nostrils, permeated his entire being, thus it follows that all people's spirits permeate their entire being. The Apostle Paul wrote: **"For what man knows the things of a man except the spirit of the man which is in him? Even so no one knows the things of God except the Spirit of God."** (1 Corinthians 2:11)

In order for one's spirit to **"know the things of man"** the spirit has to have access to the entire man, not just a part of man. Additionally, **the entire person has life, as the spirit is life.** (Thomas)¹⁸¹

Hypothetically, if **"life is in the blood"** and blood flows through all extremities, then, although invisible to the naked eye, one's spirit also permeates the whole body. It makes sense therefore that if one were only to see one's spiritual body, it might look much the same as one's physical body, although a different substance. One would expect the spiritual body to take the same form or shape as one's physical body, as one would expect one's spirit to be in the boundaries of one's body.

The author of Proverbs states: **"Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life."** (Proverbs 4:23 NKJV) As **life is spirit**, it seems that **spirit flows from the heart**. This references to a spiritual heart, but one may presume that the spiritual heart is in the same place as the physical heart.

Hayford¹⁸² explain that in the Old Testament, when food laws were being listed for the people, one of the principal laws was the forbidding of the eating of blood, because **"the life is in the blood."** This is a known fact, because a person can **easily bleed to death**.

181 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, E-Book

182 Hayford, J. with Hayford Bauer, R. (2011), *PENETRATING THE DARKNESS*, MI, USA, Chosen Books, p. 80

Jesus came and provided for man what man could not provide for them. He **shed His blood for all people as a covering**, as a **protection** from sin and death, as a **cleansing** for sin and **provision** of forgiveness – THERE IS LIFE IN JESUS' BLOOD!¹⁸³

The hidden value of Jesus Christ's blood is the spirit of self-sacrifice, and where the blood really touches the heart of man; it works out in that heart, transforming the spirit of man into a similar spirit of self-sacrifice. One learns to give up one self and one's life, so as to press into the full power of that new life, which His blood has provided.¹⁸⁴

To understand the mechanics of the circulatory system, it becomes clear that a force is needed to pump the blood through the body. This force, which is the main pumping mechanism of the circulatory system, is the **heart**.

Everything in a person's life begins in the **heart** as Scripture teaches:

"A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

Luke 6:45 (NKJV)

The condition of one's heart determines the condition of one's life. Just as God designed the physical heart to pump blood to the other organs in the body, distributing minerals and nutrients, He designed the spiritual heart to "pump" life to one's entire being, producing mental, emotional and physical health.¹⁸⁵

The key to the heart is the love of Christ. The biggest gift a person should be prepared to receive is the gift of love, this will unlock a person's heart. The heart is the seat of love. This is explained in the Book of Romans:

¹⁸³ Ibid, p. 81

¹⁸⁴ Murray, A. (2013), *THE POWER OF THE BLOOD OF JESUS*, USA, Start Publishings LLC, E-Book

¹⁸⁵ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, p. 39

Now hope does not disappoint, because the love of God has been poured out in our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given to us.

Romans 5:5 (NKJV)

All forms of deception also flow from the heart. Jesus taught His disciples:

"Do you not yet understand that whatever enters the mouth goes into the stomach and is eliminated? But those things which proceed out of the mouth come from the heart, and they defile a man. For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies. These are the things which defile a man, but to eat with unwashed hands does not defile a man."

Matthew 15:17-20 (NKJV) (Author Emphasis Added)

Until one's heart is fully transformed, and one is living in godly humility and self-denial, one will have improper motivations and selfish intentions that deviate from the purposes of God. One cannot allow one self to be guided by any untransformed part of the heart.

If a person's faith does not flow from one's heart, it is merely intellectual acknowledgment or mental assent of God and His ways. Under such conditions, one cannot expect to receive results from God.¹⁸⁶ If a person lacks the motivation of love, one will not have a genuine desire to serve God and will make little effort in that regard.

Yet, even in the midst of one's selfishness and rebellion, God continues to draw one near to Him. His Holy Spirit guides one, motivates one, and convicts one's heart, thus working in a person **"both to will and to do for His good pleasure"** (Philippians 2:13).

God never pushes a person or forces a person to do anything. His manner of reaching out to people contrasts with the way in which Satan operates. Satan's demons push a person. They try to pressure one to take certain actions, or they try to snare one, in order to lead one into sin and destroy one's life. The enemy desires more than anything else to usurp the dwelling place of God within i.e. the heart of the person.¹⁸⁷

¹⁸⁶ Ibid p. 36

¹⁸⁷ Ibid p. 37

The Spirit of God has made me, And the breath of the Almighty gives me life.

Job 33:4 (NKJV)

Physiologically, the word “inspire” means to “**breath in**” and “expire” means to “**breath out**.” Lawrence¹⁸⁸ explains, in simple terms, the words mean in and out. One has to do with something that takes place inside a person and the other has to do with something that terminates or runs out.

Theologically, to inspire means, “**to be under the influence of the Spirit of God**”¹⁸⁹ or, “**extraordinary or supernatural divine influence.**”¹⁹⁰ One of the definitions for inspire, in *The American Heritage Dictionary*¹⁹¹ is, “**to affect, guide or arouse by divine influence.**”

With this in mind, when Adam drew in his first breath, his lungs were filled with the breath of God.¹⁹² He also became affected, guided and aroused by the Divine influence. He was created to live an **inspired life**.¹⁹³

The life in man is owing to the light in man, which emanates from Jesus Christ who is “**the light of life**,” (John 8:12). Man becomes an animate breathing creature through the impartation of God’s Spirit¹⁹⁴ and it is that “**breath of life**” which **gives man life**, whereas it is the **Light of God, which makes man come alive**.¹⁹⁵¹⁹⁶

Humans are breathing beings with heartbeats. Humans are also the beings in which God’s Spirit indwells when one surrenders to the Lord Jesus Christ.¹⁹⁷

188 Lawrence, E. (2006), *BREATH OF GOD: UNLEASHING THE FATHER’S PRESENCE INTO YOUR LIFE*, USA, Thomas Nelson Inc. pp. 106-107

189 Ibid

190 ONLINE BIBLE DICTIONARY – Bible Study Tools (2016), - *Inspiration* [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionary/inspiration/>, [Date Accessed: 4th February 2016]

191 THE AMERICAN HERITAGE DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE – *Inspire*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <https://www.ahdictionary.com/word/search.html?q=inspire&submit.x=0&submit.y=0>, [Date Accessed: 4th February 2016]

192 See Genesis 2:7

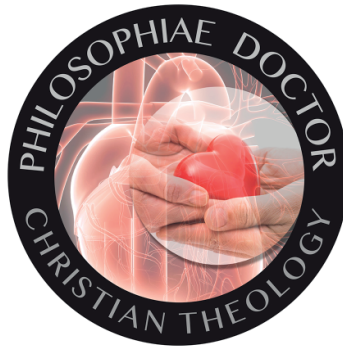
193 Lawrence, E. (2006), *BREATH OF GOD: UNLEASHING THE FATHER’S PRESENCE INTO YOUR LIFE*, USA, Thomas Nelson Inc. pp. 106-107

194 See Genesis 2:7, Job 27:1-3, Isaiah 40:7, John 20:21-22

195 Leary, P. (2009), *THE CONTROVERSIAL BIBLE MATTERS*, USA, Lulu.Com, pp. 557-558

196 Author’s Note: The heart and its spiritual application will be explained in full detail further on in this thesis. The different components of the circulatory system will be connected in an effort to create a clear link between the physical aspects and the spiritual aspects of the appropriate systems.

197 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 163



Chapter Four

EXPOSING SATAN'S AGENDA IN PREVENTING PEOPLE FROM A HEALTHY RELATIONSHIP WITH GOD

1. INTRODUCTION

"A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

Luke 6:45 (NKJV)

Scripture clearly teaches that there are two strong lines concerning a person's heart. Man was created in God's image, which is a perfect image. The intention for man's heart was to reflect God's perfect heart, but soon after the creation of man, Satan came and planted a seed in Eve's heart, tempting her with the same sin of pride that led to him being separated from God and fall from heaven. Satan told Eve that she can "**be like God.**" (Genesis 3:5). Through this sin, man's heart was now separated from God's heart.

The first reference toward man's heart in the Bible is in a negative sense as is written: "**Then the LORD saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually**" (Genesis 6:5 NKJV).

God spoke about His people, the Israelites, as "**stiff-necked people**" (Exodus 32:9). "**Stiff-neck**" refers to very proud, haughty, and stubborn.¹ When Stephen preached in Acts 7, he also called the Jewish leaders "**stiff-necked and uncircumcised in heart and ears!**" who "**always resist the Holy Spirit.**" (Acts 7:51)

In Jeremiah 19:15, when the Lord promised judgement on Jerusalem, He said it was coming because "**they were stiff-necked and would not listen to My words.**"

¹ MERRIAM WEBSTER DICTIONARY – *Stiff-necked*, (2016) [Online] Available From: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/stiff-necked>, [Date Accessed: 15t April 2016]

Satan's main aim since he was thrown from heaven is to get back at God, to cut through the heart of God. This he has done through deceiving man and, with the knowledge he carried, knew that God would separate Himself from sin, thus, from man, whom God loves dearly.

A person's heart either belongs and follows after God, or belongs to and follows the heart of Satan. There is no neutral zone and if a person believes that one can be neutral, the evidence in itself offers proof that one's heart follows after Satan's deceptive lies.

It is most evident in this post-modern age that people have become their own gods and that Christ is being removed from people's hearts. This is evidence of the manner in which Satan operates, to deny Christ in one's life.

The example given in Scripture about a man with a heart, parallel to the heart of Satan can be found in Ezekiel 28. Ethbaal, or Ithobl, was the prince of Tyre; and being lifted up with excessive pride, he claimed Divine honours. Pride is peculiarly the sin of man's fallen nature. Nor can any wisdom, except that which the Lord gives, lead to happiness in this world or in that which is to come.

The haughty prince of Tyre thought he was able to protect his people by his own power, and considered himself as equal to the inhabitants of heaven. If it were possible to dwell in the Garden of Eden, or even to enter heaven, no solid happiness could be enjoyed without a humble, holy and spiritual heart. Especially all spiritual pride is of the devil. Those who indulge therein must expect to perish.²

God gave Satan an interesting title in Job 41:34: "**He is king over all the children of pride.**" In Proverbs 3:34 states God: "**He mocks proud mockers but shows favour to the humble and oppressed,**" (Proverbs 3:34 NIV). The king of pride is Satan and his children are those who reflect his heart. For Scripture teaches:

² MATTHEW HENRY'S COMMENTARY – Ezekiel 28, [Online] Available From: <http://biblehub.com/commentaries/ezekiel/28-13.htm>, [Date Accessed: 16th April 2016]

You belong to your father, the devil, and you want to carry out your father's desires. He was a murderer from the beginning, not holding to the truth, for there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks his native language, for he is a liar and the father of lies.

John 8:44 (NIV)

2. THE BODY OF CHIRST

The apostle Paul was the only one to denote the church to the Body of Christ. In other places in the New Testament the church is called The Temple of God, the household of God etc. Paul specifically spoke about the Church as the Body of Christ.

The subject is not about how a person can become a Christian but how the Church can become the Body of Christ. One can say that the Church is Christ in a different form.³

Christ as the only begotten Son of God has become the Firstborn. Christ plus the other members becomes the Body of Christ. There are **no individuals** in the Church, but only **Christ is the Church**. Anything that issues from Christ is the Church. The Church comes fully out of Christ and is one with Christ. There is no need for any Christian to do anything or change anything in order to be in Christ. **As long as a man is regenerated he is in Christ and becomes part of the Body of Christ.**

2.1 God's Heart Desire for the Body of Christ

When looking at the Tabernacle and the Ark of the Covenant, one will be able to depict the embodiment of Christ to come. The Tabernacle is the indwelling place for the Ark of the Covenant and this is why the Israelites worked together to build the Tabernacle.

After the Tabernacle was built, God immediately filled it with His glory. This, according to Lee⁴, is God's desire. He is seeking a Tabernacle for the Ark of the Covenant. Christ is the head of the Body, but the head needs a Body to function.

³ Nee, W. (1993), *THE BODY OF CHRIST*, CA, USA, Living Stream Ministries, p. 1-5

⁴ Lee, W. (2003), *THE MYSTERY OF GOD AND THE MYSTERY OF CHRIST*, Anaheim, CA, USA, Living Stream Ministries, pp. 91-92

God's heart desire is to build the Body of Christ, the Church. King David had a heart after God's own heart, because he was always seeking to obtain a dwelling place for God.

Today God is seeking a Tabernacle, a house, after a body for Christ. God is seeking to have a real expression of His body on earth in this age.

2.2 The Body of Christ Being a Matter of Life

For as the body is one and has many members, but all the members of that one body, being many, are one body, so also is Christ. For by one Spirit we were all baptized into one body--whether Jews or Greeks, whether slaves or free--and have all been made to drink into one Spirit. For in fact the body is not one member but many.

1 Corinthians 12:12-14 (NKJV)

... But now God has set the members, each one of them, in the body just as He pleased. And if they were all one member, where would the body be? But now indeed there are many members, yet one body.

1 Corinthians 12:18-20 (NKJV)

All men are joined to Adam and man derives his life from Adam. Through Adam's fall all men became sinners and have been joined to the old man. One reads in the Bible that the old man has to be dealt with; it has to be "**crucified with Christ**" (Galatians 2:20). Through Christ's redemption a person dies and becomes resurrected into a new life.

One is "**not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed the Spirit of God dwells in you**" (Romans 8:9 NKJV). This verse further states that if a person does not have the Spirit of Christ, the person is not His.

In the above mentioned text in 1 Corinthians 12 one reads: "**For by one Spirit we were all baptized into one body**" (verse 13), that is, the Body of Christ. In 1 Corinthians 12:14 one reads: "**For in fact the body is not one member but many.**"

In Colossians 1:18 it states that Jesus Christ is the head of the body, which is the Church.

Nee⁵ is of opinion that the Church as the Body of Christ is absolutely a matter of life. The Church as the Body of Christ is not a doctrine; it is of life. Man becomes part of the Body of Christ only through regeneration. This is absolutely a matter of life; it is nothing to do with knowledge or doctrine.

Kyeyune's⁶ opinion concurs with this when he stated that there could be no true philosophy of human nature. One needs to read the Bible and follow what it says without being biased against some Scriptures for the major cause for division in the Body of Christ is Scriptural illiteracy.

There is no need for division in the Church, for Jesus reconciled people to God and other believers. Through this love has been made perfect in people. The glory of God abides in believers and they are His Temple. The same objective of love and unity can be achieved by allowing the Holy Spirit to guide and to lead one by His Word.⁷

As Nee⁸ states, "**the Body of Christ is of life.**" From Scripture one learns that the heart is the "**wellspring of life**" (Proverbs 4:23). Jesus proclaimed that He is the life. Thus, one can safely presume that the **heart's function** as the **centre of life** and the **pump of life**, brings forth Jesus's life to the whole of His Body members. For "**life is in the blood.**" (Leviticus 17:11)

3. THE HEART OF GOD

When considering the different connotations to the heart and its functions, used in the different languages, one should consider the "basic" function of the Lord's heart.

In Scripture, the heart is seen as the seat and the source as one's thoughts and one's imagination.

5 Nee, W. (1993), *THE BODY OF CHRIST*, Living Stream Ministries, CA, USA, p. 1-5

6 Kyeyune, S. (2013), *THE SPIRIT IS THE CROWN OF THE HEART: GROWING IN GRACE*, IN, USA, Author House, p. 4

7 Ibid p. 4

8 Nee, W. (1993), *THE BODY OF CHRIST*, Living Stream Ministries, CA, USA, p. 4

Some translations use the word “***mind***” instead of “***heart***” to convey this understanding. What a person knows is true and of one self and the concept of the heart can be translated into the one's understanding of the heart of the Lord.⁹

The heart of God is the source of His divine plans for all eternity. Psalm 33:11 teaches: “***The counsel of the LORD stands forever, The plans of His heart to all generations.***”

This is an indication that all God's purposes come from the very depth of His inner being. This can be seen as an expression of God's unselfish love for His people. The love of God flows from the heart of God. This same unselfish and unconditional love is poured into people's hearts by the work of the Holy Spirit as seen in Romans 5:5.¹⁰

Now hope does not disappoint, because the love of God has been poured out in our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given to us.

Romans 5:5 (NKJV)

When a person is born again through Jesus Christ, one of the first things that are activated in the person's heart is a love for God; this love is evidence of the genuineness of one's new birth. After the love of God has been poured out in a person's heart, the person is often immediately able to love other people more freely as well, for His love now pumps throughout the body. One might find that certain relationships that had been lukewarm or strained are renewed, and one may suddenly discover a desire to share God's love with other people.¹¹

Weller¹² explains, because the Lord's heart is the depth of His being, it is not surprising, when one sins, it grieves God “***in His heart.***” (See Genesis 6:6). A person's sin causes God deep distress and a rendering or tearing of the very heart of God. This might be the primary reason **God hates sin**. Sin strikes God at the centre of who He is because it causes a break in the relationship between God and the person who has sinned.

9 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 168

10 Ibid p. 168

11 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 42

12 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 168

This is why there is no small or big sin. In God's eyes all sin are big, because any **sin's consequence is separation from Him.**

In the book of James 2:10 is written: "**For whoever shall keep the whole law, and yet stumble in one point, he is guilty of all**" thus, even if a person commits only one sin, it is as though the person has broken the whole law.

When considering the word in Jeremiah 31:20, one sees that **God's heart is personally involved in one's life.**

Is Ephraim My dear son? Is he a pleasant child? For though I spoke against him, I earnestly remember him still; Therefore My heart yearns for him; I will surely have mercy on him, says the LORD.

Jeremiah 31:20 (NKJV)

The Lord's heart (literally His inward parts) yearns for Ephraim. That is, it hurts God deeply within when He is separated by sin from His beloved people.¹³

"How can I give you up, Ephraim? How can I hand you over, Israel? How can I make you like Admah? How can I set you like Zeboiim? My heart churns within Me; My sympathy is stirred.

Hosea 11:8 (NKJV)

3.1 God Speaks to One's Heart

Maldonado¹⁴ is of opinion that God has two "thrones." One throne is in heaven and the other on the earth. His earthly throne is found in the heart of every believer. Jesus Himself said:

¹³ Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 168

¹⁴ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 45

"If anyone loves Me, he will keep My word; and My Father will love him, and We will come to him and make Our home with him.

John 14:23b (NKJV)

In the Old Testament, the presence of God rested above the Ark of the Covenant, which was located in the Holy of Holies in the tabernacle or temple. Today, people are the temple of God as **one carries His presence in one's heart**.

Do you not know that you are the temple of God and that the Spirit of God dwells in you? If anyone defiles the temple of God, God will destroy him. For the temple of God is holy, which temple you are.

1 Corinthians 3:16-17 (NKJV)

Through the love God poured out, **He speaks to people in their hearts**; it is the way He guides and lights the way for them.

This two-way communication described above is vital for genuine relationship with God because it is the only way one can truly know Him, and it allows a person to share the depths of their hearts with Him. Jesus emphasized this truth by pointing out what happens when people fail to develop this type of relationship with Him:

"Not everyone who says to Me, 'Lord, Lord,' shall enter the kingdom of heaven, but he who does the will of My Father in heaven. "Many will say to Me in that day, 'Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in Your name, cast out demons in Your name, and done many wonders in Your name?' "And then I will declare to them, 'I never knew you; depart from Me, you who practice lawlessness!"

Matthew 7:21-23 (NKJV)

The Greek term ***ginōskō*** (Strong's: G1097) translated as "***knew***" in the above-mentioned passage, can indicate, "***to come to know, recognize, perceive.***"¹⁵

15 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance – Knew (2016) [Online] Available From: https://www.blueletterbible.org/nkjv/mat/7/1/t_conc_936023, [Date Accessed: 22nd February 2016]

This seems to be an indication of intimacy built over time. **If love does not originate in the heart, it is not genuine love.** The relationships in a person's life that endure are those that not only begins in the heart but also continues to be based there.¹⁶

In the quoted verses, Jesus indicated that He would reject many people, who have focused only on the works they were doing for God, because they **never established a heart relationship with Him**, and they were not obedient to the will of God.

The mentioned people might actually exercise spiritual gifts of prophecy, healing and miracles, even though spiritual gifts come from God, they are not the basis of one's standing and acceptance with Him. Works are never a substitute for relationship.¹⁷ Scriptures teach "**For by grace you have been saved through faith, and that not of yourselves; it is the gift of God, not of works, lest anyone should boast.**" (Ephesians 2:8-9 NKJV)

Hypothetically many people never experience the manifest presence of God in their lives, because they **lack intimacy with Him**. All people should have the surety that they have true and intimate communion not only with Jesus as a person, but also Father as a person as well as Holy Spirit as a person, based on a **heart-to-heart relationship with God**. No person wants to lead a life of deception and when entering the Kingdom of heaven hears from Jesus Himself: "**I never knew you; depart from Me, you who practice lawlessness!**"

4. THE HEART OF SATAN

In order for a person to perceive Satan as he is, one must turn to the Scriptures. If one looks at the Bible for answers about Satan, an understanding is formed about his heart when considering his origins. A clear insight is formed into how he thinks and functions and ultimately how he attempts to work in people's hearts.¹⁸

16 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 47

17 Ibid p. 47

18 Brand, Connie, M.J. D.Litt, PhD (2015), *SPIRITUAL WARFARE: SATAN IN CONTEXT I – IDENTIFYING SATAN AS THE ENEMY OF THE GOD OF THE BIBLE*, Pretoria, SA, Unpublished, p. 2-5

In Isaiah 14 the author addresses Satan as Lucifer, a fallen angel, whom made a **decision in his heart** to exalt himself above God.

"How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! [How] you are cut down to the ground, You who weakened the nations! FOR YOU HAVE SAID IN YOUR HEART: 'I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will also sit on the mount of the congregation On the farthest sides of the north;

Isaiah 14:12-13 (NKJV)(Author's Emphasis Added)

The prophet Ezekiel also expanded on the heart of Satan, stating that it **"was lifted up because of his beauty,"** which **"corrupted his wisdom by reason"** (Ezekiel 28:17). It was because of Satan's pride that God casted him out of heaven onto the earth. The prophet further expanded on Satan's future outcome.

"You [were] the anointed cherub who covers; I established you; You were on the holy mountain of God; You walked back and forth in the midst of fiery stones. You [were] perfect in your ways from the day you were created, Till iniquity was found in you. "By the abundance of your trading You became filled with violence within, And you sinned; Therefore I cast you as a profane thing Out of the mountain of God; And I destroyed you, O covering cherub, From the midst of the fiery stones. "Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; You corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendor; I cast you to the ground, I laid you before kings, That they might gaze at you. "You defiled your sanctuaries By the multitude of your iniquities, By the iniquity of your trading; Therefore I brought fire from your midst; It devoured you, And I turned you to ashes upon the earth In the sight of all who saw you. All who knew you among the peoples are astonished at you; You have become a horror, And [shall be] no more forever." ' "

Ezekiel 28:14-19 (NKJV)

One must have perspective about Satan's fall and understand who he was in eternity and where his fall places him today.¹⁹

4.1 Satan's Aim

¹⁹ Brand, Connie, M.J. D.Litt, PhD (2015), *SPIRITUAL WARFARE: SATAN IN CONTEXT I – IDENTIFYING SATAN AS THE ENEMY OF THE GOD OF THE BIBLE*, Pretoria, SA, Unpublished, Pretoria, SA, p. 3

According to Brand²⁰, the great aim of Satan is not the spread of absolute scepticism, but the subjugation of the world to demonical power. All idolatrous worship is inseparably connected with magic and the exercise of supernatural power.

Atabansi²¹ states that the Seed of the woman as foretold in the Book of Genesis is divided in two phases (See Genesis 3:15). The woman represents the physical woman, namely Eve and Mary, but it also represents Israel (See Revelations 12:1-7). Israel seems to be the culmination of the mystery woman foretold in Genesis 3:17. God kept the mentioned mystery to Himself, away from Satan.

The processes started with Eve, then Mary birthed the actual Seed, but Mary was birthed by Israel, who ultimately birthed Christ Jesus, the promised Seed. It was through Israel that the promised Seed was birthed. This secret was hidden from Satan. He could not know it at the time. He assumed that the woman would remain physical and biological, from the tribe of Israel. With all his wisdom and knowledge, he could not figure out the full identity of the woman.

Satan could never figure out and thwart the plans of God. This was the **strategy of God that always frustrated Satan**. This has always been the aim of the devil. **Satan's aim is to devour the woman**. The reason for this is because he aims to get back at God for judging him and expelling him out of the Holy Mountain of God. **He is out to hurt God and cut the heart of God**. The best plan he could conjure was to **turn the hearts of people away from God, to lead them to sin and to follow evil in their hearts**.²²

When God first promised to send Christ to save the world, Satan knew it. God made sure Satan was listening to His words. Satan was the serpent who tempted Adam and Eve and led them to sin and hurt God. God loved Adam and Eve and wanted to save them from sin and death. Therefore, God promised to send the Seed, the Saviour of the world, who would crush the head and power of the serpent.

20 Brand, Connie, M.J. D.Litt, PhD (2015), *SPIRITUAL WARFARE: SATAN IN CONTEXT I – IDENTIFYING SATAN AS THE ENEMY OF THE GOD OF THE BIBLE*, Pretoria, SA, Unpublished, p. 2-5

21 Atabansi, L.A. PhD, (2010), *THE PROMISED SEED: THE ORIGIN OF EVIL, MANKIND AND THE GODLY SEED*, IN, USA, Author House, p. 100

22 Atabansi, L.A. PhD, (2010), *THE PROMISED SEED: THE ORIGIN OF EVIL, MANKIND AND THE GODLY SEED*, IN, USA, Author House, p. 100

Consequently, Satan was bound to do all he could to delay the coming of the Seed, the Saviour and God's only begotten Son. Satan knew that he will not be able to change God's plans, thus, **he wants to get as many people as he can to sin and to turn away from God so that God's heart would be cut and hurt.** He wanted to delay his own defeat, the crushing of his head, as long as possible.²³

In the opinion of this thesis, the greater aim of Satan is to **completely remove the Seed, which is Christ, from believers' hearts, so that their hearts can become hardened against God and grow cold from His love.** This inevitably leads to the total **destruction of man.**

It is reasonable to conclude that Satan had already rebelled against God and had already been cast down to earth prior to the creation of Adam. Satan's desire to enlighten Adam and Eve relative to the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil had nothing to do with their welfare. Damaging the creatures God loves and their relationship with God would be one way to strike back at God.²⁴

Satan had no love in his heart for the first human couple. In fact, it should be said clearly that **Satan loves none of God's creation, especially man.** One should not believe that Satan is even capable of loving those of the heavenly hosts who followed him and were subsequently thrown out of heaven or immediately imprisoned in hell.

Satan is incapable of love and no person should ever trust him. As Scripture teaches:

"You are of your father the devil, and the desires of your father you want to do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own resources, for he is a liar and the father of it.

John 8:44 (NKJV)

²³ Ibid p. 101

²⁴ Williams, R. (2009), *ONE SECOND: TEN EVENTS THAT DEFINE THE HISTORY OF MAN*, USA, Xulon Press, p. 45

There is no reason to believe that Adam and Eve were aware of the conflict that had occurred in heaven or Satan's role in rebellion. Satan definitely did not volunteer this information nor did God give man any warning about Satan what people know of.²⁵

Williams²⁶ is of opinion that man has a sinful nature and would eventually have fallen from his own actions at some later point, even without Satan, for Scripture teaches: "***the intention of man's heart is evil from his youth***" (Genesis 8:21).

God chose not to inform man about Satan nor isolate man from the encouragement to sin. That is the exact role Satan played here. He was the encourager to sinning. Even so, he could not have made Eve sin, nor can he make any other person sin. It has been and always will be a personal act of defiance against God that results in sin.

Satan knew that God, being fully righteous, would no longer allow man to have open communion with Him. In some respects, one might feel that Satan felt that, if he could not be in the presence of God, then neither would man! In any respect, **he knew that God would have to separate Himself from man once man sinned. GOD IS HOLY AND RIGHTEOUS AND SIN IS NOT PART OF HIS NATURE.**^{27 28}

4.2 Satan's Strategy

Hill²⁹ explains that Judas Iscariot betrayed Jesus for thirty pieces of silver, although he was a genuine, chosen apostle at the time. Judas' problem was that, although he was chosen by Jesus to become an apostle, he never dealt with his sin, which was greed. The failure to lay his worldly ambitions at the feet of Jesus caused his utter destruction.

25 Atabansi, L.A. PhD, (2010), *THE PROMISED SEED: THE ORIGIN OF EVIL, MANKIND AND THE GODLY SEED*, IN, USA, Author House, p. 102

26 Williams, R. (2009), *ONE SECOND: TEN EVENTS THAT DEFINE THE HISTORY OF MAN*, USA, Xulon Press, p. 45

27 Ibid p. 45

28 **Author's Note: Satan was in rebellion against God and wanted to "be like God" and the result of this was total separation from God forever. Thus, his first strategy was to lure man into thinking that one can "be like God." This also led to man being separated from God as Satan was, but through God's mercy, He offered salvation for man to come back into His presence, for man is the only created being made in His image. Satan did not foresee this.**

29 Hill, E.M. (2004), *DELIVERANCE FROM DEMONS AND DISEASES: FREEDOM FROM INCURABLE DISEASES AND PERSISTANT PROBLEMS*, GA, USA, Sunhill Publishers, p. 95

Some scholars would exclude Judas as a true apostle because of their belief in the doctrine of unconditional salvation. This belief leads one to think that once a person comes to Christ, it is literally impossible to leave Christ. Supposedly, even though the person leaves Christ, Christ never leaves the person. There are various Scriptures to support this position.

As the author of this thesis, this doctrine will be rejected and seen as a masterful tool of Satan that has deceived people into thinking that they will receive eternal life with Christ, but instead will lead to eternity in hell. Some people truly serve Christ, but then their love grows cold and their hearts harden towards God's love, then they turn back to their former master – Satan.

Despite the reluctance of some to accept the genuineness of Judas' salvation and the apostleship, the Scriptures are clear. It is possible for a person to be a genuine servant of God at one time and later through carelessness and a **divided heart**, deliberately **turn away from God** to such a degree that it is not looked upon by God as a temporary lapse or a mistake. It is instead seen as it is: **apostasy**; the conscious turning away from God back to Satan. This constitutes a spiritual divorce.³⁰

From Scripture one learns that Jesus knew Judas would betray Him, but that is not the same as saying that Judas had no choice. God foresees everything but that does not mean that He can be blamed for Scripture teaches: "**The Lord is not slack concerning His promise, as some count slackness, but is longsuffering toward us, not willing that any should perish but that all should come to repentance.**" (2 Peter 3:9 NKJV).³¹

As Hill³² explains, when Jesus chose His twelve disciples, He knew their strengths and weaknesses, but God will never be intimidated by one's weaknesses. He does not choose a person because they are strong, but because they are available, weakness and all. In 1 Corinthians 1:27-29 one reads: "**But God has chosen the foolish things of the world to put to shame the wise, and God has chosen the weak things of the world to put to shame the things which are mighty; and the base things of the world and the things**

30 Author's Note: Spiritual Divorce constitutes to a break in covenant and the consequences will be explained in detail in a following chapter of the thesis.

31 Hill, E.M. (2004), *DELIVERANCE FROM DEMONS AND DISEASES: FREEDOM FROM INCURABLE DISEASES AND PERSISTENT PROBLEMS*, GA, USA, Sunhill Publishers, p. 100

32 Ibid p. 100

which are despised God has chosen, and the things which are not, to bring to nothing the things that are, that no flesh should glory in His presence.”

God chose Lucifer to serve Him in heaven and Lucifer later fell through pride and became Satan. God chose Adam and Eve to serve Him in the Garden of Eden and they fell through lust and idolatry.

The tragedy about Judas Iscariot was that he was a good man with a genuine love for God, yet, like all people, he had areas in his life that were not disciplined and submitted to God. Since God does not select people for service based upon their perfection, but rather upon His own unfathomable love and kindness and patience, He selected as an apostle a man with some good qualities and some bad qualities.³³

Unfortunately one of Judas' bad qualities was greed. **The only way to overcome a weakness is to grow out of it.** Therefore, Jesus in His restorative mercy appointed Judas as their treasurer. The strategy was to force Judas to see his weakness of money in the hope that his hidden sin would surface to the consciousness and confide in Christ. His sin would be forgiven and Christ would help him overcome his weakness just as He helped Peter to overcome his weakness.

Judas could have gone through history as a great apostle instead of the one who betrayed Jesus. **It was not necessary for Jesus to be betrayed by anyone to secure people's salvation.** It was through **His death and resurrection that people are saved**, not through Judas' betrayal. The betrayal was a tragedy that never had to happen.

Judas failed the test. Scripture teaches “**Judas by transgression fell**,” (Act 1:25). Jesus had earlier in their ministry discreetly warned Judas of his weakness: “**Jesus answered them, “Did I not choose you, the twelve, and one of you is a devil?” He spoke of Judas Iscariot, the son of Simon, for it was he who would betray Him, being one of the twelve**” (John 6:70-71 NKJV).

33 Hill, E.M. (2004), *DELIVERANCE FROM DEMONS AND DISEASES: FREEDOM FROM INCURABLE DISEASES AND PERSISTANT PROBLEMS*, GA, USA, Sunhill Publishers, p. 101

In the opinion of this thesis, since Judas had never adequately dealt with his sin, **his heart was fertile ground for a wicked seed-thought** of betrayal to grow into an actual act of betrayal. This germination process is shown in John 13:2 ***“And supper being ended, the devil having already PUT IT INTO THE HEART OF JUDAS ISCARIOT, Simon’s son, to betray Him,”***

There is the evidence! The poisonous thought of betrayal had **been planted into Judas’ heart**. Yet, the **mere presence of an evil thought does not mean one has sinned**. It is not the presence of an evil thought but the **submission to an evil thought that is sin**. The process of evil thoughts turning into sins is broken down in James 1:14-15:

But each one is tempted when he is drawn away by his own desires and enticed. Then, when desire has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, brings forth death.

James 1:14-15 (NKJV)

Judas was lured away by his greed, but it was later that a demon (or Satan himself) entered him.

Hypothetically, Satan’s strategy is to first plant the evil thought. If embracing the thought **opens the door to the mind and the heart**, a demon enters. If one studies John 13, it appears that Judas had apparently been a thief for a while; Jesus’ radical teachings and servant hood were pushing him to the crossroads of decision. Judas weighed Jesus’ words very carefully.

This gives evidence to the Bible verse stating: ***“The heart is deceitful above all things, And desperately wicked; Who can know it? I, the LORD, search the heart, I test the mind, Even to give every man according to his ways, According to the fruit of his doings.”*** (Jeremiah 17:9-10 NKJV)

Satan was able to enter Judas because he nurtured his own greed and embraced wicked thoughts.

Once the evil deed was done, Satan left him and Judas came back to his senses.^{34 35}

These acts repeatedly happen in everyday lives. **An evil seed is implanted into one's heart which introduces wicked thoughts**, or Satan magnifies the force of the intended **victim's own evil thoughts**. The result is that thoughts that may have been dismissed before by an act of the person's will, now are empowered by a demon. The thoughts are now overwhelming and compelling. **A satanic force literally bends the will of the person into submission. This is how Satan strategically operates.**

5. THE HEART OF MAN

5.1 The Condition of the Natural Heart of Man

Due to the **original sin, which affected the entire human race**, all people come into the world estranged from God and with a **heart that suffers from serious irremediable problems**. No one is exempt for Scripture teaches: **"for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God,"** (Romans 3:23 NKJV)

Maldonado³⁶ writes that if one considers the meaning of the Greek word translated **"hardness of heart,"** in Mark 16:14, which reads: **"Later He appeared to the eleven as they sat at the table; and He rebuked their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they did not believe those who had seen Him after He had risen."**

This original Greek term used here **sklērokardia** (Strong's: G2588) especially indicates **"destitution of spiritual perception."**³⁷

One would not necessarily think of Jesus' disciples as having **"hardness of heart,"** except, perhaps, for Judas Iscariot. To be **"destitute"** is a serious spiritual condition.

34 Hill, E.M. (2004), *DELIVERANCE FROM DEMONS AND DISEASES: FREEDOM FROM INCURABLE DISEASES AND PERSISTENT PROBLEMS*, GA, USA, Sunhill Publishers, p. 104

35 See Matthew 27:3-5

36 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, p. 58-60

37 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance – Sklerocardia 92016) [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong=G4641&t=NKJV>, [Date Accessed: 3rd April 2016)

The word indicates a lack of spiritual discernment or sensitivity a deficiency of understanding in relation to spiritual truth. This deficiency blocks one's knowledge of the true nature of God and Jesus, limits one's intimacy with God, prevents His purposes from being fulfilled in one's life, and causes one to neglect or disobey His commands.

The fulfilment of the greatest commandment of all, i.e. to love God with one's whole being, and to love other people as one self³⁸, is hindered by hardness of heart, because a **lack of spiritual perception will distance one's heart from God and other people.**

5.1.1 Love Grown Cold

This thesis is in agreement with Bill Johnson³⁹ who states in the book written by Julia Loren "*Shifting Shadow of Supernatural Power: A Prophetic Manual for those Wanting to Move in God's Supernatural Power*" that in the age of the Church, presently a generation is forming that will walk in an anointing that has never been known to mankind, including the twelve disciples walking with Jesus. This generation will not need natural illustrations to help them understand what their spiritual tasks are. They will move into spiritual territory that defies the natural order. God wants to give people revelation and experiences of Heaven that have no earthly parallel. Jesus told Nicodemus: "***If I have told you earthly things and you do not believe, how will you believe if I tell you heavenly things?***" (John 3:12 NKJV).

Jesus walked in an anointing of Spirit beyond measure. He constantly illustrated superior truths by stepping outside earthly boundaries. The more a person becomes empowered and directed by the Holy Spirit, the more one's life should defy natural principles and release the spiritual realities God has intended for people to enjoy.⁴⁰

Maldonado⁴¹ agrees about the time of spiritual acceleration. He states that a more rapid transition to greater levels of faith and a faster heart transformation will enable one to function in higher dimensions of the supernatural realm. He further states his belief that the two movements of the glory of God, the former glory as represented by the miracles of the Old

38 See Mark 12:29-31

39 Loren, J. (2011), *SHIFTING SHADOW OF SUPERNATURAL POWER: A PROPHETIC MANUAL FOR THOSE WANTING TO MOVE IN GOD'S SUPERNATURAL POWER*, PA, USA, Destiny Image Publishers, p. 191

40 Ibid p. 191

41 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, p. 60

Testament and the latter glory represented by the miracles Jesus predicted would occur in the church and are coming together in a dual manifestation. It is also the time Christ spoke about when He prophesied that wickedness would increase: “**And because lawlessness will abound the love of many will grow cold**” (Matthew 24:12).

The concept of love “**growing cold**” refers to a **hardened heart** and this is a sign of the end times. As discussed, when God created human beings, He gave them a **heart after His own heart**; but when they disobeyed God, their **heart was corrupted**, and humans became filled with sin, which includes pride, immorality, a lust for power, etc. This, in a sense, **is the reason why people are no longer sensitive for genuine love in their hearts**; they lack empathy for other people’s pain. They are not attuned to God’s Word or will.

Since the post-modern age akin to a fallen world, where sin operates and corruption destroys, one must **watch over one’s heart to keep it from slowly growing cold** and becoming hard from exposure to the false perspectives and negative attitudes of people around one, or as one reacts to the troubles and crises occurring on earth, from economic declines to natural disasters. One must allow God to soften the areas of one’s inner being that is still hard due to the effects of one’s sinful nature and the wrong attitudes one has accepted and allowed to become entrenched in one’s heart over the years.

5.2 The Condition of a Hardened Heart

In Mark 6:52 one reads: “**For they had not understood about the loaves, because their heart was hardened.**” (Mark 6:52 NKJV). What preceded this statement was that Christ had just performed a great miracle of multiplying five small loaves of bread and two fish, so that there was more than enough food to feed the five-thousand-plus people who had gathered from surrounding cities, listening eagerly for a number of hours of Jesus’ teachings and receiving healing. (See Matthew 14:14). Yet, even after the disciples had seen the demonstrations of supernatural provision by Jesus, they continued to be spiritually blind regarding who He was and how He would provide for them.⁴²

42 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD’S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, p. 61-63

Following this, Jesus sent the disciples ahead of Him by boat to the other side of the Sea of Galilee, while He stayed behind so He could pray in solitude. During the night, the disciples encountered a strong wind, and they struggled as they rowed against it. Then, Jesus came to them, walking on the water. When He entered the boat with them, the wind stopped.⁴³

Then He went up into the boat to them, and the wind ceased. And they were greatly amazed in themselves beyond measure, and marveled. For they had not understood about the loaves, because their heart was hardened.

Mark 6:51-52 (NKJV)

In this verse, the Greek word used is **pōroō** (Strong's: G4456)⁴⁴ for "**hardened**" is apparently derived from the name of a kind of stone. The term literally means, "**to petrify**"; figuratively, it means, "**to render stupid of callous,**" "**to blind,**" or "**to harden,**" "**to lose the power of understanding.**"

5.2.1 Corruptive "Leaven"

Maldonado⁴⁵ writes that not long after the incident of the Sea of Galilee, Jesus again miraculously multiplied food and fed four thousand people (See Mark 8:1-9). It seems from Scripture that the disciples still had not gained spiritual perception about Jesus' deity based on His massive provision for the multitudes. Jesus soon "charged the disciples", saying, "**Take heed, beware of the leaven of the Pharisees...**" (Mark 8:15).

Jesus' statement would likely have reminded His listeners of the annual Jewish Feast of Unleavened Bread, which God had ordained the Israelites to celebrate, as a reminder that they should remove sin, represented by leaven, from their lives.⁴⁶

In Matthew 16:12 it follows: "**Then they understood that He did not tell them to beware of the leaven of bread, but of the doctrine of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**" (Matthew

⁴³ Ibid p. 62

⁴⁴ BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance – hardened (2016), [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong=G4456&t=NKJV>, [Date Accessed: 3rd April 2016]

⁴⁵ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, p. 62-63

⁴⁶ Compare Exodus 12:17-20

16:12 NKJV). In Luke 12:1 Jesus told His disciples, **“Beware of the leaven of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy.”**

In effect, the “leaven” Jesus was referring to was the hypocrisy of the religion practiced by the Pharisees, which corrupts the integrity of the heart.

The apostle Paul referred to leaven as being **“malice and wickedness”** when he wrote to the Corinthians. He stated:

Your glorying is not good. Do you not know that a little leaven leavens the whole lump? Therefore purge out the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, since you truly are unleavened. For indeed Christ, our Passover, was sacrificed for us. Therefore let us keep the feast, not with old leaven, nor with the leaven of malice and wickedness, but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.

1 Corinthians 5:6-8 (NKJV)

It is evident that in various places in the Bible, leaven symbolizes false teachings, hypocrisy, malice, and wickedness; erroneous ideas and sinful attitudes and actions that have the potential to spread to large numbers of people, just as yeast spreads throughout a batch of dough.

It seems that the disciples, who witnessed the multiplication of bread and fish by Jesus, had hardened hearts due to “religious” and cultural perspectives and attitudes that they lacked spiritual perception of the supernatural events unfolding. This religious leaven prevented their eyes from being open to spiritual truths about God the Father and God the Son.

In the opinion of this thesis, the Church is in the same condition at this post-modern stage. Any believer who does not continually seek the transformation of his heart, and who is not ready to receive the new things God is doing during these last days, is at risk of falling into the same state.

5.2.2 “Stiff Necked” People

In the Old Testament, the Israelites were often referred to as “***stiff-necked people***.” In Exodus 32:9 the Lord said to Moses: “***I have seen this people, and indeed it is a stiff-necked people!***” The people of Israel had hardened their hearts to the point that they were not able to perceive His presence or discern His will. They failed to recognize who God really was and what He desired for them, and they turned their hearts away from obeying Him.

According to the Merriam-Webster Dictionary, “***Stiff-necked***” refers to very proud, haughty, and stubborn.⁴⁷ When Stephen preached in Acts 7, he also called the Jewish leaders “***stiff-necked an uncircumcised in heart and ears!***” who “***always resist the Holy Spirit.***” (Acts 7:51)

In Jeremiah 19:15, when the Lord promised judgement on Jerusalem, He said it was coming because “***they were stiff-necked and would not listen to My words.***”

God has always desired to write His commandments on the hearts of His people, and because it is the only way they can truly love and obey Him.

At about the same time God was writing the Ten Commandments on the stone tablets with His own finger in the presence of Moses on Mount Sinai (see Exodus 31:18), the people of Israel were rejecting God and worshipping a golden calf that they had asked Aaron, God's high priest, to create (see Exodus 32). In essence, they were refusing what God Himself had written, or ordained, for them.

As explained in a previous chapter of the thesis, the Ark of the Covenant contained the stone tablets with the Commandments written on them. This is a representation of the “stony heart” which follows the law, which leads to religious practices.

47 MERRIAM WEBSTER DICTIONARY – *stiff-necked*, (2016) [Online] Available From: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/stiff-necked>, [Date Accessed: 15th April 2016]

In the New Testament, when Stephen gave his address in the power of the Holy Spirit to the Jewish leaders of the Sanhedrin, he said, “**You stiff-necked and uncircumcised in heart and ears! You always resist the Holy Spirit; as your fathers did, so do you.**” (Acts 7:51 NKJV)

God can say the same regarding many of the people in the church today. They have hardened their hearts toward Him, demonstrating an independent spirit, rebelliousness and disobedience to His precepts. Consequently, they are “**grieving the Holy Spirit**” (See Ephesians 4:30).

In many ways, this generation's faith is exercised by the mind alone. It is not exercised by the heart, which has become hardened and therefore does not produce life.

5.3 A Propensity to Moral Failure

The moral failure of the natural heart is propensity to evil and perversion. This inevitably becomes obvious in one's behaviour. As a result, one tends to focus one's attention on one's conscious attitudes and actions. God is not content simply to reveal the outward expression of the fallen heart. He probes deeper to expose two fundamental defects that underlie one's conscious thoughts, feelings and actions, which are pride and deceit.⁴⁸

5.3.1 Evil

Saucy⁴⁹ explains that the first referral to the human heart in Scripture is in a negative context. In Genesis 6:5 it states: “**Then the LORD saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually.**” (Genesis 6:5 NKJV).

The word “**wickedness**,” in Hebrew *ra'a* (Strong's: H7451) and “**evil**” in Hebrew *ra'* (Strong's: H7451) has different forms of the same Hebrew root word meaning “**evil, distress, misery,**

48 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Kregel Publications, MI, USA, Grand Rapids, p. 45

49 Ibid, p. 42

*injury.*⁵⁰ This emphasizes the evil of mankind.

God not only saw the wickedness of humankind, he also saw its source – a heart so dominated by sin that its every “*intent*” or inclination was “*only evil continually.*”

According to Dictionary.com⁵¹, the definition of “*evil*” is “*morally wrong, bad; immoral; wicked; harmful; injurious.*”

The term “evil” encompasses a wrong relation to God and all its hurtful effects. The real character of evil is revealed in the light of its opposite – good – which in Scripture is described as something made desirable. What is pleasant, right, delightful and beneficial can be described as good. In the final analysis, good is what makes for the enjoyment and fullness of life. When God looked at His creation and saw that it was “*very good*” (Genesis 1:31), He saw that it was suited and was ordered for abundant life.⁵²

Evil is contrary to all the good qualities of life. It is unpleasant, bad, and hurtful and as such is associated with death. Evil entails all kinds of external hurt and ugliness, but also various life-robbing mental states; troubled, downhearted, distressed, angered and displeasure.⁵³

Moses set before God's people the choice of “*life and prosperity*” and “*death and adversity*” (good vs. evil) (See Deuteronomy 30:15). And God pleaded: “*Seek good and not evil that you may live.*” (Amos 5:14).

Because the person living apart from God still has the remnant of the image of God as part of the “*very good*” creation, people still has the longing for the qualities of the good life. At the depth of one's being, at the core of one's person, Scripture says that a person's heart is evil.

50 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance – *evil* (2016), [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong's=H7451&t=NKJV>, [Date Accessed: 3rd April 2016]

51 DICTIONARY.COM – *Evil* (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.dictionary.com/browse/evil>, [Date Accessed: 3rd April 2016]

52 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Kregel Publications, MI, USA, Grand Rapids, p. 65

53 Baker, D.W. (1997), *NEW INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY OF OLD TESTAMENT AND THEOLOGY AND EXEGESIS*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Zondervan, p. 1154-1158

One might think that the flood with all its destruction made man change, but the same description of the human heart is repeated after the flood. In Genesis 8:21 one reads:

And the LORD smelled a soothing aroma. Then the LORD said in His heart, "I will never again curse the ground for man's sake, although the imagination of man's heart [is] evil from his youth; nor will I again destroy every living thing as I have done.

Genesis 8:21 (NKJV)

The author of Ecclesiastes later confirms this by stating: ***"This is an evil in all that is done under the sun: that one thing happens to all. Truly the hearts of the sons of men are full of evil; madness is in their hearts while they live, and after that they go to the dead"*** (Ecclesiastes 9:3 NKJV).

The evil heart lives against the reality of God and His good ordered ways and thus suffers consequences.

5.3.2 Perversion

The natural heart bent away from God is also perverse. Proverbs 11:20 states: ***"Those who are of a perverse heart are an abomination to the LORD..."*** The Hebrew word *'iqqesh* (Strong's: H6140) rendering "perverse" means ***"distorted; hence, false."***⁵⁴

Kraus⁵⁵ explains that at its core, perversion signifies turning away from God and His "way" of life – ***"the wrong way of the innermost being."***

The diverted or "perverse" way is not an easy way to follow for it is called ***"crooked"*** and ***"twisting."*** In Isaiah 42:16 one reads about "rough" places that are difficult to traverse; places that God makes smooth for His people.

Scripture lovingly warns people of the destruction and hurt that stems from a perverse heart.

54 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance – *perverse* (2016) [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong's=H6141&t=NKJV>. [Date Accessed: 3rd April 2016]

55 Kraus, H, (1993), *PSALM 60-150 CONTINENTAL COMMENTARY*, Minneapolis, USA, p. 279

Thorns and snares are in the way of the perverse; He who guards his soul will be far from them.

Proverbs 22:5 (NKJV)

Whoever walks blamelessly will be saved, But he who is perverse in his ways will suddenly fall.

Proverbs 28:18 (NKJV)

The author of Proverbs summed up the product of the perverse heart: “***He who has a crooked mind*** (literally heart) ***finds no good***” (17:20), which is to say, he finds nothing of the pleasant prosperity of the “good” of life. The Jerusalem Bible⁵⁶ simply reads: “*The tortuous of heart finds no happiness.*”⁵⁷

5.4 Two Fundamental Defects

5.4.1 Pride

Everyone proud in heart [is] an abomination to the LORD; Though they join forces, none will go unpunished.

Proverbs 16:5 (NKJV)

In this verse the Hebrew word for “***proud***” is ***gabahh*** (Strong's: H1361),⁵⁸ which literally means “***high***.” Thus, the literal translation of this verse renders to be “***proud of heart***” as “***high of heart***.”

Other places in the Old Testament speak of the heart “***lifting up***” the person (see 2 Kings 14:10) or the heart being “***lifted up***” (Deuteronomy 17:20)⁵⁹.

⁵⁶ Jones, A. (Ed.) (1966), *THE JERUSALEM BIBLE*, NY, USA, Doubleday

⁵⁷ Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 42-43

⁵⁸ BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance – Proud, (2016) [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong's=H1362&t=NKJV>, [Date Accessed: 3rd April 2016]

⁵⁹ For other references using Hebrew terms meaning “high” or “lifted up” in relation to “heart” see Deuteronomy 8:14; 2 Chronicles 26:16, 32:25; Proverbs 18:22; Jeremiah 48:29; Ezekiel 28:2,5,7; 31:10; Daniel 11:12; Hosea 13:6

The arrogant heart is also pictured as “**great**” or “**important**” as well as “**wide**” or “**broad**” and in some cases literally “**proud**” or “**insolent**.”⁶⁰

It is interesting to note that “pride” is never directly applied to the heart in the New Testament, but rather to people.⁶¹ Saucy⁶² states that, since the heart is the real person, however, proud persons obviously have proud hearts. Moreover, pride is sometimes indirectly associated with the heart as in the reference to people who are “**proud in the thought of their heart**” (Luke 1:51; Mark 7:22).

The most fundamental characteristic of the proud heart is its belief in the first lie mentioned in Scripture, which is Satan's lie to Eve when he told her “**you will be like God**.” (Genesis 3:4). The essence of the proud heart is that it dethrones God and replaces Him with the self.

The Psalmist states:

For the wicked boasts of his heart's desire; He blesses the greedy and renounces the LORD. The wicked in his proud countenance does not seek God; God is in none of his thoughts.

Psalm 10:3-4 (NKJV)

The person who lives a life without God may not consciously think of himself as being his own god. However, when one chooses to reject God's authority and follow his own will, in reality he is choosing himself as his final authority and thus his god, even as Adam and Eve did in the beginning and Satan did before his fall.

This is the charge that God brought against the arrogant prince of Tyre:

60 For references meaning “great” or “important” in relation to “heart” see Isaiah 9:9; 10:12; Daniel 8:25. For references using a Hebrew term meaning “wide, broad” in relation to “heart”, see Psalm 101:5, Proverbs 21:4. The concept of a wide or broad heart is also used positively for a breadth of intellect or mental capacity as in the case of Solomon (1 Kings 4:29). For references using a Hebrew term meaning “proud, insolent” in terms of “heart” see 1 Samuel 17:28, Jeremiah 49:16, Obadiah 3.

61 See Romans 1:30, 2 Timothy 3:2, 1 John 2:16

62 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 42-43

“Son of man, say to the prince of Tyre, ‘Thus says the Lord GOD: “Because your heart is lifted up, And you say, ‘I am a god, I sit in the seat of gods, In the midst of the seas,’ Yet you are a man, and not a god, Though you set your heart as the heart of a god

Ezekiel 28:2 (NKJV)

Because pride directly opposes God, usurping His rightful place, according to Saucy⁶³, classic Christian theology has rightly understood pride as the root and essence of all sin.

C.S. Lewis⁶⁴ expressed that *“The essential vice, the utmost evil, is Pride. Unchastity, anger, greed, drunkenness and all that, are mere fleabites in comparison: it was through pride that the devil became the devil; Pride leads to every other vice; it is the complete anti-God state of mind.”*

Pride is the radical opposite first principal of a godly life, namely, the “fear” of or “awesome respect” for God.

The fear of the LORD is to hate evil; Pride and arrogance and the evil way And the perverse mouth I hate.

Proverbs 8:13 (NKJV)

Depicted as ***“haughty eyes”*** in some translations of Scripture or ***“a proud look”*** as stated in Proverbs 6:17, pride is on top of the list of things the Lord hates.

It is significant that humility, called ***“poor in spirit”*** in Matthew 5:3 is the first characteristic of the ***“blessed”*** person according to Jesus.

In the book of Zephaniah God made a promise to future Jerusalem, to eradicate pride through His salvation. This is a clear indication of pride in human sin.

63 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 42-43

64 Lewis, C.S. (1960), *MERE CHRISTIANITY*, NY, USA, Macmillan, p. 94

In that day you shall not be shamed for any of your deeds In which you transgress against Me; For then I will take away from your midst Those who rejoice in your pride, And you shall no longer be haughty In My holy mountain. I will leave in your midst A meek and humble people, And they shall trust in the name of the LORD.

Zephaniah 3:11-12 (NKJV)

The blessing of salvation is ultimately the removal of human pride. Paul asserted in Romans 1:

because, although they knew God, they did not glorify [Him] as God, nor were thankful, but became futile in their thoughts, and their foolish hearts were darkened. Professing to be wise, they became fools,

Romans 1:21-22 (NKJV)

The antagonistic, proud is in opposition to itself for pride brings the shattering or disintegration of the person as the author of Proverbs declared:

Pride goes before destruction, And a haughty spirit before a fall.

Proverbs 16:18 (NKJV)

All people bear something of the image of God that calls them to love and righteousness, but a person with an arrogant heart follows after Satan and urges one to please self first and thus rebels against the good implanted, tearing apart the truth and peace.

A proud person becomes the enemy of every other person. Pascal said: *"The self is hateful... In one word the self has two characteristics: It is unjust in itself, in that it makes itself the centre of everything; it is a nuisance to others, in that it wants to assert itself over them, for each self is the enemy, and would like to be tyrant to all the others."*⁶⁵

Scripture often sums up the problem accompanying a prideful heart as ***"strife and envy"*** as mentioned in Romans 13:13 ***"Let us walk properly, as in the day, not in revelry and***

⁶⁵ Pascal, B. (1995), *PENSÉES AND OTHER WRITINGS*, Oxford, UK, Oxford University Press, p. 118 - 119

drunkenness, not in lewdness and lust, not in strife and envy.” In Galatians 5:26 the author challenges people not to become “**conceited, provoking one another, envying one another.”**

Scripture rightfully calls a proud heart a “foolish” heart or a “senseless” heart (Romans 1:21).

Cornelius Platinga⁶⁶ remarked: “*The image of ourselves as centre of the world is fantasy – perhaps, in its sheer detachment from reality, even a form of madness – It’s like pulling the plug on your own resuscitator.*”

Living above and against other people, the proud heart is a lonely heart. It is also a frenzied, tired heart, attempting to live as God instead as by God’s wisdom and power as He designed for people to do. **In the end, the proud heart with its undue exaltation is actually debased.**

Jesus said “**everyone who exalts himself will be humbled**” (Luke 18:14).

Augustine⁶⁷ stated: “*By craving to become more; man becomes less; and by aspiring to be self-sufficing, he fell away from Him who truly suffices him.*”

5.4.2 Pride Versus Self-Esteem

These six things the LORD hates, Yes, seven are an abomination to Him: A proud look, A lying tongue, Hands that shed innocent blood, A heart that devises wicked plans, Feet that are swift in running to evil, A false witness who speaks lies, And one who sows discord among brethren.

Proverbs 6:16-19 (NKJV)

The sin of pride, which is mentioned as the first sin in Proverbs 6, should not be confused with good self-esteem.

⁶⁶ Platinga, C. Jr. (1995), *NOT THE WAY IT'S SUPPOSED TO BE: A BRIEFLY OF SIN*, MI, USA, Intervarsity Press, p. 125-126

⁶⁷ Augustine, (1950), *THE CITY OF GOD*, NY, USA, Random House, 14.13

Augustine noted that there is a proper exaltation of a person's heart that comes through a right relationship of humility under God.⁶⁸

Augustine⁶⁹ states: *"And what is pride but the craving for undue exaltation? And this is undue exaltation, when the soul abandons Him to whom it ought to cleave as its end, and becomes a kind of end to itself. This happens when it becomes its own satisfaction. And it does so when it falls away from that unchangeable good which ought to satisfy it more than itself... For it is good to have the heart lifted up, yet not to one's self, for this is proud, but to the Lord, for this is obedient, and can be the act only of the humble. There is therefore something in humility, which strangely enough, exalts the heart, and something in pride, which debases it. This seems, indeed, to be contradictory, that loftiness should be debase and lowliness exalt. But pious humility enables us to submit to what is above us; and nothing is more exalted above us than God; and therefore humility by making us subject of God exalts us."*

5.4.3 Deceitfulness

Another major defect in the natural heart flows directly from pride. The proud heart is prone to deceit.⁷⁰ The prophet Obadiah says to Edom, ***"the arrogance of your heart has deceived you."*** (Obadiah verse 3). Jeremiah 49:16 states: ***"Your fierceness has deceived you, The pride of your heart"***

Human speech, which is absolutely vital for communication with God and others, is defiled by deceit issuing from pride.

They speak idly everyone with his neighbor; With flattering lips and a double heart they speak. May the LORD cut off all flattering lips, And the tongue that speaks proud things, Who have said, "With our tongue we will prevail; Our lips are our own; Who is lord over us?"

Psalms 12:2-4 (NKJV)

68 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 49-50

69 Augustine, (1950), *THE CITY OF GOD*, NY, USA, Random House, 14.13

70 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 49-50

The severity of the heart's problem of deceit is revealed in Jeremiah's words when he states: **"The heart is deceitful above all things, And desperately wicked; Who can know it? I, the LORD, search the heart, I test the mind, Even to give every man according to his ways, According to the fruit of his doings."**(Jeremiah 17:9-10)

Hypothetically, in the opinion of the author of this thesis, **aside from the great deceiver, the Satan, there is nothing more cunning and crafty at attempting to make its pursuit of evil look good than the human heart.** The fountain from which life flows is **"desperately wicked"** or as referred to in other translations of the bible, **"desperately sick."**

The original Hebrew term **'anash** (Strong's: H605)⁷¹ used in this verse means, **"to be weak, sick, frail or incurable."** This term is also used in Jeremiah 15:18 and 30:12 where it is literally referring to wounds which cannot be healed.

Moreover, according to Jeremiah, any human can never plumb the depth of this illness. Only the Lord, the searcher of human hearts knows it.⁷²

One reads about the incurable nature of the deceitful heart in Isaiah as well where the prophet refers to the foolish idolater who himself constructs an idol with his own hands and then worships it. **"He feeds on ashes; a deluded heart has led him astray, and he cannot deliver himself or say, "Is there not a lie in my right hand?"** (Isaiah 44:20 ESV)

The idolater is so deceived that he is no longer capable to detect the lie and thus incapable of his own deceitful heart. The deceitful heart is unfathomable even to one self and thus cannot be cured. This thesis is in agreement to the fact that it might **possibly be the greatest deception of all to think that one can cure one's own heart.** ONLY WHEN GOD'S TRUTH ENTERS ONE'S HEART CAN ONE'S NATURAL TENDENCY TO SELF-DECEPTION BE OVERPOWERED.

The deceit in the heart is directly related to the pride. Saucy⁷³ explains that despite the pride

71 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance – wicked/sick, [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong's=H605&t=ESV>, [Date Accessed: 8th April 2016]

72 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 51

73 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 45

heart which sets itself up to be God, it can never convince itself that it is God. As a result it must continually “**suppress the truth**” that it is not God with self-deceiving lies as Paul explained:

For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who suppress the truth in unrighteousness, because what may be known of God is manifest in them, for God has shown it to them. For since the creation of the world His invisible attributes are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even His eternal power and Godhead, so that they are without excuse, because, although they knew God, they did not glorify Him as God, nor were thankful, but became futile in their thoughts, AND THEIR FOOLISH HEARTS WERE DARKENED.

Romans 1:18-21 (NKJV)(Author's Emphasis Added)

Through deception the heart follows its own agenda, which is godhood. Scriptures warn people against deceiving their hearts by self-serving thoughts and the actions that flow from them.

Let no one deceive himself. If anyone among you seems to be wise in this age, let him become a fool that he may become wise.

1 Corinthians 3:18 (NKJV)

If anyone among you thinks he is religious, and does not bridle his tongue but deceives his own heart, this one's religion [is] useless.

James 1:26 (NKJV)

The self-deceived heart is never fully at rest for it cannot deny the truth of reality – people are not their own creators in control of one's creation, but God is. To aid itself in its self-deception, the deceived heart seeks to deceive others who will support its own pretensions. Thus, **others can also deceive one's heart with similar lies that in various ways enforce one's own deception of one's godhood.**⁷⁴

⁷⁴ Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 51-52

Most disastrously, **one's proud, deceitful heart blind one to the truth of its own condition** so that if one does not turn one's vices into virtues, one deceptively hides them from others and one self. The natural heart of man is allied with the enemy of one's soul, the greater deceiver of the Garden of Eden, Satan.

It is the deceptive propensity of the proud heart that helps one to understand Jeremiah's description of the human heart as "**incurably ill**" (Jeremiah 17:9) for how does it seem possible for a heart that deceives itself concerning its own sickness even cure itself?⁷⁵

5.5 Deadening Conditions

5.5.1 Fat

The psalmist refers to arrogant, proud people's hearts as being fat when he states: "**Their heart is as fat as grease**" (Psalm 119:70 NKJV). In another instance, those who "**speak proudly**" are described as having "**closed up their fat hearts;**" (Psalm 17:10 NKJV). The original Hebrew word used in this context for "fat" is **cheleb** (Strong's: H2459)⁷⁶, which refers to being "**literally or figuratively fat, meaning the choice part.**"

The people of Isaiah's day would not heed his exhortation, because along with having spiritually "**dull ears**" and "**dim eyes,**" their hearts were "**dull,**" or in other English translations "**calloused,**" or "**hard.**" The original Hebrew word used in this context is **shaman** (Strong's: H8080), which primitive root is "**to shine, i.e. (by analogy) be (causatively, make) oily or gross:—become (make, wax) fat.**"⁷⁷

Saucy⁷⁸ explains that "**fatness**" is figurative for the hearts insensibility, unreceptiveness and consequent stubbornness. With no muscle or nerve, fat is impossible to move. "**A Hebrew-English Lexicon of the Old Testament**" (1907)⁷⁹ explains the original Hebrew word for

⁷⁵ Ibid p. 52

⁷⁶ BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance – fat [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong's=H2459&t=NKJV>, [Date Accessed 8th April 2016]

⁷⁷ BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Isaiah 6:10 [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong's=H8080&t=NKJV>, [Date Accessed: 8th April 2016]

⁷⁸ Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 53

⁷⁹ Brown, F., Driver, S.A., Briggs, C.A. (1907), *A HEBREW-ENGLISH LEXICON OF THE OLD TESTAMENT*, Oxford, UK, Oxford Press, p. 316

“fat” as the “*diaphragm*” or “*midriff*.” It further explains **that a fat heart is “as unresponsive as the midriff-fat near it.”**

Scripture relates such fatness with arrogance of prosperity. In Deuteronomy 32:15 Moses, in his indictment of Israel, declared: **“But Jeshurun grew fat and kicked; You grew fat, you grew thick, You are obese! Then he forsook God who made him, And scornfully esteemed the Rock of his salvation.”** The rich, fat heart is also self-centred and greedy. Being unresponsive to God, such a heart is cruelly insensitive to the people around it.

You have lived on the earth in pleasure and luxury; you have fattened your hearts as in a day of slaughter. You have condemned, you have murdered the just; he does not resist you.

James 5:5-6 (NKJV)

5.5.2 Hard

A more common reference to a heart not in line with the heart of God, but rather in line with Satan, is the unresponsive, obstinate heart is described as a “**hard heart**,” a “**heart of stone**” or a “**stubborn heart**.” A classic example of a person with a “**hard heart**” can be found in Pharaoh’s adamant refusal to listen to God’s word through Moses and consequently of the plagues hit Egypt (See Exodus 7 and Exodus 8).

The same hard-hearted stubbornness is also found in God’s people. In Psalm 81:11-12 one reads: **“But My people would not heed My voice, And Israel would have none of Me. So I gave them over to their own stubborn heart, To walk in their own counsels.”** Later on the Psalmist writes in Psalm 95:8-9 **“Do not harden your hearts, as in the rebellion, As in the day of trial in the wilderness, When your fathers tested Me; They tried Me, though they saw My work.”**

In Zechariah 7:12 one reads that the judgement came on the people of God because **“they made their hearts like flint, refusing to hear the law and the words which the LORD of hosts had sent by His Spirit through the former prophets. Thus great wrath came from the LORD of hosts.”**

Jesus said that it was due to hardness in heart in people that made Moses permit divorce contrary to God's ideal in marriage.

He said to them, "Moses, because of the hardness of your hearts, permitted you to divorce your wives, but from the beginning it was not so.

Matthew 19:8 (NKJV)

A hard heart **refuses to submit to God**, not only because it feels no need of Him, but also because it **stubbornly refuses to trust God** that He is able to fulfil His gracious promises. Like the Israelites fear for the Canaanites and their lack of faith in the word and power of God, refused to enter into the Promised Land, the people in Isaiah's day chose to look to foreign nations rather than God for deliverance from their enemies.⁸⁰

As Saucy explains, the various examples given in Scripture about hardness of the human heart, demonstrate that there are degrees of stubborn resistance toward God and others. Pharaoh represents many unbelievers whom the apostles describes as "**understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God, because of the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart.**" (See Ephesians 4:18 cf. Romans 2:5).

As seen, God's people can also have hearts, which are stubbornly resistant to God's voice. Jesus' own disciples at times struggled to comprehend His teaching or believing it because their "**hearts was hardened**" (Mark 6:52; 16:14) or they were "**slow of heart**" (Luke 24:25). No person is immune to the stony condition of the natural heart to resist God's transforming grace.

Hardness of heart is not always apparent as it was in Pharaoh's case, who was forced by God's power to either humbly submit to Him or steely resist. Most people rarely feel pressed in one's relationship to God to the kind of radical choice. Though a person might not face stark choices that demands full exposure of the condition of one's heart, every person comes to forks in their paths of life where one chooses either to have open and receptive hearts to God's voice or closed resistant hearts that put up excuses and rationalizations to

⁸⁰ Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, Grand Rapids, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 55

protect one from the humbling truth of who one really is.

The tragedy of a stony heart is that it not only resists God's desire to come in with life-giving grace, but it also encases the person within oneself and encase oneself in a loveless tomb, unable to enjoy relationship with others.

The natural hardness of the proud human heart will only be cured when God's promise of a new heart is fully realized as promised in Ezekiel.

"I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you; I will take the heart of stone out of your flesh and give you a heart of flesh.

Ezekiel 36:26 (NKJV)

The full comprehension of the condition of the natural human heart is beyond all human understanding. It is evil, perverse, proud, deceitful, fat (insensitive) and hard. Other negative traits of the heart could be added, such as "**adulterous**" (Ezekiel 6:9), "**foolish**" (Romans 1:21) and "**uncircumcised**" that is consecrated (Leviticus 26:41; Acts 7:51). God is the only One who can comprehend the full depth of the mystery of evil in the natural heart. But one understands enough to know that a sinful heart is truly "*a labyrinthine mass of lies and twisted motives.*"⁸¹

The traits of the natural human heart that flow out of "*the issues of life*" provides the real explanation for the human condition in the world. **The greatest need in humanity is a change of heart.** This is all the more evident when one compares the heart that God commands.

6. CONCLUSION

From the beginning of creation, it was God's desire and purpose for human beings to have a heart like His. The Scriptures teaches: "**Then God said, "Let Us make man in Our image,**

⁸¹ Peck, M.S. (1983), *PEOPLE OF THE LIE: THE HOPE FOR HEALING HUMAN EVIL*, NY, USA, Simon & Schuster, p. 64

according to Our likeness; let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the air, and over the cattle, over all the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth.” So God created man in His [own] image; in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them” (Genesis 1:26-27 NKJV). God also breathed into humanity His own Spirit (see Genesis 2:7).

God therefore made humans with a heart fashioned after their Creator's. This heart was pure and complete, filled with God's nature and character.

Adam and Eve turned away from God's heart and the nature in which they had been created. Instead of cherishing God's instructions and wisdom, they wilfully disobeyed Him. God had commanded them not to eat of the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, warning them that if they did so, they would die. Tragically, they listened to the voice of God's enemy, Satan, who told them, **“You will not surely die. “For God knows that in the day you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.”** (Genesis 3:4-5 NKJV)

They were enticed by a promise of **“being like God”** – although they had already been made in His image – the first man and woman went against their Creator.⁸² **Their rejection of God's heart resulted in a terrible change in the human heart, giving human beings an all-too-familiar knowledge of evil, because it was now within them.** Their disobedience, or sin resulted in their fall from their true selves and the loss of their innocence – it initiated the corruption of the human heart.

Ever since Satan prompted the first man and woman to reject God's command, turning away from His nature, an invisible war has been taking place for possession of the hearts of all human beings. God's kingdom of light and Satan's kingdom of darkness are battling even now for one's heart.

It is in the opinion of the thesis that, **whoever holds the heart of someone also holds his potential and his resources – his entire person.** Human beings must decide to whom

82 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House

they will surrender their hearts. Although it might be seem that a person can choose not to choose between the Kingdom of God or the kingdom of Satan, that is exactly the deception from the enemy.

If one chooses to be neutral about their heart and to follow the self instead of God, then one effectively chooses to side with God's enemy, Satan. The kingdom of darkness forcefully takes over any terrain, especially the human heart, it finds vulnerable or vacant, using the most subtle weapons and tools imaginable as on reads in Matthew 12:43-45.

"When an unclean spirit goes out of a man, he goes through dry places, seeking rest, and finds none. 'Then he says, 'I will return to my house from which I came.' And when he comes, he finds it empty, swept, and put in order. 'Then he goes and takes with him seven other spirits more wicked than himself, and they enter and dwell there; and the last state of that man is worse than the first. So shall it also be with this wicked generation.'"

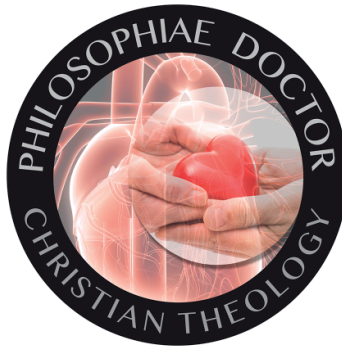
Matthew 12:43-45 (NKJV)

Scripture teaches: ***"Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour."*** (1 Peter 5:8 NKJV).

Satan hates all people and seeks to destroy all people. He tries and eliminates Jesus' presence out of every person's heart. Jesus said: ***"The thief does not come except to steal, and to kill, and to destroy. I have come that they may have life, and that they may have it more abundantly."*** (John 10:10 NKJV)

THE GOAL OF THE ENEMY IS TO TAKE THE HUMAN HEART CAPTIVE AND TO KEEP IT CAPTIVE.

---oOo---



Chapter Five

CASE STUDIES

1. INTRODUCTION

Case studies can be described as in-depth investigations of a single person, group, event or community. Typically, data are gathered from a variety of sources and by using several different methods such as observations and interviews. The research may also continue for an extended period of time, so processes and developments can be studied as it appears.

Case study research has its origin in clinical medicine where case history is taken and compared to others of similar conditions.

Case studies are mostly approached through a method called ideography, i.e. observing what happens to, or reconstructing the case history of a single participant or group of individuals. Case studies allow a researcher to investigate a topic in far more detail than might be possible if they were trying to deal with a large number of research participants (nomothetic approach¹) with the aim of ‘averaging.’

The case study is not in itself a research method, but researchers select methods of data collection and analysis that will generate material suitable for case studies.

Amongst the sources of data, the counsellor will most likely carry out a case study using methods such as observations of a person’s daily routine, unstructured interviews with the participant, reports from other therapists and counsellors, personal notes, medical diagnosis etc. Most of the information offered would likely be qualitative (i.e. a verbal description rather than measurement) but the counsellor might collect numerical data as well.

¹ Nomothetic Approach – See Terms and Definitions

As a counsellor with a wide range of experience in the medical field as well as in theological studies, specializing in counselling, particularly, healing through deliverance practice, this particular research study on which the thesis is based, has used numerous methods of observation, including physical clinical measurements of different research subject's heart reactions. Some of this data will be included in the following chapter in an effort to offer physical, clinically measured evidence about the spiritual impact on the human body.

Case studies are widely used in psychology, psychiatry, medical studies, theology and other research fields. It involves collecting and reporting descriptive information about a particular person or specific environment, such as the home environment. Often times in counselling, a case study is confined to the study of a particular individual.

Unlike other fields of study such as Psychiatry, Psychology and Medical fields, the Biblical perspective adds to these fields the spiritual and demonic realm which the Bible describes very clearly.

Psalms 103:2-4 states: ***"Bless the LORD, O my soul, And forget not all His benefits: Who forgives all your iniquities, Who heals all your diseases, Who redeems your life from destruction, Who crowns you with lovingkindness and tender mercies."*** (NKJV)

In the Bible one learns that physical affliction to the body has an origin in transgression, iniquity and sin.² One further learns that sins committed by previous generation also have a major result on a person or community.³ The curses, which come through strongholds and rights given to Satan through sin, will bring defilement to the body and cause physical disease and injury. No definite cure for affliction, ascribed to spiritual causes, will be cured without confession of sin and expulsion of the demonic. Thus, the information obtained by a Christian counsellor for case studies are spiritual analysis that relates to events in the individual's past, bloodline history, as well as to significant events, which are currently occurring in the person's everyday life.

2 Compare Psalm 32

3 See Numbers 14:18

1 Thessalonians 5:23 states that a human being is a tripartite being, composed of spirit, soul and body. It would be ignorant, without insight to try and explain disease and afflictions to the human body and mind through the studies of psychology, psychiatry and medicine. Satan and his demonic hordes invade the spiritual realm. Although not almighty: a term that only belongs to God, Satan is an enemy and adversary with tremendous power and abilities and should not be underestimated or viewed as a lesser foe. His sole aim is to destroy the Christian, the child of God. His methods are not logical to the human understanding, but it is only explainable spiritually; thus, his methods are demonic and vile as he is.

Satan's tactics sometimes seems unnoticed and covered for many counsellors, even Christian deliverance counsellors. It is thus necessary to define the role of the counsellor in the research of a case study to draw possible conclusions.

In Biblical terms the counsellor can be defined as a person who gives advice or counselling from a biblical perspective. However, this thesis proposes the idea that deliverance of expelling of demons is in many cases a vital part of the healing and sanctification process. Jesus as portrayed in the four Evangelicals is the perfect example of counselling and deliverance. Many people that turn to Jesus gets help through counselling and deliverance.

Because Jesus is sinless, the demonic has no hold over Him. As discussed in detail in previous chapters, mankind has a fallen nature because of the sin of Eden; thus the adversary seeks to manipulate the Christian into sin to get a hold over him and thus the legal right to entering into his life through demons and putting the person into bondage.

It is however important for the purpose of this thesis to define the role of the Biblical counsellor and specifically the counsellor specialising in the deliverance of the family bloodline. Although some Christian counsellors operate in the realm of deliverance, it seems if many Christian counsellors ignore the importance of the history of a specific bloodline as well as the roots of the origin of the family.

It is very important that the Christian counsellor's main source of information comes from the Holy Spirit and the Word of God, for Scriptures teach that only the Holy Spirit can teach a person, as stated in 1 John 2:27:

But the anointing which you have received from Him abides in you, and you do not need that anyone teach you; but as the same anointing teaches you concerning all things, and is true, and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, you will abide in Him.

Although thorough research is important, prayer and hearing the voice of the Holy Spirit is not negotiable. The counsellor could also go into a fast through conviction of the Holy Spirit for a few days. Every case is different and the counsellor should be sensitive to the voice and prompting of the Holy Spirit.

Many Biblical scholars offer evidence of the working of the demonic world through case studies.

Seeing many counselees over the years, the counsellor will be able to compile demonological profile of a certain aspect.⁴

This makes it clear that the case study is a method that should only be used by a counsellor and therapist with professional integrity. There is an ethical issue of competence.

The interpretation of the information obtained depends on the researcher self who can decide what to include or leave out. A good case study should always make clear which information is factual description and which is an inference or the opinion of the researcher.⁵

This chapter will describe certain cardiovascular conditions in an effort to explain cardiac afflictions, which pertains to possible spiritual causes with the root in generational, bloodline iniquity, sin and transgression, but also through a person's own sin and transgressions.

⁴ Malan, C.E.M., (2010), *THE PERVERSION OF MANKIND THROUGH SEXUAL BROKENNESS AND DEVIATION WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO HOMOSEXUALITY, DESTROYING GOD'S PURPOSE FOR GODLY BLOODLINES*, PhD Thesis, Pretoria, SA, Calvary University (UK)

⁵ McLeod, S.A. (2008), *CASE STUDY METHOD*, [Online] Available From: www.simplypsychology.org/case-study.html, [Date Accessed: 1st June 2016]

This information will be used to give a clearer understanding about the mentioned people's conditions in the case studies from the medical field as well as the spiritual counselling and deliverance fields.

Some ECG graph information will also be offered to help the reader form an understanding and also to give evidence about the manner in which spiritual aspects are in some form, physically measurable. This offers scientific proof that physical conditions could definitely result from spiritual causes and gives the reader of this thesis, and any person interested in the epigenetic⁶, spiritual, soulish and physiological fields of study, evidence based research findings.

From this information gathered, the author of this thesis motivates and encourages any person who with Holy Spirit conviction, to pursue this line of research study and to continue in their pursuit. Every person should try to unpack the treasures God has placed inside them and others, to be able to help in building His righteous Kingdom, as well as find personal intimacy with Him on deeper and deeper levels. Also, people need to help those people with hurt and pain to be able to find freedom to walk in their full Birthright they were meant to have.

Deep calls unto deep at the noise of Your waterfalls; All Your waves and billows have gone over me. The LORD will command His lovingkindness in the daytime, And in the night His song shall be with me--A prayer to the God of my life.

Psalm 42:7-8 (NKJV)

2. UNRESOLVED/COMPLICATED GRIEF

2.1 Defining Trauma

The *Diagnostic and Statistic Manuel of Mental Disorders, 4th edition, Text revision* (DSM-IV-TR; American Psychiatric Association [APA] 2000) specifically defines "trauma" as direct personal experience of an event that involves actual or threatened death or serious injury,

⁶ Epigenetics – See Terms and Definitions

or a threat to the physical integrity of another person; or learning about unexpected or violent death, serious harm, or threat of death or injury experienced by a family member or a close associate.

The person's response to the event must involve intense fear, helplessness, or horror.⁷

2.2 Defining Grief

Grief can be defined as a multifaceted response to loss, particularly to the loss of someone or something that has died, to which a bond or affection was formed. Although conventionally focused on the emotional response to loss, it also has physical, cognitive, behavioural, social and philosophical dimensions. Grief is a reaction to loss where as bereavement is a state of loss.

Grief is the emotional suffering one feels when someone or something the individual loves is taken away.⁸

Grief is also the reaction to any loss. The grief associated with death is familiar to most people, but individuals grieve in connection with a variety of losses throughout their lives, such as unemployment, ill health or the end of a relationship.⁹

2.3 Defining Prolonged Grief

Prolonged grief disorder was formerly known as complicated grief disorder, which is a pathological reaction to loss representing a cluster of empirically derived symptoms that have been associated with long-term physical and psycho-social dysfunction.

7 American Psychiatric Association, (2000), *THE DIAGNOSTIC AND STATISTIC MANUAL FOR PSYCHIATRIC DISORDERS*, 4th Edition, Text Revision (DSM IV-TR), APA, USA, p. 436

8 Melinda Smith, J.S. (2012), *COPING WITH GRIEF AND LOSS*, [Online] Available From: [helpguide.org: http://helpguide.org/mental/grief_loss.htm](http://helpguide.org/mental/grief_loss.htm), [Date Accessed: 3rd May 2016]

9 HOSPICE FOUNDATION OF AMERICA - *Grief*, (2012) [Online] Available From: <http://www.hospicefoundation.org/grief>, [Date Accessed: 3rd May 2016]

The DSM-5 states that complicated grief is in an “area for further study” under the name Persistent Complex Bereavement Disorder.¹⁰

According to Stroebe et.al.,¹¹ the DSM-5 compilers plan to pathologize all the cases that would be associated as “complicated grief” and more. Regarding the terminology, the DSM-5 label of “bereavement related disorder” is insufficiently because there are many disorders other than prolonged grief itself that can be related to bereavement, ranging from depression to heart failure.

Complicated grief is characterised by an extended grieving periods and other criteria, including mental and physical impairments.¹²

When grief feelings turn to complicated grief, the feelings of loss become incapacitating and continue even though time passes. The signs and symptoms characteristic of complicated grief are listed as “*extreme focus on the loss and reminders of the loved one, intense longing or pining for the deceased, problems accepting the death, numbness or detachment... bitterness about one’s loss, inability to enjoy life, depression or deep sadness, trouble carrying out normal routines, withdrawing from social activities, feeling that life holds no purpose or meaning, irritability or agitation, lack of trust in others.*”¹³

The symptoms of complicated grief are specific because the symptoms seem to be a combination of the symptoms found in separation as well as traumatic distress. They are also considered to be complicated because, unlike normal grief, these symptoms will continue regardless of the amount of time that has passed and despite clinical treatment.¹⁴

-
- 10 Prigerson, H.G. et.al. (2009), *PROLONGED GRIEF DISORDER: PSYCHOMETRIC VALIDATION CRITERIA PROPOSED FOR DSM-5 AND ICD-II*, Public Library of Science 6(8): e1000121. Doi:10.1371/journal.pmed.1000121.
- 11 Stroebe, M., Schut, M. van der Bout, J. (2013), *COMPLICATED GRIEF: SCIENTIFIC FOUNDATION FOR HEALTH CARE PROFESSIONALS*, Routledge, East Sussex, UK, p. 100
- 12 Newson, R.S. et.al. (2011), *THE PREVALENCE AND CHARACTERISTICS OF COMPLICATED GRIEF IN OLDER ADULTS*, Journal of Affective Disorders 132 (1-2); 231-8.doi:10.1016/j.jad.2011.02.021. PMID 21397336
- 13 MAYO CLINIC STAFF – *Complicated Grief*, (2011), [Online] Available From: <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/complicated-grief/DS01023>, [Date Accessed: 3rd May 2016]
- 14 Rosenzweig, A. et.al. (1997), *BEREAVEMENT AND LATE-LIFE DEPRESSION: GRIEF AND ITS COMPLICATIONS IN THE ELDERLY*, Annual Review of Medicine 48: 421-428.doi:10.1146/annurev.med.48.1.421. PMID 9046973
-

2.4 Traumatic Grief

Traumatic grief refers to the experience of the sudden loss of a significant and close attachment. Some of the strongest predictors of grief symptoms are when the person identifies with the deceased and experiencing multiple losses. Other factors that may influence the development of prolonged grief syndrome include: survivor guilt; feelings of powerlessness in not being able to prevent the death; anger at others who are thought to have caused the death; anger at oneself for committing a self-perceived error resulting in the death; tasks of survival in combat taking precedence over grieving; not being able to show emotional vulnerability; numbing and defending against overwhelming emotions; not having an opportunity in the field to acknowledge the death and increased sense of vulnerability by seeing someone close killed.

In war, factors include exposure to significant numbers of civilian casualties, exposure to death from friendly fire or accidents resulting from a massive and rapid troop movements, and concern about culpability for having caused death or harm to innocent people. These factors may contribute to experiences of shock, disbelief, and self-blame that increase risk of traumatic and complicated grief reactions.¹⁵

2.5 Complications due to Prolonged Grief

“No one comes to grief without fear, and without faith no one overcomes grief.”¹⁶

Risk factors for developing complicated grief include losing a child, suffering a loss due to natural disaster, or suffering a loss due to extreme crimes towards humanity such as rape, victimization, child molestation, incestuous relationships, abortion, etc.¹⁷

The larger implication of unresolved grief is the physical manifestation in the human body.

15 PTSD: NATIONAL CENTER FOR PTSD (2014); *Symptomatology and Treatment for the Iraq War Veterans*; [Online] Available From: <http://www.ptsd.va.gov/professional/treatment/vets/tgs-treatment-iraq-war.asp>; [Access Date: 5th May 2015]

16 Kayiwa, K & Matthews, Z. (2005); *FACE TO FACE WITH GRIEF*; Lulu.com; p. 15

17 etc. – See abbreviations

Man is created “spirit, soul and body,¹⁸” Any spiritual wounding or emotional hurts, which are not dealt with, will affect the person psychologically and physically. La Grant¹⁹ states that most people fail to realize that grief is as strong on the physical demands of the body as it is on the emotional demands. People tend to forget a major factor in dealing with the stress of life – for every thought and emotion there is a physical manifestation of that thought or emotion.

This fact of life has long-term implications for an individual’s health and well-being, yet it is forgotten by many in daily affairs and the consideration of the stress of mourning. What continually dwells in the mind – what a person chooses to focus on – is animated in the life of the body cells.

Another dire complication of grief is the loss of a person’s innocence, which is usually related to some form of abuse. Hambrick²⁰ states that in abuse a key element of innocence is trust. Trust is redefined from a positive quality that blesses a relationship to a dangerous activity that is akin to naiveté. When this happens something precious is lost.

The innocence lost is often overlooked and only the wound is being treated, but a grieving person also needs to grieve the lost innocence. In grieving lost innocence, it is easy to get lost in the powerful emotions and memories surrounding the violation that occurred and miss grieving the loss for the innocent person to whom they occurred. If a person does this, the person silences their grief and magnifies their pain; one gets distracted from the grief and fixates on the violation. This leaves the person trapped in a period of time one cannot change rather than allowing one to embark on a journey of grief by which God can give new meaning to their loss.

In embarking on the grief journey, one must recognize that healthy trust may be the most difficult and confusing aspect. The redemption of innocence lost requires the willingness to embrace trust a blessing again.

18 See 1 Thessalonians 5:23

19 La Grand, L.E.; (1999); *MESSAGES AND MIRACLES: EXTRAORDINARY EXPERIENCES OF THE BEREAVED*, Llewellyn Worldwide Publishers; USA; p. 201

20 A COUNSELOR FOR THE CHURCH Hambrick B. (2014) *Learning to Grieve Losses not Caused by Death*; [Online] Available From: <http://www.bradhambrick.com/learning-to-grieve-losses-not-caused-by-death/>; [Date Accessed: 3rd May 2015]

A major theme in the journey that is ahead is seeing that Christ's righteousness allows one to experience a sense of cleanness and innocence that was taken from the person. As a Christian, the comfort is in the fact that God does not see the person as defiled, and He invites the person to see one through His eyes. Surrendering to Christ, as Lord doesn't just mean doing whatever God says, it also means allowing His perspective to have the final say on one's life.

3. HEART CONDITIONS

3.1 Cardiovascular Disease

3.1.1 Defining Heart Disease

The World Health Organization²¹ offers the definition for cardiovascular disease as a group of disorders of the heart and blood vessels and include:

Coronary heart disease: disease of blood vessels supplying the heart muscle

Cerebrovascular disease: disease of the blood vessels supplying the brain

Peripheral arterial disease: disease of blood vessels supplying the arms and legs

Rheumatic heart disease: damage to the heart muscle and heart valves from rheumatic fever, caused by streptococcal bacteria

Congenital heart disease: malformations of heart structure existing at birth

Deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism: blood clots in the leg veins, which can dislodge and move to the heart or lungs.

It further states that heart attacks and strokes are usually acute events and are mainly caused by a blockage that prevents blood from flowing to the heart or brain. The most common reason is a build-up of fatty deposits on the inner walls of the blood vessels. Strokes can be caused by bleeding from a blood vessel in the brain or by blood clots.

21 WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION – *Defining Cardiovascular Disease*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.euro.who.int/en/health-topics/noncommunicable-diseases/cardiovascular-diseases/cardiovascular-diseases2/definition-of-cardiovascular-diseases>, [Date Accessed: 8th April 2015]

Maciejko²² explains that more than 75% of cardiovascular disease is specifically a disease of the artery wall. An occlusive disease of the coronary arteries, which supply blood to the heart muscle or myocardium, for example, causes a heart attack or myocardial infarction. The same disease can cause a stroke by occluding the cerebral arteries.

This occlusive arterial disease is a specific form of arteriosclerosis called atherosclerosis.²³ Atherosclerosis may affect arteries other than coronary or cerebral arteries, such as the legs. It may also weaken the aorta and other main arteries, called aneurysms, which is the ballooning of the artery walls and has the propensity to rupture, causing fatal haemorrhaging.

The general public refers to this artery-affecting disease as hardening of the arteries and is by far the most prevalent type of cardiovascular disease. It occurs in various stages of life and has chronic as well as acute manifestations.

While 75% of cardiovascular disease is actually blood vessel disease caused by arteriosclerosis while 25% is specific to the heart itself. This includes heart muscle weakness or heart failure, disorders of the heart valves congenital structural abnormalities leading to heart failure and abnormalities in the rate and rhythm of the heartbeat. About 30% of diseases specific to the heart are electrical defects that cause abnormalities in the conduction of the heartbeat causing disturbances in the rhythm and rate. i.e. arrhythmia.

3.1.2 Cardiac Failure

The National Institute for Clinical Excellence²⁴ defines heart failure as “**a complex syndrome that can result from any structural or functional cardiac disorder that impairs the ability of the heart to function as a pump to support a physiological circulation.**”

22 Maciejko, J.J. (2004), *ATHEROSCLEROSIS RISK FACTORS*, American Association for Clinical Chemistry, USA, p. 5

23 Author's Note – See previous chapter offering original Hebrew and Greek definitions of words linked to English words. (Sklerocardia)

24 Nicholson, C., (2007), *HEART FAILURE: A CLINICAL NURSING HANDBOOK*, Wiley, J. & Sons, USA, p. 5

Braunwald (1980) explains heart failure as “**a pathophysiological state in which an abnormality of cardiac function is responsible for the failure of the heart to pump blood at a rate commensurate with requirements of the metabolising tissues**”²⁵

In agreement with Nicholson²⁶, it is difficult for a clinician to put a definition to heart failure in that it is such a broad concept. Although heart failure is usually a functional phrase it is imprecise. A heart may be failing in a sense that it may not last for another 24 hours, or it may be failing in a sense that a weakness had been diagnosed for many years.

Heart failure is also imprecise as a definition for the heart can fail in different ways, thus the use of more structural terms such as left-sided, right-sided, biventricular and congestive cardiac failure.

3.1.3 Symptoms of Cardiac Failure

A person with cardiac failure may present with a number of symptoms of which the most common is breathlessness, fatigue, exercise intolerance and fluid retention.

Other non-specific symptoms of heart failure include nocturia²⁷, anorexia²⁸, abdominal bloating and discomfort, constipation and cerebral symptoms such as dizziness, confusion and memory impairment.²⁹

3.2 Spiritual Heart Failure

Cramer³⁰ is of opinion that one of the most dangerous aspects of heart disease is the fact that a person can be suffering from the disease but only realizes it until it reaches a critical stage. It is because physical heart diseases involve a long-term accumulative, progressive process that quite often produces no discernable symptoms until the disease is quite advanced.

25 Nicholson, C., (2007), *HEART FAILURE: A CLINICAL NURSING HANDBOOK*, Wiley, J. & Sons, USA, p. 5

26 Ibid, p. 5

27 Nocturia – See Terms and Definitions

28 Anorexia – See Terms and Definitions

29 Royal College of Physicians of London, (2005), *CHRONIC HEART FAILURE: NATIONAL CLINICAL GUIDELINES FOR DIAGNOSIS AND MANAGEMENT IN PRIMARY AND SECONDARY CARE*, Royal College of Physicians, London, UK, p. 25

30 Cramer, S.A. (2006), *VICTORY IN CHRIST: LIVING IN A TEMPLE INSTEAD OF A PRISON*, Cedar Fort Publishers, UT, USA, p. 186-187

Similarly, everyday people die spiritually because they are unaware of their spiritual heart disease, for just as a person's physical life depends on the heart's unceasing and automatic contractions, one's spiritual life depends on one's spiritual heart's unceasing commitment to righteous desires and priorities.

One of the most common reasons for death by heart failure is a person's denial that anything is wrong and the resulting delay of examination and treatment, even after they become aware of their symptoms and warning signs.³¹

So it is with spiritual heart failure. One finds one self-considering to break or compromise one's commitment to God and becoming apathetic about one's promises – alarming danger signs that are ignored.

Just as a person with a physical damaged heart loses energy and concern for life's pressure and duties, losing spiritual energy and concern should be a warning signals that one's spiritual heart is unwell. When one's performance to one's family and the Body of Christ becomes more painful to one than neglect, one is in serious danger of spiritual heart failure and possible spiritual death and should undertake an immediate evaluation of one's values and priorities.

There are many problems that can develop in one's physical heart and circulatory system, and each defect produces specific symptoms, such as shortness of breath, chest, shoulder and arm pain, poor circulation, lack of energy, and erratic heart rate. Doctors conduct examinations to determine heart disease.

A person can detect a physical heart attack by the sudden onset of physical pain in the chest, which radiates to the shoulder, arm and jaw. Spiritual heart attacks, in which **"men's hearts failing them from fear and the expectation"** (Luke 21:26 NKJV). Men's hearts failing them, can be recognized by symptoms such as an urge to **break one's covenants, to make evil choices, or to hurt others as one strikes out in anger, revenge and unwillingness to forgive.**³²

31 Ibid p. 186

32 Ibid p. 187

3.3 Cardiomyopathy

Cardiomyopathy is a condition where one's heart is enlarged. An enlarged heart muscle eventually becomes paper-thin. In some types of cardiomyopathy, the walls of the heart chambers become stiff. Although the heart is enlarged, it is not able to pump blood efficiently. One chamber compensates and does the function of all four chambers.

Since the heart is pumping blood out poorly, it cannot receive enough blood. The blood receives less oxygen since the fluid accumulates in the lungs. The heart beats irregularly. Other organs also take strain, trying to function and compensate for the failing heart's function.³³

Enlarged hearts lead to congestive cardiac failure. The digestive and vascular system becomes engorged with fluids, which the kidneys cannot eliminate, and thus the kidneys also start to fail. The congestion is often observed in distended neck veins and oedema of the lower extremities.

People with failing hearts cannot complete simple tasks because of the shortness of breath with the slightest exertion. Their thinking is affected by a lack of oxygen and fear. They do not have energy to organize or carry out a plan of action.³⁴

3.3.1 Spiritual Cardiomyopathy

According to Grange³⁵, spiritual cardiomyopathy is strikingly similar to physical cardiomyopathy. **One's spiritual heart does not function properly.** The pump of the spiritual heart is "**a broken and contrite heart**" (Psalm 51:17). One's spiritual system cannot drain properly through true repentance. Excess guilt, shame and sorrow accumulate. Many fears accompany these emotions. **As a person's heart becomes hardened, many systems that stimulate the spiritual heartbeat becomes interrupted and non-existent.**

33 Grange, M.J. (2010), *SO...YOU ARE TIRE OF BEING A LAME DUCK: A DISASTER MANUEL FOR ATTENTION DEFICIT DISORDER AND ATTENTION DEFICIT DISORDER WITH HYPERACTIVITY*, Trafford Publishing, USA, p. 154

34 Ibid p. 154

35 Ibid p. 155

Hearts become engorged with ambition, pride, lies, and weapons of rebellion, which effect how the entire physical body and mind work together.

One's entire spiritual system does not receive adequate nourishment. There is no room to breath in "**the breath of life**" and no spiritual nourishment to grow in spirit and in truth. The normal pathway, which affects the way one performs one's normal spiritual tasks are not developed. One becomes depressed, frustrated and angry and focuses on other things than the Word of God to compensate for the way one performs daily tasks and control one's fears.

3.3.2 Manifestation of Spiritual Cardiomyopathy

People who suffer from spiritual cardiomyopathy often turn down and ignore the things, which will help with treatment. God gave people a free will to choose the treatment or to turn to alternative options. People with spiritual cardiomyopathy demand mercy for themselves and justice for others due to the **bitterness in their hearts**. These individual do not take responsibility for their own spiritual tasks and expect others in the Body to do it for them. A person with spiritual cardiomyopathy will forgive another if he finds it necessary, but **keep bitterness in their hearts**. They don't see the need to be under the care of The Great Physician for they find Him too expensive and His ideas to strange.

4. CASE STUDIES FROM THE MEDICAL FIELD

4.1 A Case of Broken Heart Syndrome

Takotsubo Cardiomyopathy,³⁶ also known as "Broken Heart Syndrome," is a form of reversible cardiomyopathy leading to transient left ventricle dysfunction. It has been classified as a form of **stress** cardiomyopathy and occurs much more in women than in men.

³⁶ The Japanese word *takotsubo* translates to "octopus pot," resembling the shape of the left ventricle during systole on imaging studies. Although the exact etiology is still unknown, the syndrome appears to be triggered by a significant emotional or physical stressor.

Japanese authors initially reported the syndrome in 1990's, who recognized a seemingly unique, reversible cardiomyopathy that was commonly precipitated by **emotional stress**.

The person suffering from this syndrome develops signs and symptoms of acute coronary syndrome soon following an **emotional stressor**. The patient also develops an unusual distribution of left ventricle wall motion abnormalities affecting the apical and mid-ventricle segments of the myocardium. These abnormalities seems transient and in the absence of coronary artery disease.³⁷

4.1.1 Case Scenario

Mr Smith left for work one morning, and shortly after arriving at his job, his daughter met him with the news that his wife suddenly died at home. Apparently, shortly after Mr Smith left for work, greeting his healthy wife, their daughter dropped off their grandchild. She discovered her mother's body in the bedroom.

Upon hearing the news of his wife's sudden passing, Mr Smith presented with severe chest pain and then lost consciousness. He has a prior history of a heart attack five years previously and received a coronary stent. Presuming that he once again presented with symptoms of an acute myocardial infarction, he was resuscitated at the scene and then transported to hospital after being stabilized.

Upon further testing, the results showed that he has Takotsubo Cardiomyopathy.

Mr Smith seems to have a **type A personality** and does not display his real emotions in front of his loved ones. He finds it **difficult to communicate his feelings**, but when his family left the hospital after visiting hours, upon counselling, he burst out in tears while telling the counsellor about his 30-year marriage. He verbalized that he never shows his real emotions and always keeps to himself. He also told the counsellor that he has feelings of anger at his wife that was never resolved.

37 Bybee, K.A. Dew, M.L. Lawhorn, S.L. Stevens, T.L. (2011), *CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE IN WOMEN ESSENTIALS*, Jones & Bartlett Publishers, MA, USA, p. 105

It is believed that, because Mr Smith never seems to display his actual emotions because of a **fear of rejection**, his internal **stress** levels were always at extreme. The news about his wife's death brought on an extreme reaction, causing acute cardiomyopathy called "Broken Heart Syndrome."

4.2 Peri-partum Cardiomyopathy due to Prolonged Grief and Unforgiveness

Peri-partum³⁸ cardiomyopathy is a rare disorder that occurs in 1 in every 15000 cases in the USA, but it is a potentially fatal complication in puerperium³⁹. The diagnostic criteria include the onset of heart failure in the last month of pregnancy or in the first 5 months post-partum, absence of medically determinable causes of cardiac failure, absence of demonstrable heart disease before the last month of pregnancy, and impairment of left ventricle systolic function as demonstrated by echocardiography.⁴⁰

The physiological cause for peri-partum cardiomyopathy is unknown. Survival is largely dependent on recovery of left ventricle function. Most who show significant recovery of left ventricle function within two months of diagnosis recovers.

Patients who fail to recover within 6 months may require cardiac transplantation. Those who undergo transplantation have a 30% higher rate of rejection than do patients with idiopathic cardiomyopathy, but the survival rate at 2 years is 86%.

4.2.1 Case Scenario

Magda⁴¹ is a 30-year-old mother of three, who presented with perperium cardiomyopathy within the last trimester of pregnancy.

38 Peri-partum – See Terms and Definitions

39 Puerperium – See Terms and Definitions

40 Adams, J.G. (2012), *EMERGENCY MEDICINE: CLINICAL ESSENTIALS*, 2nd Edition, Elsevier Health Sciences, PA, USA, p. 1065

41 All names used in the thesis have been changed to protect for privacy purposes.

After being admitted in Coronary ICU, she showed progressive recovery and within two weeks after the delivery of the baby by caesarean section, was transferred back to the maternity unit for discharge. In six weeks after discharge she returned to the Coronary unit and it seemed that her condition worsened rapidly.

Upon treatment she received counselling where it was discovered that she was also suffering with **symptoms of prolonged unresolved grief** due to her father and brother who was murdered. The police never managed to solve the crime, although the family are sure who the perpetrator was. Although she proclaims to be a born-again Christian, Magda verbalized that she **never managed to forgive** the police or the people possibly responsible for the crime. The whole family situation was worsened by her mother's **inability to cope** and expecting support from Magda. This led to more **stress** in the household.

Although it seems that Magda has a good family support system, her husband is in the military and is often away from home, which brings forth more **stress** and familial responsibilities. Her prolonged hospital stay also worsened the situation, for her three small children were sent between family members to be taken care of.

Magda inevitably needed a heart transplant and was sent to a primary hospital in preparation for the transplant. After several weeks, being put on the priority list for transplantation, she received a donor heart.

Within two weeks after her donor heart was transplanted, she again presented with symptoms of heart failure and also suffered a stroke. It seems that her body was busy **rejecting** the new organ.

It took six months before she could return home to her family, but because of the stroke she suffered she also needed support and rehabilitation.

4.3 Cardiac Failure due to Unresolved Grief

Karin is a lady in her early 40's. She was admitted in the Coronary ICU, presenting with classic symptoms of cardiac failure. No specific cause could be found for developing of cardiac failure during tests and examinations done by the doctors. Her risk factor count for coronary disease was low. Although she is a **smoker**, she has no prior history of cardiac events and her family history shows no risk for females at her age.⁴²

Upon further investigation and counselling, Karin told the counsellor that she is divorced with three children. Her ex-husband used to be very possessive and jealous of other people's attention towards her.

He expected her to stay at a normal weight and fit with a good looking body, so that he would look good next to her. Then he left her suddenly for another woman and told her that it was all her fault. He also **blamed** her for having extramarital affairs, although this was not true. In fact, he was guilty of having an affair.

In the 18 year long marriage, Karin tried to **perform** to keep her husband satisfied, in **fear of his reactions**, but could never live up to his expectations. He always made her feel **guilt and shame**. She displayed a **low self-esteem** and upon interviewing her, it seems that she still cannot manage with the idea of them being divorced, although they have been separated for over three years. Karin shows definite symptoms of **unresolved grief**. It also seems that she is **not able to forgive** him.

4.4 Atrial Fibrillation due to Post-traumatic Stress

4.4.1 Atrial Fibrillation

Atrial fibrillation can be described as an abnormal heart rhythm, which is characterized by rapid and irregular beating. Often it starts as brief periods of abnormal beating, which become longer and possibly constant over time. Occasionally a person may present with heart palpitations, fainting, shortness of breath, or chest pain. The disease increases the risk of heart failure, dementia and stroke.

42 Zoni-Berisso, M; Lercari, F; Carazza, T; Domenicucci, S. (2014), *EPIDEMIOLOGY OF ATRIAL FIBRILLATION: EUROPEAN PERSPECTIVE*, Clinical Epidemiology 6: 213-220.

According to the Mayo Clinic⁴³, the most common cause for atrial fibrillation is abnormalities or damage to the heart's structure. Other possible causes include hypertension, myocardial infarction, coronary artery disease, abnormal heart valves, hormonal or metabolic imbalances, stimulants such as caffeine and tobacco, viral infections, sleep apnoea etc. However, some people who present with atrial fibrillation do not have any heart defects or damage, a condition called lone atrial fibrillation. In lone atrial fibrillation, the cause is often unclear, and serious complications are rare.

4.4.2 Case Scenario

John is a farmer in his early 50's. He leads a healthy lifestyle and has no prior history of cardiac disease. His family history for cardiac disease is also low risk. John was admitted in the Coronary Unit with atrial fibrillation. He has no prior history of this condition and upon testing his blood works, there does not seem to be any clear indication as to a reason for him to present with arrhythmia.

John wanted to find a reason for his condition, but the cardiologist said that with some people it just occurs for **no reason**. Upon counselling, he was asked the question if there is any **unresolved trauma or grief** in his past. He admitted that he was attacked on his farm 6 months previously and he had to shoot the attacker. The person did not die immediately and begged John to help him. The ambulance did not arrive in time to be able to revive the person, and this person died.

John suffers from **occurring dreams** about the man begging for his life. He verbalized that he is **afraid to go to sleep** and that his **apetite is lost**. He also seems **restless**. He never received counselling for this traumatic event and told the counsellor that he just cannot come to a point where he can **forgive himself** for the killing of his attacker. He realizes that he and his family would have been the ones being killed if he did not shoot the perpetrator, but cannot cope with the idea that he killed another human being.

43 MAYO CLINIC – *Atrial Fibrillation*, (1998-2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/atrial-fibrillation/symptoms-causes/dxc-20164936>, [Date Accessed: 7th June 2015]

4.4.3 Case Scenario

Henry is a 63-year-old bank manager who was admitted to the Coronary Unit, presenting with a history of remittent atrial fibrillation for the past two years. Although he is using the medication prescribed, the condition keeps on occurring. Although Henry was in hospital for a mechanical cardio version, which is a short stay admission, he received counselling about his condition.

Henry is leading a stressful life with high demands from his job. During the counselling session, Henry was asked if any specific **stressful events** in his life could be a possible cause for triggering his condition. He then remembered that his arrhythmia started shortly after his manager demanded of him to retrench about 100 employers from their jobs.

This situation placed **immense stress** on Henry and he admitted during the counselling that he is still suffering with **guilt and shame** for his actions, although it was not his decision to let those people go. He felt that he contributed to many families being pushed into poverty especially where the people being fired were the breadwinners in the house.

Ever since the first occurrence of atrial fibrillation, whenever Henry is suffering with **stressful demands**, his condition is triggered.

4.5 Bradycardia due to Yoga Exercises

4.5.1 Bradycardia

Bradycardia can be defined as a heart rate of less than 60 beats per minute in adults. It is not necessarily pathological and needs to be interpreted in light of clinical setting. A heart rate of less than 60bpm may be appropriate for a person sleeping or at rest. Bradycardia is pathological if a person is critically ill with fever and hypotension.

Because a person's cardiac output is a product of the heart rate and stroke volume, bradycardia can lead to a decrease in cardiac output, which can lead to decreased tissue perfusion.

Pathological bradycardia can therefore be defined as a heart rate that is too slow to meet the metabolic demand of the body. The causes for pathological bradycardia can be divided into two categories: sinus node dysfunction and heart block.

Possible causes for pathological bradycardia can include medication, high vagal tone, increased intra-cranial pressure, hypothyroidism, apnoea and hypothermia.

Usually heart blocks at AV node level does not require invasive therapy and only requires withdrawal of offending agents such as beta-blockers or calcium channel blockers. Sometimes infusions with beta-agonist or temporary pacing can be used to support the heart rate until the medication is metabolized or excreted. A permanent pacemaker is almost never needed. However, a heart block below the level of the AV node often causes more permanent symptoms and will need an insertion of a permanent pacemaker.⁴⁴

4.5.2 Yoga

Yoga can be translated from the Sanskrit as a verb defining “**yoke**.” The literal translation in Latin is **jungere**, also a verb but the literal translation defines yoga “**as to join**.”⁴⁵

In an article “The Truth About Yoga” in *Christianity Today* written by Holly Vincente Robaine, (March, 2005)⁴⁶, she tells the story of Laurette Willis, a born-again Christian, who used to follow the New Age Movement because as she states “yoga led her there.”

Willis explains that the goal of all yoga is to obtain oneness with the universe. That is known as the process of enlightenment, or union with Brahman (Hinduism’s highest god).

The goal of yoga is to get the student to a point of total numbness in their minds.

44 Wilson, W.C.; Grande, C.M.; Hoyt, D.B. (2007), *TRAUMA:CRITICAL CARE*, CRC Press, NW, USA, p. 356

45 THE PURSUIT OF YOGA – *Defining Yoga*, [Online] Available From: <http://thepursuitofyoga.com/defining-yoga/>, [Date Accessed: 7th June 2016]

46 Robaine, V.H. *CRISTIANITY TODAY; Today’s Christian Women*, [Online Article] Available From: <http://www.todayschristian-woman.com/articles/2005/march/truth-about-yoga.html?start=3>; March: 2005; The Truth About Yoga, [Date Accessed: 9th June 2016]

This is in contradiction with the Bible where Scripture states that “**do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what is that good and acceptable and perfect will of God.**” (Romans 12:2 NKJV). Scripture also states that the only yoke a person needs to carry is the yoke of Christ, which will bring rest.

“Come to Me, all you who labor and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest. “Take My yoke upon you and learn from Me, for I am gentle and lowly in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. “For My yoke is easy and My burden is light.”

Matthew 11:28-30 (NKJV)

Willis states that, during yoga exercises, subliminal music tapes are being played to help a person empty the mind and to “step out of the body,” meaning to astral project. This poses a serious spiritual danger.

Willis states: “*If there is nothing in your mind, you are open to all kinds of deception. After coming to Christ, I wondered who – or what – came into my body when I ‘stepped out.’*” She further wrote that demonic spirits of fear, depression, lust, false religion etc. oppresses one. All things are done to draw one away from the truth in Jesus Christ.

Willis explains that there are commonly used words and poses antithetical to God’s Word. For example, the word “namaste,” often said at the close of yoga classes, means, “I bow to the god within you.” The sound “ohm,” chanted in many yoga classes, is meant to bring students into a trance so they can join with the universal mind. The “salute to the sun” posture, used at the beginning of most classes, pays homage to the Hindu sun god.

Part of yoga meditation is “meditation on death.” In an online article compiled by Ven. Pende Hawer, “*Death and Dying in the Tibetan Buddhist Tradition*,”(1995),⁴⁷ he explains that the contemplation and meditation on death and impermanence are regarded as very important in Buddhism because it helps one recognize how precious and short life is and also to understand the death process and familiarize one self with it.

47 BUDDHA.NET – Hawthor, P; (1995) – Death and Dying in the Tibetan Buddhist Tradition; [Online] Available From: <http://www.buddhanet.net/deathtib.htm>, [Date Accessed: 9th June 2016]

The Buddhists believe in reincarnation and, because the way in which one lives, the belief goes that the state of one's mind at death directly influences one's future lives, thus, the ritual helps one not to fear or regret the time of death. The person practicing this ritual of yoga and meditation is believed to die in a state of great bliss. There will be no fear nor dread at the time of death.

There are two common meditations on death in the Tibetan tradition. The first concentrates on the imminence of death and what will be of benefit at the time of death, in order to motivate one to make the best use of one's life. The second is a simulation or rehearsal of the actual death process, which familiarizes one with death and takes away the fear of the unknown, thus allowing one to die "skilfully."

This thesis will hypothesise that the breathing and meditation exercises used by Yoga practitioners can possibly bring one to a point of dying. It is widely known that yoga exercises are used to regulate breathing and heart rate, thus, to be at a point where one can control one's own heart rate, it will bring the pace to a point of death, due to a lack of perfusion to the organs. The article mentioned above gives a clear description on how to bring one self to the point where one can die, thus, suicide, not "enlightenment." By practicing these exercises, one opens the door for the spirit of death to enter one's body.

This is contrary to the Word of God and God's plan for a person's life. It is the belief of this thesis that God will determine the course of one's life, which is a life of abundance and joy.

4.5.3 Spirit of Death

"The thief does not come except to steal, and to kill, and to destroy. I have come that they may have life, and that they may have it more abundantly.

John 10:10 (NKJV)

A spirit of death is a demonic spirit with the intention to kill, steal and destroy. It murders hopes, dreams, plans and life. It may have entered one's family bloodline through infirmities, victimization, suicidal thoughts or abusive violence.

Satan has an agenda to kill the purposes of God's children. He cannot have a believer in eternity, so he attempts to kill one's abundant life in Christ.⁴⁸

4.5.4 Case Scenario

Mary is a young, fit and healthy female with a profession in marketing. She presented with fainting spells, which got worse over time and she was admitted for further testing to determine the cause. Upon examination it was discovered that Mary's heart rate was 30 – 40 beats per minute and she was transferred to the Coronary Unit for further testing.

When placed on the cardiac monitor Mary presented with a third degree heart block of which the specific cause could not be determined. She was not using any agents, which could cause the problem, nor does she present with a family history of sick sinus syndrome. Mary is also not in the range for risk of coronary disease and she is fit and healthy and does not smoke.

Upon counselling, it was discovered that Mary did attend a Yoga class at least four to five times per week and was training to become a Yoga instructor. From a spiritual viewpoint, the counsellor realized that the Yoga could be the possible cause for the heart condition. As discussed, the yoga meditation opens one's life for the spirit of death to enter and to bring one's metabolic rate to a state not sustainable for the body. Mary was counselled about the spiritual risks for doing Yoga but was not in agreement with the counsellor.

Mary inevitable needed an insertion of a permanent pacemaker to be able to sustain a normal heart rate. She will have to return to hospital every 8 to 12 years for a replacement of the pacemaker battery.

48 ABOVE AND BEYOND CHRISTIAN COUNSELLING – *The Spirit of Death Works to Complete its Assignment*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://aandbcounseling.com/a-spirit-of-death-works-to-complete-its-assignment/>, [Date Accessed: 9th June 2016]

She also needs chronic medication for prevention of blood clots and arrhythmia.

5. SPIRITUAL COUNSELLING AND DELIVERANCE

5.1 Introduction to Spiritual Counselling and Deliverance

Puchalski⁴⁹ comments in the article “*The Role of Spirituality in Health Care*,” (2001: 352-257) that the technological advances of the past century tended to change the focus of medicine from a caring, service oriented model to a technological, cure-oriented model. The advances in technology led to phenomenal advances in medicine and have given people the ability to prolong life. There is evidence though, that spiritual or compassionate care needs to be recognized as part of health care.

Spiritual or compassionate care involves serving the whole person, that is, the physical, emotional, social and spiritual.

Presently, the effect of spirituality on health is an area of active research. Besides being studied by scholars from the different medical fields, it is also studied by scholars of psychology and other fields of profession such as theology and philosophy.

Helping, fixing, and serving represent three different ways of seeing life. When you help, you see life as weak. When you fix, you see life as broken. When you serve, you see life as whole. Fixing and helping may be the work of the ego, and service the work of the soul. (Remen: 1997)⁵⁰

This is also the reason of interest, which led to the research of this thesis. In the field of medicine, many things occur that cannot be explained by the different schools of medicine and can only be ascribed to something other than the human body's response to disease and injury.

⁴⁹ Puchalski, C.M. MD, MS, *The Role of Spirituality in Health Care*, Proc (Bayl Univ Med Cent). 2001 October; 14(4): 352-357[Online Article]Available From: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC1305900/>; [Date Accessed: 9th June 2016]

⁵⁰ Remen R.N. (1997), *KITCHEN TABLE WISDOM: STORIES THAT HEAL*, Riverhead Books, NY, USA

As discussed in previous chapters, in Biblical studies one finds that all physical aspects of the body can be ascribed to the spiritual, for man was made as a spirit, soul and body.^{51, 52}

A research study is presently being conducted through the Sapphire Leadership Group under leadership of Arthur Burk⁵³, in partnership with the author of this thesis. The study called “Deliverance of the Heart,” aims to find evidence that the spiritual aspects pertaining to the Kingdom of God, as well as the kingdom of darkness, and the implications there of, has an impact on the physical heart and heart health of a person. Although this study is still in the beginning stages, evidence has already emerged, offering definite proof that certain spiritual aspects can influence and affect the physical heart in all its different functions. This is measurable through ECG examinations done while the case subjects undergo spiritual counselling and deliverance.

From this information some of the evidence-based case studies will be proposed for the purpose of examination and to follow up on changes in future. It will also serve as a purpose to offer the suggestion that this is a field that needs to be studied much wider and more in-depth from different medical, sociological, psychological and theological schools of research.

This research study not only involves physical aspects of the heart being addressed, but it also involves in depth Holy Spirit led counselling and deliverance with cause and effect, thus, the case subjects who volunteers for the study needs to commit for an extended period of time, for healing through counselling and deliverance is a process which can only be done in God’s perfect timing.

This thesis will hold the opinion that all healing done through Spirit filled counselling needs to be done in God’s perfect time for the person’s life. Satan, who is the enemy, will put in every effort to prevent a person from becoming whole and healed to be able to walk in their full Birthright. If the enemy cannot prevent a person from achieving this, he will try and push the person to try and walk into their God ordained calling prematurely.

51 See 1 Thessalonians 5:23

52 See Psalm 139

53 SAPPHIRE LEADERSHIP GROUP; Available From: <https://theslg.com/>

Any premature birth leads to a child that is weak and not thriving, as it should. It takes up resources unnecessarily, which could be applied for other aspects that it was meant for. It often dies prematurely, without reaching its full potential.

The following examples in the research will offer not only the cause and result of the different heart afflictions, but will also offer an in depth discussion about the spiritual entities addressed during the healing and deliverance practice.

This thesis holds the opinion that Satan and his hordes are real and will put in every effort to prevent humans from attaining their God ordained Birthright and achieves intimacy with God. This is done through deception, theft and murder and will affect a person in the spirit, soul and body. One needs to acknowledge that the enemy is real and all believers should know their enemy to be able to understand their authority over Satan. Scripture teaches that God's people are being destroyed due to a lack of knowledge. It also states that people's ignorance; because they reject God's knowledge given to them, will cause them to not be able to achieve intimacy with Him, for He will also reject the people.

My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge. Because you have rejected knowledge, I also will reject you from being priest for Me; Because you have forgotten the law of your God, I also will forget your children.

Hosea 4:6 (NKJV)

6. CURSES AFFECTING THE BLOODLINES

6.1 Hearts of the Fathers

and he said to them: "Set your hearts on all the words which I testify among you today, which you shall command your children to be careful to observe--all the words of this law. "For it is not a futile thing for you, because it is your life, and by this word you shall prolong your days in the land which you cross over the Jordan to possess."

Deuteronomy 32:46-47n(NKJV)

In turning the hearts of the fathers to their children, the fathers need to be shown that teaching their children Christ's commands is important, because it is their children's life and will prolong their days as stated in the verse above.

The fear of the Lord and the knowledge of God comes when the heart of a child is turned towards his father and he listens to his father's instructions as written in Proverbs 2:2 "**So that you incline your ear to wisdom, And apply your heart to understanding.**"

The Ten Commandments states that one should honour one's father and mother. The result is a longer life and success in life. In Proverbs 3:1-2 is stated "**My son, do not forget my law, But let your heart keep my commands; For length of days and long life And peace they will add to you.**" (NKJV)

The key to lasting revival is the turning of the hearts of the fathers to the children. The fathers should instruct the children and grandchildren in the ways of God's Word.

God's love is passed on from generation to generation, and God warns of severe punishment if the hearts of the fathers are not turned to the children and children to the fathers. In Malachi 4:6 one reads that He will "**smite the earth with a curse.**" This gives a clear indication of how important it is for God that the fathers and children's hearts need to be turned toward each other.⁵⁴

6.2 Defining Curses

The Merriam-Webster Dictionary⁵⁵ defines a curse as:

- a prayer or invocation for harm or injury to come upon one
- something that is cursed or accursed
- evil or misfortune that comes as if in response to imprecation or as retribution
- a cause of great harm or misfortune

54 BIBLICAL RESEARCH REPORTS – How to Turn the Hearts of the Fathers to their Children [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblicalresearchreports.com/turnheartsfathers.php>, [Date Accessed: 23rd July 2016]

55 MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY – *Curse*, (2016) [Online] Available From: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/curse>, [Date Accessed: 22nd July 2016]

The Holman's Bible Dictionary⁵⁶ explains that "**cursing**" is less frequently used in the Bible than is "**blessing**." An early word for "**curse**" in the Old Testament is '**arar**' (Strong's: H779)⁵⁷ which is used in Genesis 12:3 in the call of Abraham, "**and curse him that curseth thee.**" In Deuteronomy, blessing and cursing are contrasted (Deuteronomy 27:15-26; Deuteronomy 28:16-19).

In Malachi 2:2 the same word refers to cursing the priests.

If you will not hear, And if you will not take it to heart, To give glory to My name," Says the LORD of hosts, "I will send a curse upon you, And I will curse your blessings. Yes, I have cursed them already, Because you do not take it to heart.

Malachi 2:2 (NKJV)

Another word used in the Old Testament for "**curse**" is "**qalal**" (Strong's: H7034), meaning, "**to be causative, to make light, insignificant, bring into contempt.**"⁵⁸ It describes persons lightly esteemed (2 Samuel 6:22) and also means "**to make contemptible**," hence, to curse a person (Genesis 12:3; Exodus 21:17). The word also means to treat with contempt or to dishonour (Isaiah 8:21).

Both blessing and cursing assumed unique power in Israel's life as they were taken into the context of worship.

6.3 Generational Curses

Marilyn Hickey⁵⁹ defines a generational curse as: "**an unclean iniquity that increases in strength from one generation to the next, affecting the members of that family and all who come into relationship with that family.**"

56 STUDYLIGHT.ORG – Holman's Bible Dictionary – *Blessing and Cursing* (2001-2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.studylight.org/dictionaries/hbd/view.cgi?number=T977>, [Date Accessed: 21st July 2016]

57 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance (2016) [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong's=H779&t=NKJV>, [Date Accessed: 21st July 2016]

58 BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance (2016), [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?Strong's=H7043&t=NKJV>, [Date Accessed: 21st July 2016]

59 Hickey, M. (1987), *BREAKING GENERATIONAL CURSES*, Okalahoma, USA, Harrison House, p. 24

6.4 Bloodlines

A bloodline can be defined as the direct line of descent or pedigree. A child will have the same bloodline as the biological father and mother through whom the child was conceived. There are many who define the bloodlines by referring to the forefathers. Bloodlines are created through conception and do not refer to the physical blood that has been transferred from the parents to the child.

It is clear throughout Scriptures that God is a generational God. All God's motives for man He does with one's generation in mind. Every warning and commandment in the Bible is for the protection of the generations. Thus, heritage and families are very important to God.⁶⁰

6.5 Types of Curses and Reasons for Curses

The different types of curses are as follows:

- Curses from God for the purpose of gaining the person's attention and causing one to turn from one's evil ways, turn to God and purify one's life.
- Curses from Satan and his servants with the legal right to curse.
- Curses from Satan and his servants without the legal right to curse.
- Curses from man – man speaks either life or death. Man can curse himself or another party.

Curses from Satan and his hordes are done for the purpose of causing injury, loss, destruction and often death.

6.6 Duration, Effect and Fruit of Curses

- Curse of idol worship extend to the third and fourth generation as stated in Exodus 5:5-6 ***"you shall not bow down to them nor serve them. For I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children to the third and fourth generations of those who hate Me, but showing mercy to thousands, to those who love Me and keep My commandments."***

⁶⁰ BLOODLINES – *Bloodlines*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.bloodlines.co.za/articles/spiritual-roots-of-physical-illness-es-and-diseases.html>, [Date Accessed: 23rd July 2016]

- The curse of the bastard extends to the tenth generation of one's descendants according to Deuteronomy 23:2 ***“One of illegitimate birth shall not enter the assembly of the LORD; even to the tenth generation none of his descendants shall enter the assembly of the LORD.”***
- In Deuteronomy 28 one reads that blessings are for obeying God's Word and curses are for disobeying the Word.

Hypothetically every generation involved in sin becomes the first generation of the curse causing a snowball effect and the “four generations” can turn into twenty generations. Demons can be transferred through the bloodlines, causing diseases due to legal rights given by people's sin.

The argument of many Biblical scholars and Christians are that when a person becomes born-again, one becomes a new creation and the power of evil things from one's ancestors are broken and made ineffective through the cross and Blood of Jesus. A false doctrine is that one can no longer be bound by the forefathers' sins or their sickness. This thesis is of opinion that this reasoning will only open the door to more generational curses.

Satan uses this false doctrine to keep people from breakthrough and healing and to keep a person and their ancestors in bondage. Jesus died on the cross for all people's transgressions, iniquities and sins. His blood gives authority over sin and over all the power of the enemy, but a person still needs to come to Him in humility and repent of the sins and accept His forgiveness in return.

“And he said to him, ‘Well done, good servant; because you were faithful in a very little, have authority over ten cities.’

Luke 19:17 (NKJV)

7. CURSES THAT BLOCK BLESSINGS OVER GENERATIONS

Larry Huch in the book “*10 Curses That Block the Blessing*” (Whitaker House:2006)⁶¹ summarizes the different curses which blocks a person’s blessings, for one self and generations to follow, which prevents a person from walking in God’s righteousness. One needs a change of heart for curses to be broken. All “bad seed” needs to be removed from one’s heart and replaced with “good seed” as Jesus taught.

CURSE	SCRIPTURE	CAUSE AND EFFECT	CANCELLING CURSE
The Curse of Spoken Words	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Proverbs 18:21 - Proverbs 17:17 - Hebrews 4:12 - Hebrews 11:11 - Matthew 9:29 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Words spoken over self and others - Positive faith releases blessings, negative faith releases curses. - Satan uses a person’s words against the person to bring a curse over the person 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Cancel the curse of negative words by speaking the promise of God’s positive words. - Align words with the Word of God - Speak life and prosperity over things and children. - Jesus is the Chief Intercessor in God’s courtroom – don’t give Satan arsenal.
Gossip (Loshon Hora) Evil Speaking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Proverbs 18:21 - Proverbs 13:2-3 - Micah 7:5 - Romans 1:29-32 - 2 Corinthians 12:20 - Psalm 15:1-3 - Exodus 23:1 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Gossip and Backbiting. - Slandering - Listening to gossip, backbiting and slander. - Murdering other people’s reputation. - Can cause sickness and disease (Deut. 24:8) - Slandering is compared to idolatry (Prov. 6:16-19) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Stop cursing through gossiping - Do not be deceived (Gal. 6:7) - People studying God’s Word has a bigger obligation to guard one’s speech.

⁶¹ Huch, L. (2006), *10 CURSES THAT BLOCK THE BLESSING*, TX, USA, Whitaker House

Idolatry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Malachi 2:2 - Jeremiah 17:5 - Acts 10:25-26 - Revelations 19:10 - Matthew 22:37 - 1 Corinthians 3:13 - Psalm 115:8 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - A person's heart is not aligned with God's heart. - Idolatry gets covered up through spirit of religion - Hardness of heart. - Stiff necked - Cannot grow in faith - Affects generations - Hinders generations to witness Christ - Prevents baptism in Holy Spirit and speaking in tongues - Blocks spiritual perception through eyes and ears - Affects whole body 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Confessing idolatry for previous generations and self - Humble self in front of God - Find answers from God and not from man - Only worship God - Allow God to expose one's heart for what is inside - Let go of religious practices
Not Tithing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 3 John 2 - Luke 6:38 - Exodus 12:35-36 - Proverbs 13:21 - Hosea 4:6 - Psalm 73:1-17 - James 5:1-7 - Haggai 2:9 - Proverbs 10:22 - Jeremiah 5:24 - Hosea 6:3 - Joel 2:23 - 1 Timothy 6:10 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Lack of knowledge or understanding of money according to Bible - Not understanding God's prosperity for a person - Poverty is part of curse - Not believing that a Christian is allowed to prosper financially - Believing that Jesus was poor on earth. - Defrauding others - Not paying labourers what they are due - Withholding from paying debts - Not claiming back that which was stolen from a person or their ancestors 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Father God owns everything and it is His good pleasure to give to His children. - Break free from slavery - Do not love money more than God - Claim back everything that was stolen by Satan from all previous generations and self. - "As man thinks in His heart so is he" (Proverbs 23:7) - Understand that poverty, lack and debt are not part of God's plan for His children. - Give all first fruit of labour to God and His Kingdom. - By blood of Jesus caused by thorn crown breaks curse of poverty – one need to claim this.

Witchcraft (Pharmacea) (Spell giving/cursing)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Galatians 3:1 - Galatians 5:19-21 - Mark 11 - Matthew 16:19 - 1 Corinthians 14:3-4 - Jeremiah 23:32 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - "Binds up" life, ministry, finances, marriage, health, prosperity etc. - Blocks growth - Prevents God's will to occur in one's life. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Bless Children, don't curse them. - Pray daily, breaking curses spoken over one or one's family
Harm to the Innocent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Proverbs 6:16-19 - Psalm 10:1, 7-8 - Psalm 106:37-38 - Exodus 34:7 - Lamentations 5:7 - Psalm 51:5 - Deuteronomy 27:25 - Psalm 15:1-5 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Shedding innocent blood (abortions) - Wishing harm towards others. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Break curse by the innocent blood of Jesus - James 5:16 - Sowing in the Spirit not in the flesh (Galatians 6:7-8)
Unforgiveness	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Matthew 6:15 - Ephesians 4:26-28 - Ephesians 4:30-32 - John 10:10 - Matthew 6:9-13 - Lamentations 3:22-23 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Unforgiveness is destructive - It destroys families, lives and futures. - It destroys all that is good and Godly. - It stifles potential and suffocates relationships. - It causes vision to be impaired and ears to be dull. - It hardens the heart and works internally, opening up doors to sickness and disease. - Hinders one's prayer life. - It brings a curse on one's finances (Matthew 23) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Repentance and forgiveness disposes of bitterness and anger. - If Jesus can hang on a cross, stripped, beaten and humiliated, but can still ask the Father to forgive the people, then who is a person to withhold forgiveness?¹ - Every morning one should pray: "Forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors..." (see Matthew 6:9-13).

Racism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Matthew 12:25 - John 13:34-35 - Mark 16:15-18 - Mark 3:24 - 1 Corinthians 13:12 - John 15:7-12 - Matthew 22:35-40 - 1 John 4:20-21 - 1 John 2:4 - John 8:31-32 - Genesis 12:1-3 - Zachariah 2:8-9 - Romans 11:17-18 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Not showing love to one another - Not keeping God's commandments – will be unable to abide in His love. - Displaying love through works and not through grace - If one does not abide in Him, He will not abide in the person - Persecution of Jews in bloodlines and presently brings a curse - Anti-semitism 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Display God's love towards others - Keeping God's commandments will keep people abiding in His love and experience God's power and blessing - Live by grace and not by works - Know the truth which sets one free - Abide in Him - Psalm 133:1-3 - Ephesians 2:12, 19
Legalism vs. The Law	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Philippians 2:12-13 - 2 Corinthians 3:18 - Galatians 3:13-14 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Trying to earn approval from God through works. - Not following the law, cancelling the law out 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Accepting that the law is there to bring freedom and not bind a person. - Accepting God's unconditional grace through Jesus Christ's redemptive work.
Failing to Honour Your Father and Mother	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Ephesians 6:1-3 - Exodus 20:12 - Malachi 4:6 - Ephesians 6:4 - John 19:25-27 - Hebrews 13:17 - Galatians 6:7 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - It will not "go well with you." - Lack in prosperity - Premature death - If fathers do not bring up children in the way of the Lord, then children will become separated from God. - One will not be able to "live long on the land." - Not feel accepted by the "land." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - One does not have to love one's parents, but they need to be honoured. - Honouring the Father God. - Bring up children in the way of the Lord - Be an honourable parent. - Show respect to earn respect.

8. METHODS TO BREAKING GENERATIONAL CURSES

It is possible to break curses that are brought over from generation to generation according to Huch.⁶²

62 CHARISMA MAGAZINE; Larry Huch – *9 Ways to Break Generational Curses*; [Date Published: 16th October 2014], [Online] Available From: <http://www.charismamag.com/spirit/spiritual-warfare/16463-9-ways-to-break-generational-curses>, [Date Accessed: 25th July 2016]

8.1 Recognize the Curse

In order to get set free and stay free; one has to admit one has a problem. As simple as it might sound, people live in a day and age of denial. No matter what has happened to a person, each person is responsible for the choices and decisions one makes. If one really wants to be free, one will accept that responsibility.

8.2 Break the Curse

As one applies God's Word and the power of one's life, and as one chooses to walk in righteousness and obedience to God, the chains of bondage will be broken. There are three steps to breaking generational curses.

Give one's life to Jesus. The blood of Jesus removes one's sin. (1 John 1:7)

Fight the Battle with spiritual weapons such as the Word of God and putting on the armour of God daily. (Ephesians 6:10-17)

Regain control over the power of one's will. When Jesus shed His blood, He bought back one's willpower. Through the blood of Jesus, one can say no. (Deuteronomy 30: 19-20; Matthew 22:37)

8.3 Reverse the Curse

There are three keys one can use to reverse the curse and live in victory:

- Recognize one's enemy. People battle not with flesh and blood. The enemy is Satan, and the battle is a spiritual battle. (Ephesians 6:12)
- Forgive people who caused hurt in one's life. (Matthew 6:14-15)
- Treat causes not symptoms, for example, insecurity, jealousy and fear.

8.4 Release the Power of Love

To become a person whose life is transformed by the love of God one must not only get rid of what holds one captive and keeps one in bondage, but one must also be filled up with love for God, or self and for others. Unconditional love will release blessing. To know more of the love of God in one's life, love those who have hurt one, those who have opposed one and those who have sinned against one.

8.5 Develop a Godly Attitude

A good attitude does not make everything go perfectly all the time. Matthew 5:45 states "... ***He makes His sun rise on the evil and on the good, and sends rain on the just and on the unjust.***" One's attitude determines whether the rain will water seeds of one's harvest or wash those seeds away. One needs to seriously adjust one's attitude into alignment with His Word, having faith and trust in Him.

8.6 Align one's Words with God's Words

One's words give evidence of one's faith, and they should reflect God's good purposes for one. A person should exchange one's negative words for positive words, and exchange one's negative thoughts for positive thoughts, and exchange one's negative actions for positive actions.

8.7 Accept God's Acceptance

Jesus did not come to condemn people or punish people. He came to give one hope that one's life really can be different. One does not have to live under the burdens of pain, hurt, shame or sorrow. All the power in heaven is available to one to set one free from every chain that binds one.

8.8 Walk in Obedience

In order to break free from the curses and walk in freedom, one must learn to walk in obedience to God's ways. One does not have to be perfect or without mistakes, but one's heart needs to be surrendered and pliable toward God. One needs to be moving forward in things of God every day of one's life. The decisions made presently will affect one's future.

8.9 Prayer for Breaking Curses

Father, I cancel and break every curse of witchcraft. I come to You right now, in the name of Jesus. I break every curse that was spoken over _____ in Jesus' name. I also break every curse over myself and my family that I have spoken, in the name and by the blood of Jesus Christ. I claim that not only is the curse broken, but reversed, in Jesus' name. I proclaim right now I am free of every curse.

9. PHYSICAL GENERATIONAL CARDIAC CONDITIONS

Inherited heart diseases can affect more than one person in a single family. Also, many types of muscular dystrophy involve the heart. The John's Hopkins Heart and Vascular Institute for Inherited Heart Diseases⁶³ summarize the different familial conditions that can affect the heart.

Hypothetically, this is a good indication of spiritual bloodline curses being carried forward through generations, which manifests in a physical sense.

9.1 Inherited Conditions

- Arrhythmogenic Right Ventricular Dysplasia (ARVD)
- Brugada Syndrome
- Cardiac Amyloidosis
- Cardiac Myxoma

⁶³ JOHN'S HOPKINS MEDICINE – Heart and Vascular Institute (2016) [Online] Available From: http://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/heart_vascular_institute/clinical_services/specialty_areas/center_inherited_heart_diseases.html, [Date Accessed: 7th August 2016]

- Familial Dilated Cardiomyopathy
- Familial Valvular Heart Disease
- Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy
- Long QT Syndrome
- Loeyz-Dietz Syndrome
- Marfan Syndrome
- Noncompaction Cardiomyopathy

Most inherited heart conditions can affect people at any age.

10. SPIRITUAL ENTITIES POSSIBLY AFFECTING THE HEART

For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.

Ephesians 6:12 (NKJV)

10.1 Leviathan

The Leviathan is one of Satan's principalities. He is seen as the prince from the West. He is a water spirit with many heads.

The Strong's Hebrew definition of Leviathan (Strong's: 3882)⁶⁴:

- **Sea monster**, dragon
- **Large aquatic animal**
- Some think it is a crocodile but from the description in Job 1, it is patently absurd. It appears to be a large fire-breathing animal of some sort.
-
-
-

⁶⁴ BLUE LETTER BIBLE – Strong's Concordance – Leviathan, [Online] Available From: <https://www.blueletterbible.org/lang/lexicon/lexicon.cfm?t=kjv&strongs=h3882>, [Date Accessed: 10th June 2016]

Leviathan's Hebrew name means twisted and he does what he was named after.

The Easton Bible Dictionary⁶⁵ defines the Leviathan as a transliterated Hebrew word, meaning "twisted," and "coiled." In Job 3:8, it denotes the dragon which, according to Eastern tradition, is an enemy of light.

In Job 41:1 it refers to a crocodile and in Psalm 104:26 it denotes to any large animal that moves by writhing or wriggling the body.

This word is also used figuratively for a cruel enemy, as some think "*the Egyptian host, crushed by the divine power, and cast on the shores of the Red Sea*" as stated in Psalm 74:14.

In Isaiah 27:1 the word "leviathan" may probably denote the two empires, the Assyrian and the Babylonian.

In Revelation 17:15 states: "***Then he said to me, 'The waters which you saw, where the harlot sits, are peoples, multitudes, nations, and tongues.' Thus, the Leviathan plays within the sea of humanity.***"

From Scripture one learns that God as the Creator of Leviathan also provides for it. As seen in Psalm 74:10-15, it can only be destroyed by God Himself.

Dr. Paula Price⁶⁶ describes the Leviathan as a coiled animal. The word specifically means "a coiled one given in union by covenant." It is also described as "to join oneself to another." This implies that Leviathan is the binding force that binds things together in a demonic sense.

The Leviathan discourse of Job 41 allegorically depicts a sphere of spiritual power and human experience where pride rules as the Leviathan ruler over the children of pride.

65 BIBLE STUDY TOOLS – Easton's Bible Dictionary – Leviathan, [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionary/leviathan/>, [Date Accessed: 14th June 2016]

66 Price, P.A. (2006), *THE PROPHETS DICTIONARY*, Whitaker House, New Kensington, PA, pp. 308-309

False religion, illusion and delusion are accompanying features of this creature's power. Dinosaurs, lizards and crocodiles are other forms of this menacing, seductive being.

Dr. Connie Brand⁶⁷ adds to this description of Leviathan by stating that Leviathan's main attack on people is to confuse them about their purpose and to twist the truth. The spirit is clouding the mind causing difficulty to discern and focus on the truth. It is a luciferian spirit and is cold-blooded and fearless.

It is also known as the spirit of **abort of all life**, health and prosperity, marriage, friendship, true sexuality, finances, love, faith, calling, etc. It causes people to show no repentance, but a **hardened heart** that is cold and without emotion. **A fleshly heart is absent.**

People with a leviathan spirit operate with a **heart of stone**; they have difficulty to show any emotions. In the spirit realm the person's emotions is literally put into a bag. It operates in closeness with the python spirit, which coiled around a person in the spiritual realm, suffocating the person from life.

Certain Jewish legends consider Leviathan as an androgynous dragon that seduces Eve in his male form and Adam in his female form. The Jezebel spirit is in close working with the prince of the West.

Burk⁶⁸ differs in opinion about most scholars' description about Leviathan. He states that, although, for most, the name brings up images of dark power and deep bondage, but Scripture clearly indicates that God designed Leviathan to bring joy. Initially Leviathan was pronounced good by God on the fifth day of creation, and received the first blessing God spoke over His creation.

It is true that there are seven evil heads of Leviathan which are a perversion of the original design, and that this dark power does do immense damage to people's lives, but there are

67 Brand, Connie, M.J. PhD (1995), *GEESTELIKE OORLOGVOERING: SATAN SE STRUKTUUR EN STRATEGIE*, Râdâh Bediening, Unpublished, Pretoria, SA, p. 24

68 Burk, A. (2010) Audio Album; *JOY UNSTOPPABLE: LEVIATHAN*; CA, USA, Sapphire Leadership Group, Inc.

seven righteous heads of Leviathan that one needs to embrace, which are accessible to people as they walk out the appropriate principles.

If the negative characteristics of the different heads of Leviathan manifests in a person's life, then there is a clear violation of God's principles in the person's life. If a person incarnates God's principles, then one will be able to function in the positive, righteous side.

In the Bible is written that God formed Leviathan to frolic in the sea. This sounds joyous, thus, people walking in the negative characteristics will not be able to experience joy in life.

One should find joy in God's work and Creation and not concentrate on what the devil does.⁶⁹

10.2 The Seven Heads of Leviathan

The seven heads of Leviathan are found in Proverbs 6:16-19 "***These six things the LORD hates, Yes, seven are an abomination to Him: A proud look, A lying tongue, Hands that shed innocent blood, A heart that devises wicked plans, Feet that are swift in running to evil, A false witness who speaks lies, And one who sows discord among brethren.***"

This is related to Revelation 12:3 where a reference is made to "***a great, fiery red dragon having seven heads and ten horns, and seven diadems on his heads.***"

The end of Leviathan is described in Psalm 74.

You divided the sea by Your strength; You broke the heads of the sea serpents in the waters. You broke the heads of Leviathan in pieces, And gave him as food to the people inhabiting the wilderness.

Psalm 74:13-14 (NKJV)

⁶⁹ Ibid

Arthur Burk explains the different manifestations of Leviathan's heads on his audio series "Joy Unstoppable." (Sapphire Leadership Group: 2010)⁷⁰ In summary it is as follows:

HEAD OF LEVIATHAN	NEGATIVE MANIFESTATION	CAUSE FOR THE CURSE	TURNING CURSE INTO BLESSING
First Head	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Breakdown in communication - Communication gets distorted or messages are not being delivered - Trouble with logistics 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Root sin is failing to do God's things a person is supposed to do in this time. - Greed - Getting more emotional gratification from something else. - Avoiding emotional pain from doing task 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Be obedient in Kingdom work God has assigned.
Second Head	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Weather or water - Devouring in transition and movement - Transportation problems - Difficulty in changing jobs etc. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Relying and trusting in one's own competence 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Accept assignments from God to do impossible. - Experiencing God making a way where there is none. - Living peacefully - God goes before a person and makes the way
Third Head	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Entropy - Devouring is evident - Problems with electronics, which leads to devouring time and money. - Broken communication, broken relationships, anxiety - Projects don't get completed on time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Remaining in a safe zone - Not taking risks - Finding security in worldly things and people instead of God. - Fear - Parents trying to be "savior" figure for children, not allowing them to take risks. - Also manifests if children allow parents to be protector instead of taking risks. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Decay in nature is radically reduced (Israelites' clothes and shoes never wore out in desert) - Curse breaks when one takes responsibility - Imposing responsibility on next generation, spiritual and physical. - Lay down saviour role and stop being God. - Daily prayer, Father in heaven, Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven

⁷⁰ Burk, A. (2010), Audio Series, *JOY UNSTOPPABLE*, Anaheim, CA, Sapphire Leadership Group Inc.

Fourth Head	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Time Devouring - Cannot show anything for effort although a lot of time were spent on project - Feels like God is pushing too hard or not giving enough. - Feels like God is not impressed with efforts done. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Root sin is trying to do God's work through works instead of obedience and passion for God. - Holiness is driven by duty instead of love for God. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Time is multiplied - Accomplishing far more than expected in specific time frame. - To turn this curse around one should walk in passion for holiness, not obedience. - Time will be blessed and one will accomplish much more in a shorter period of time.
Fifth Head	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Devouring of electric current and warping of sound. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Spirit of religion - Religion puts God in a formula 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Sound of heaven is like tuning fork and nature comes together at cellular level. - Honouring God in His righteous flow like Elijah did. - Curse can be overcome when one passionately defends God's reputation. - Also walking in instant obedience to God's Spirit promptings.
Sixth Head	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Motion, fluidity and synchronization. - Deterioration instead of durability of one's resources. - Tangible resources wear out faster than normal with clear demonic manifestation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The root sin is the failure to love and steward the land. - Some people just live on the land while other people love the land. - Inattention to land speeds up deterioration. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Love and steward land. - God placed great treasures in the land and He wants righteous, intimate relationship between man and the earth on which one lives. Jeremiah 12:11 states "... The whole land is made desolate, Because no one takes it to heart."

Seventh Head	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Essence - Combination of all previous six heads - Connection between God, man and nature. - Lack of vitality - No hunger for spiritual things. - No desire for God - People seem to be good Christians, attending church etc. but does it to gain and not to give. - Completely dependent on others for spiritual experiences. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Breaking of connection between God, man and nature. - People being high maintenance - Self worship - Pharmacea 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Learn to unpack beauty in one's spirit, which God placed there. - Acknowledge greatness God has placed inside one's heart. - Do not follow after other people's experiences, but find own divine experiences God has planned.
---------------------	---	---	---

11. THE JEZEBEL SPIRIT

"Nevertheless I have a few things against you, because you allow that woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess, to teach and seduce My servants to commit sexual immorality and eat things sacrificed to idols. "And I gave her time to repent of her sexual immorality, and she did not repent. "Indeed I will cast her into a sickbed, and those who commit adultery with her into great tribulation, unless they repent of their deeds. "I will kill her children with death, and all the churches shall know that I am He who searches the minds and hearts. And I will give to each one of you according to your works.

Revelations 2:20-23 (NKJV)

Jezebel is a water spirit and although this spirit cooperates with all princes of darkness, it especially operates with Leviathan. The Jezebel spirit operates in witchcraft. There are five main powers through which Jezebel operates to make it a fearless, cold-blooded spirit that does not tremble in the face of anything or anyone. It is intimidating, seducing, beguiling, dominating and controlling in its power. The Bible talks about Jezebel⁷¹ in various places and also describes the incidents where it operates through this fearless, intimidating powers to kill people off, especially the anointed of God.

⁷¹ See 1 Kings 16:31; 1 kings 18, 19 and 21; 2 kings 9; Revelations 2:20

The prophet Elijah, mentioned in 1 Kings 19, ran away when Jezebel heard of his slaying of Baal prophets. He was severely intimidated by fear and God had to reassure him of His Greatness and Power. In the New Testament this spirit intimidated John the Baptist and Peter. Peter refused to admit that he knew Jesus,⁷² because he feared for his life. John the Baptist preached repentance of sins and saw with his own eyes the Lamb of God and baptized Him, but when he was thrown into prison, he got confused and unsure of the mighty works of Christ and had to enquire through the disciples about this Man. The spirit of intimidation and fear of Jezebel influenced John⁷³ and is eventually beheaded by Herod.

Jezebel controls, dominates and intimidates. The spirit initially sympathizes with its victim. The intention of this spirit is to create some bond or tie between it and the victim. This spirit is very good at probing and it will circle around its victim, asking questions to try to find an open door to the person's heart and form a bond.

It will look for hurts, wounds, confusion, pain, fear or anything it can latch onto. The person starts to submit to this spirit entity and gets caught in the spider web. The Jezebel is also a good teacher and will explain and confirm all the reasoning coming from a person. The only truth that should be spoken is the truth about Jesus Christ, for this is the only truth that will set one free.

The person starts to draw their strength from Jezebel instead of Jesus and becomes hard-hearted towards God. The person then becomes ensnared in the controlling spider web.⁷⁴

Jezebel desires to deceive the self-deceived! Self-deception gives the spirit of Jezebel unwarranted access into one's life. The person deceives oneself before Jezebel even deceives the person. Self-deception is a battle within one's own mind and a **war within one's own heart**. It is that battle against flesh and blood that is part of the war to keep one's heart of flesh so the Holy Spirit can lead and guide one instead of the person leading the self.

⁷² See Luke 22:31; 54-61

⁷³ See Matthew 3; 11:2-4; 14; 14:10

⁷⁴ THE BIBLICAL JEZEBEL, QUEEN OF ISRAEL AND HIGH PRIESTESS OF BAAL AND ASHTORETH, (October 2009), [Online] Available From: <https://1phil4everyill.wordpress.com/2009/10/21/i-the-biblical-jezebel-queen-of-israel-and-high-priestess-of-baal-and-ashtoreth/>, [Date Accessed: 9th August 2016]

It is not biblical for a person to lead his or her own heart. Instead, people are instructed to “**guard their hearts.**”⁷⁵

The only weapon against the Jezebel spirit is to slay it by Holy Spirit guided prayer and deliverance through faith in the Blood of the Lamb.

The reason the desire to control is akin to witchcraft is that it is in total contradiction to the nature of God Himself. The irrevocable gift God gave to mankind is that of free will itself. God Himself refuses to violate His gift of one’s free will. He will woo one, draw one and attempt to lead one, but He always leaves it up to the person to choose His way. Deuteronomy 30:19 states “***I call heaven and earth as witnesses today against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing; therefore choose life, that both you and your descendants may live.***”

God will love people to their graves, desiring to woo them to Himself, but He will never force His purpose on any man. He will in no way force eternal life or heaven on any person. He honours a person’s right to choose. Therefore, when people try to dominate or manipulate their will on others, it is a direct violation of God’s law and comes under Satan’s domain, namely witchcraft.⁷⁶

12. CASE STUDIES FROM COUNSELLING AND DELIVERANCE FIELD

12.1 Research Method

The method applied to this specific counselling research is done in a non-specific, Holy Spirit led conduct. The case subjects primarily volunteer to participate. A questionnaire is given to determine health and medical background and also to establish their religious beliefs and level of spiritual maturity. It is also necessary to determine physical and psychological conditions in the family bloodlines from both sides of the person’s family heritage.

⁷⁵ Schott, L. (2013), *JEZEBEL: THE WITCH IS BACK*, WA, Spokane, Famous Publishing, p. 63

⁷⁶ Sampson, S. (2003), *CONFRONTING JEZEBEL: DISCERNING AND DEFEATING THE SPIRIT OF CONTROL*, Minnesota, USA, Chosen Books, E-book

The initial counselling session usually involves determining the person's expectation about the research and also to explain the goal of the study. A method developed by the Sapphire Leadership Group called "Deliverance of the Brain,⁷⁷" is done through Holy Spirit guidance by the counsellor, in an effort to engage in the subject's spirit and to help the person discern the difference between his or her own spirit and soul. This method is also done to determine if there are any blockages in the spirit caused by transgression, iniquity and sin and also from hurts and family bloodline curses etc.

After a number of counselling and deliverance sessions are conducted to help the person receive healing from brokenness. This is followed up by a session while doing "heart deliverance." A test is done while the person is connected to an ECG monitor and the person's heart is being monitored with ECG rhythm strips. This method is applied to determine if there are any visible changes on the physical heart rhythm patterns while the person is receiving spiritual counselling and deliverance.

In future the plan is to form patterns on the ECG's through comparison of different case subjects presenting with the same initial problem, such as relationship problems, DID etc. This will determine whether it is at all possible to do spiritual diagnostics when doing a simple base-line ECG.

Another future aim in the research is to determine possible spiritual causes for physical health problems and in cooperation with the medical community, alleviate symptoms and bring spiritual, soulish and physical healing to individuals suffering from cardiac problems.

12.2 Initiation of Study

The idea of researching whether spiritual engagement and counselling would physically affect the heart in a measurable way, was introduced by the researcher of this thesis. In cooperation with Arthur Burk and other clinical specialists, including a medical researcher and clinical technician, a cardiology practice, where the study would be conducted, was arranged.

⁷⁷ Burk, A. (2014) Audio Album, *DOING DELIVERANCE ON THE BRAIN*, Anaheim, CA, Sapphire Leadership Group Inc.

Appropriate case subjects were chosen based upon certain criteria. The conditions for the initial participation were people between 25 and 35 years, not using any medication and not having any known cardiac problems.

The initial trial only involved connecting the subjects to an ECG monitor individually, doing a baseline ECG to indicate the person's normal electrical activity of the heart and then to engage in a person's spirit, speaking blessings over the person.

The unanimous finding throughout all case subject's ECG recordings were, when the subjects' spirits were being "called to the front" their hearts responded by turning and engaging on its own axis by 5 degrees. This offered enough evidence to decide to continue with the study and to explore further findings.

12.2.1 Study Findings

Test Subject A:

- Baseline ECG QRS axis: 80 degrees
- Spiritual Engagement ECG QRS axis: 75 degrees

Test Subject B:

- Baseline ECG QRS axis: 90 degrees
- Spiritual Engagement ECG QRS axis: 85 degrees

Test Subject C:

- Baseline ECG QRS axis: 115 degrees
- Spiritual Engagement ECG QRS axis: 110 degrees

Test Subject D:

- Baseline ECG QRS axis: 70 degrees
- Spiritual Engagement ECG QRS axis: 75 degrees

After this test, more subjects were approached and the same findings were reported. This reported evidence is kept if any person reading this thesis would find an interest in examining the evidence. The study has been taken further and more evidence pertaining to spiritual engagement with a physical effect on the heart has been gathered. Some of the case studies will be discussed in detail as follows.

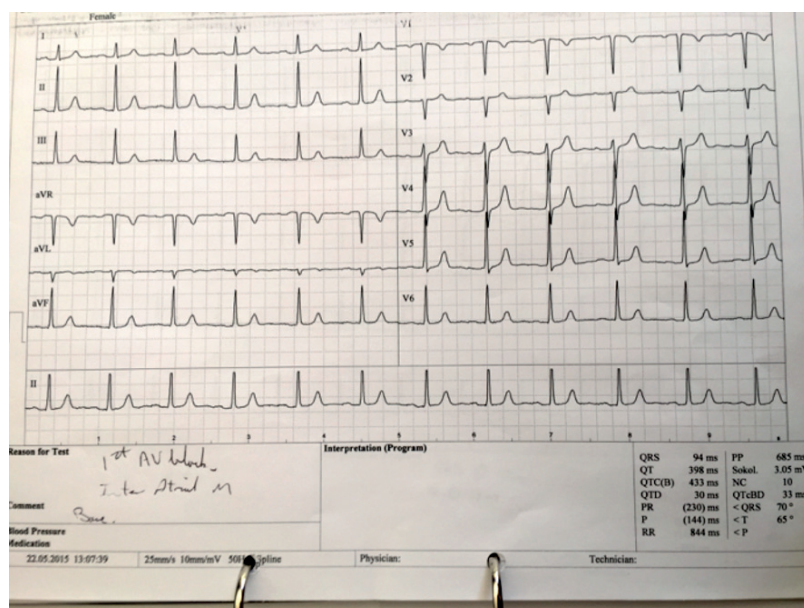
12.3 Case Study 1

12.3.1 Background

The following subject is on a spiritually mature level and has good spiritual discernment. It is a young healthy female, between ages 20 – 40 with no prior medical history concerning cardiology. The person also does not take any medication, which can affect the outcome of the study.

The subject participated from the start of the research project and is still a participant. Significant changes in ECG patterns could be captured throughout the different times when the person was participating in the ECG study.

12.3.2 Baseline ECG



Date of Test: 27th May 2015

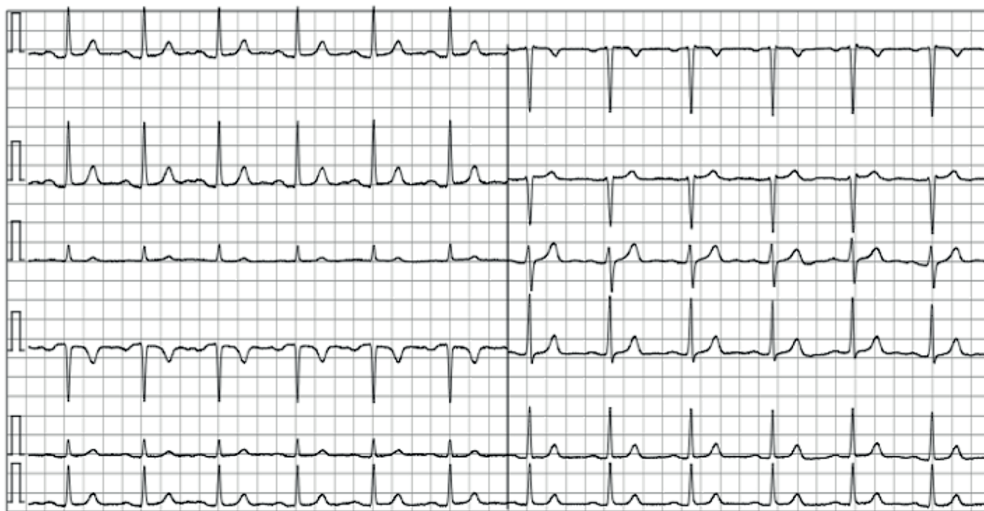
Capturing: Baseline

Diagnostic Findings: First Degree Atrioventricular Block

Research Conducted: Calling the person's spirit to attention and blessing the spirit directly

Results: 5 Degree Turn on Axis

12.3.3 Follow Up ECG and Deliverance



Date of Test: 28th August 2015

Capturing: Baseline

Diagnostic Findings: Sinus rhythm with a First Degree Atrioventricular Block

Research Conducted: Engaging in the subject's spirit and checking heart chambers via spiritual discernment. Deliverance done where Leviathan and Jezebel were addressed and 3rd and 5th head of Leviathan were present. At the time Jezebel was addressed, the ECG changed in leads 5 and 6, presenting complete heart conduction failure.

This was not captured because the tester initially thought it to be lead displacement. After the deliverance the subject presented with a Normal Sinus Rhythm and no 1st Degree AV block anymore.

Results: The subject displays good spiritual discernment and it was established through this subject amongst others that one can engage with the subject's spirit and guide the spirit to go inside the heart.



Date of Test: 16th October 2015

Capturing: Baseline

Data: Heart Rate: 75 bpm, PR 129, QRS 93, QT 377, P/QRS/T 51/78/65 degrees, RV5/SV1 1.897/1.267 mV

Diagnosis: Normal Sinus Rhythm

Treatment: Engaging in the subject's spirit and doing spiritual discernment inside the heart and its different aspects.

Results: This ECG was done after the previous deliverance session. Throughout testing the ECG presented a normal sinus rhythm. No AV block was noted.

12.3.4 Feedback

The subject sent a feedback letter after receiving healing and deliverance. This is what the person wrote:

“Like many, I know that I can hear God’s voice. I never realized that God, Jesus and the Holy Spirit wanted to speak to me separately. After deliverance on the heart in one of my ECG’s I could hear the voice of Jesus Christ for the first time. I know it is Him and He speaks to me differently from the Other Members of the Trinity. This proved to me that deliverance on the heart could mean that you could be free of bondages preventing you from hearing God in a more intimate way. This deliverance also started to improve other relationships in my life – I could get along with people more easily and tensions in some relationships resolved.”

12.4 Case Study 2

This person volunteered to participate in the Heart Deliverance Research study and was initially interviewed. Although the subject is of opinion that he is Holy Spirit filled and also does Christian counselling, through the interview it became evident that this person has familial strongholds and presented strongly with a spirit of religion. He also admitted to an incestuous relationship since childhood, which has not been dealt with.

On the initial baseline ECG this person presented with a normal ECG, but as the study progressed and certain spiritual aspects were addressed, the ECG graph changed.

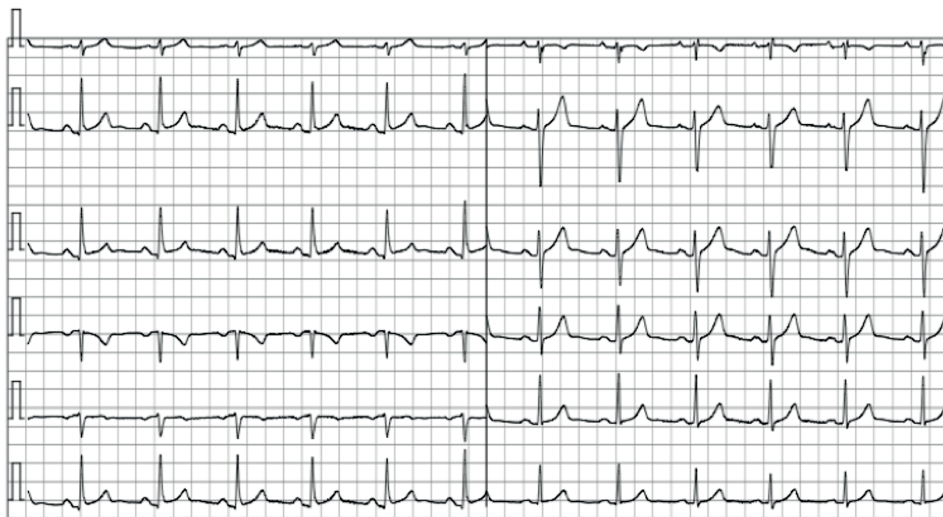
In a medical study one would consider for the person to possibly having heart muscle ischemia at times that could possibly lead to an inferior myocardial infarction but this pattern emerged only sporadically when the person’s relationship with Christ was addressed.

Theoretically, if a person presents with changes in the inferior leads on an ECG, there would be a blockage of the Right Coronary Artery, which mainly supplies the right ventricle muscle with blood and also partly the left ventricle. Spiritually this indicates a blockage of provision towards the Christ relationship indwelling the heart.

Through Holy Spirit led spiritual discernment from the counselling team, it seemed that this person has spiritual divorce papers assigned to him, indicating that he cannot be considered to be part of the Bride of Christ,⁷⁸ thus he has not legitimate relationship with Jesus Christ.

12.4.1 Baseline ECG

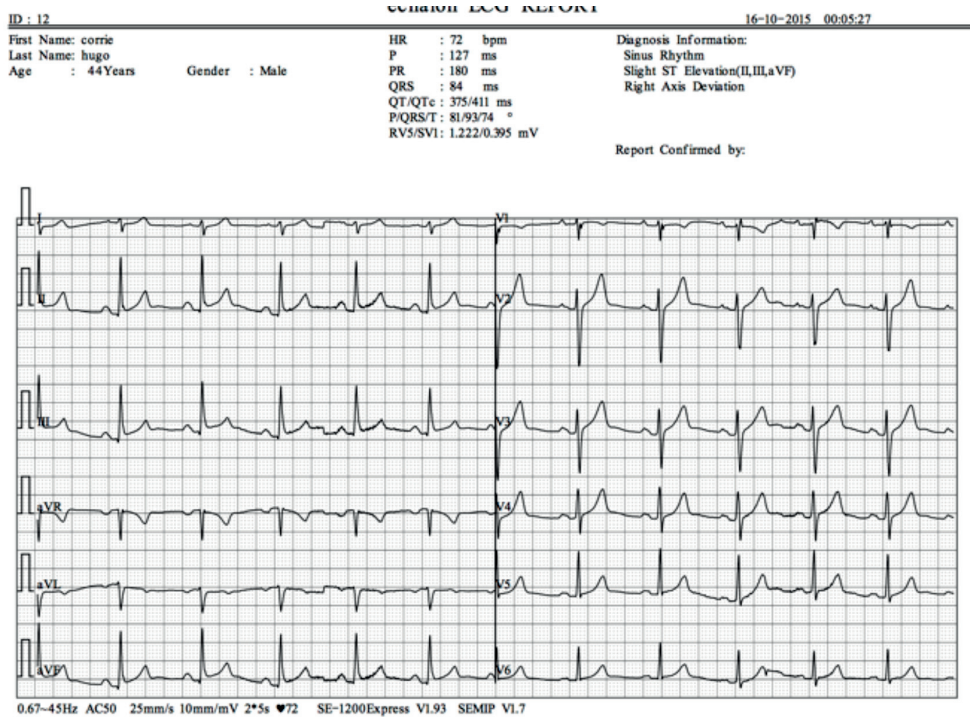
- **Findings:** Normal Sinus Rhythm with Right Axis Deviation



12.4.2 ECG Graph where Relationship with the Holy Trinity is addressed

⁷⁸ Author's Note: Spiritual divorce from Christ has been discussed in detail in a previous chapter.

Findings: Sinus Rhythm with ST Elevation VII, VIII and aVF, Right Axis Deviation



12.5 Conclusions Drawn from Study Findings

The hypothesis pertaining to the formulation of the theory that spiritual afflictions can presumably affect the heart in a physical measurable way, has been proven correctly. As mentioned previously, this study is only in the beginning phases and much more needs to be explored before any specific conclusions can be drawn. The researcher of this thesis recommends that this needs to be researched in depth to be able to find definite patterns, which could in future be used as diagnostic spiritual tools as well as possible resolutions for physical cardiac conditions through spiritual counselling and deliverance practice.

13. CONCLUSION

Heart failure can be defined as **“a complex syndrome that can result from any structural or functional cardiac disorder that impairs the ability of the heart to function as a pump to support a physiological circulation.”**⁷⁹

⁷⁹ Nicholson, C., (2007), *HEART FAILURE: A CLINICAL NURSING HANDBOOK*, Wiley, J. & Sons, USA, p. 5

It is a pathophysiological state in which an abnormality of cardiac function is responsible for the failure of the heart to pump blood at a rate commensurate with requirements of the metabolising tissues.

According to Nicholson⁸⁰, it is difficult for a clinician to put a definition to heart failure in that it is such a broad concept. Although heart failure is usually a functional phrase it is imprecise.

One of the most dangerous aspects of heart disease is the fact that a person can be suffering from the disease but only realizes it until it reaches a critical stage. It is because physical heart diseases involve a long-term accumulative, progressive process that quite often produces no discernable symptoms until the disease is quite advanced.⁸¹

Similarly, everyday people die spiritually because they are unaware of their spiritual heart disease, for just as a person's physical life depends on the heart's unceasing and automatic contractions, one's spiritual life depends on one's spiritual heart's unceasing commitment to righteous desires and priorities.

One of the most common reasons for death by heart failure is a person's denial that anything is wrong and the resulting delay of examination and treatment, even after they become aware of their symptoms and warning signs.⁸²

So it is with spiritual heart failure. One finds one self considering to break or compromise one's commitment to God and becoming apathetic about one's promises – alarming danger signs that are ignored.

Just as a person with a physical damaged heart loses energy and concern for life's pressure and duties, losing spiritual energy and concern should be an indication that one's spiritual heart is unwell. When one's performance to one's family and the Body of Christ becomes

80 Ibid, p. 5

81 Cramer, S.A. (2006), *VICTORY IN CHRIST: LIVING IN A TEMPLE INSTEAD OF A PRISON*, Cedar Fort Publishers, UT, USA, p. 186-187

82 Ibid p. 186

more painful to one than neglect, one is in serious danger of spiritual heart failure and possible spiritual death and should undertake an immediate evaluation of one's values and priorities.

There are many problems that can develop in one's physical heart and circulatory system, and each defect produces specific symptoms, such as shortness of breath, chest, shoulder and arm pain, poor circulation, lack of energy, and erratic heart rate. Doctors conduct examinations to determine heart disease.

A person can detect a physical heart attack by the sudden onset of physical pain in the chest, which radiates to the shoulder, arm and jaw. Spiritual heart attacks, in which **"men's hearts failing them from fear and the expectation"** (Luke 21:26 NKJV). Men's hearts failing them, can be recognized by symptoms such as an urge to break one's covenants, to make evil choices, or to hurt others as one strikes out in anger, revenge and unwillingness to forgive.⁸³

The technological advances of the past century tended to change the focus of medicine from a caring, service-oriented model to a technological, cure-oriented model. The advances in technology led to phenomenal advances in medicine and have given people the ability to prolong life. There is evidence though, that spiritual or compassionate care needs to be recognized as part of health care.⁸⁴

Spiritual or compassionate care involves serving the whole person, that is, the physical, emotional, social and spiritual. Presently, the effect of spirituality on health is an area of active research. Besides being studied by scholars from the different medical fields, it is also studied by scholars of psychology and other fields of profession such as theology and philosophy.

Helping, fixing, and serving represent three different ways of seeing life. When you help, you see life as weak. When you fix, you see life as broken.

⁸³ Ibid p. 187

⁸⁴ Puchalski, C.M. MD, MS, *The Role of Spirituality in Health Care*, Proc (Bayl Univ Med Cent). 2001 October; 14(4): 352-357[Online Article]Available From: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC1305900/>; [Date Accessed: 9th June 2016]

When you serve, you see life as whole. Fixing and helping may be the work of the ego, and service the work of the soul. (Remen: 1997)⁸⁵

This thesis holds the opinion that Satan and his hordes are real and will put in every effort to prevent humans from attaining their God ordained Birthright and achieve intimacy with God. This is done through deception, theft and murder and will affect a person in the spirit, soul and body.

One needs to acknowledge that the enemy is real and all believers should know their enemy to be able to understand their authority over Satan. Scripture teaches that God's people are being destroyed due to a lack of knowledge. It also states that people's ignorance; because they reject God's knowledge given to them, will cause them to not be able to achieve intimacy with Him, for He will also reject the people.⁸⁶

and he said to them: "Set your hearts on all the words which I testify among you today, which you shall command your children to be careful to observe--all the words of this law. "For it is not a futile thing for you, because it is your life, and by this word you shall prolong your days in the land which you cross over the Jordan to possess."

Deuteronomy 32:46-47n(NKJV)

In turning the hearts of the fathers to their children, the fathers need to be shown that teaching their children Christ's commands is important, because it is their children's life and will prolong their days as stated in the verse above.

The fear of the Lord and the knowledge of God comes when the heart of a child is turned towards his father and he listens to his father's instructions as written in Proverbs 2:2 "**So that you incline your ear to wisdom, And apply your heart to understanding.**"

The Bible teaches that everything initially occurs in the spirit realm and gets transferred to the physical realm. From this information, this thesis holds the theory that all disease and affliction a person endures should have a root in the spirit.

⁸⁵ Remen R.N. (1997), *KITCHEN TABLE WISDOM: STORIES THAT HEAL*, Riverhead Books, NY, USA

⁸⁶ See Hosea 4:6

This goes for heart conditions as well. Not only is one self guilty of bringing curses over one's life through disobedience, unfaithfulness and sin, but one's forefather's sin also bring forward causes for afflictions such as heart disease.

A generational curse is *an unclean iniquity that increases in strength from one generation to the next, affecting the members of that family and all who come into relationship with that family*.⁸⁷

A bloodline can be defined as the direct line of descent or pedigree. A child will have the same bloodline as the biological father and mother through whom the child was conceived. There are many who define the bloodlines by referring to the forefathers. Bloodlines are created through conception and do not refer to the physical blood that has been transferred from the parents to the child.

It is clear throughout Scriptures that God is a generational God. All God's motives for man He does with one's generation in mind. Every warning and commandment in the Bible is for the protection of the generations. Thus, heritage and families are very important to God.⁸⁸

There is hope for all people through the Blood of the Lamb and the Word of the testimony. Curses and strongholds can be broken and one can find freedom. Spiritual afflictions carried forward through generations can and will bring forward physical ailments in the bloodlines. This can also be addressed through Holy Spirit counselling and deliverance. God does not want people to perish due to a lack of knowledge. One only needs to have faith and confess that Jesus Christ of Nazareth has died at Calvary for all people's sin and has risen from the dead, so that no one has to die again. He died for all people's iniquities and pain. Healing can be found through Him.

⁸⁷ Hickey, M. (1987), *BREAKING GENERATIONAL CURSES*, Okalahoma, USA, Harrison House, p. 24

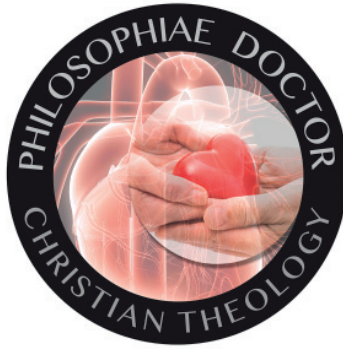
⁸⁸ BLOODLINES – *Bloodlines*, [Online] Available From: <http://www.bloodlines.co.za/articles/spiritual-roots-of-physical-illness-es-and-diseases.html>, [Date Accessed: 23rd July 2016]

Surely He has borne our griefs And carried our sorrows; Yet we esteemed Him stricken, Smitten by God, and afflicted. But He was wounded for our transgressions, He was bruised for our iniquities; The chastisement for our peace was upon Him, And by His stripes we are healed. All we like sheep have gone astray; We have turned, every one, to his own way; And the LORD has laid on Him the iniquity of us all.

Isaiah 53:4-6 (NKJV)

(Footnotes)

- 1 Zeno, C. (2011), *A SURE FOUNDATION*, Xulon Press, p. 122



Conclusion

The Spirit of God has made me, And the breath of the Almighty gives me life.

Job 33:4 (NKJV)

Physiologically, the word “inspire” means to “**breath in**” and “expire” means to “**breath out**.” In simple terms, these words mean in and out.¹ One has to do with something that takes place inside a person and the other has to do with something that terminates or runs out.

Theologically, to inspire means, “**to be under the influence of the Spirit of God²**” or, “**extraordinary or supernatural divine influence.**”³ One of the definitions for inspire, in *The American Heritage Dictionary*⁴ is, “**to affect, guide or arouse by divine influence.**”

With this in mind, when Adam drew in his first breath, his lungs were filled with the breath of God.⁵ He also became affected, guided and aroused by the Divine influence. He was created to live an *inspired life*.⁶

The life in man is owing to the light in man, which emanates from Jesus Christ who is “**the light of life**,” (John 8:12). Man becomes an animate breathing creature through the impartation of God’s Spirit⁷ and it is that “**breath of life**” which **gives man life**, whereas it is the **Light of God, which makes man come alive.**⁸

1 Lawrence, E. (2006), *BREATH OF GOD: UNLEASHING THE FATHER’S PRESENCE INTO YOUR LIFE*, USA, Thomas Nelson Inc. pp. 106-107

2 Ibid

3 ONLINE BIBLE DICTIONARY – Bible Study Tools (2016), - *Inspiration* [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblestudytools.com/dictionary/inspiration/>, [Date Accessed: 4th February 2016]

4 THE AMERICAN HERITAGE DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE – *Inspire*, (2016), [Online] Available From: <https://www.ahdictionary.com/word/search.html?q=inspire&submit.x=0&submit.y=0>, [Date Accessed: 4th February 2016]

5 See Genesis 2:7

6 Lawrence, E. (2006), *BREATH OF GOD: UNLEASHING THE FATHER’S PRESENCE INTO YOUR LIFE*, USA, Thomas Nelson Inc. pp. 106-107

7 See Genesis 2:7, Job 27:1-3, Isaiah 40:7, John 20:21-22

8 Leary, P. (2009), *THE CONTROVERSIAL BIBLE MATTERS*, USA, Lulu.Com, pp. 557-558

Humans are breathing beings with heartbeats. Humans are also the beings in which God's Spirit indwells when one surrenders to the Lord Jesus Christ.⁹

From the beginning of creation, it was God's desire and purpose for human beings to have a heart like His. The Scriptures teaches: "**Then God said, 'Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness; let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the air, and over the cattle, over all the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth.' So God created man in His own image; in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them**" (Genesis 1:26-27 NKJV). God also breathed into humanity His own Spirit (see Genesis 2:7).

God therefore made humans with a heart fashioned after their Creator's. This heart was pure and complete, filled with God's nature and character.

Adam and Eve turned away from God's heart and the nature in which they had been created. Instead of cherishing God's instructions and wisdom, they wilfully disobeyed Him. God had commanded them not to eat of the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, warning them that if they did so, they would die. Tragically, they listened to the voice of God's enemy, Satan, who told them, "**You will not surely die. 'For God knows that in the day you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.'**" (Genesis 3:4-5 NKJV)

They were enticed by a promise of "**being like God**" – although they had already been made in His image – the first man and woman went against their Creator.¹⁰ **Their rejection of God's heart resulted in a terrible change in the human heart, giving human beings an all-too-familiar knowledge of evil, because it was now within them.** Their disobedience, or sin resulted in their fall from their true selves and the loss of their innocence – it initiated the already existing corruption of the human heart.

The perfect example to follow, given to all human beings, is Jesus Christ. He portrays the heart of God for man in all His actions.

⁹ Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 163

¹⁰ Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House

One only has to read the Gospels to understand what it means to have a heart after God's own heart.

Jesus taught that the heart is supposed to be the source of life. As He stated: ***For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks. "A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good things, and an evil man out of the evil treasure brings forth evil things"*** (Matthew 12:34-35 NKJV).

This is a perfect portrayal of people's characters. The activities of a person's life are a display of the content of what is inside the person's heart, where all people's treasure is stored up.

This is also exemplified in Scripture where Jesus stated:

"Do not lay up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy and where thieves break in and steal; but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys and where thieves do not break in and steal. For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also."

Matthew 6:19-21 (NKJV)

It is through one's speech that one's heart character is displayed, thus one's love for something, and the fruit of the spirit in which one exemplifies the self, for speech is the self-expressed out.

Not only is the content of a person's heart the director of one's life, but a person also needs to direct the heart as stated in Proverbs 23:19: ***"Hear, my son, and be wise; And guide your heart in the way."***

The Word of God strictly commands a person to ***"guard your heart with all diligence."*** (Proverbs 4:23)

As beings created in God's image it is one's nature to love. Love's dynamic is to seek its object and cling to it with a binding force. Thus, it is one's very nature to seek out and join to one self what one really values or treasures.

What Jesus tells people is that **THE TREASURE ONE CHOOSES TO LOVE AND STORE UP WILL FINALLY CONTROL ONE IN SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY.** One's heart will be where one's treasure is.¹¹

In the opinion of this thesis, that it is necessary for a person's heart to be transformed into a heart after God's own heart to be able to reflect on His true image. This will flow into a person, thinking as God thinks, feeling as God feels and loving as God loves. To be able to have "***the mind of Christ.***"

Every person has a burning need and desire to know God, for Scripture teaches that for every person God placed "***eternity in their hearts,***" (See Ecclesiastes 3:11). From this knowledge of eternity, every person has a need to know God's love and to reciprocate on this love.

If a person's heart is not touched, they cannot recognize and experience the Father's love. The function of man's heart is to serve as a bridge for the spirit to awaken. This experience flows from the spirit of man to the soul of man where decisions are made. Man's soul represents man's emotions, passions, drives and appetites. Once a person's spirit has experienced God's love and grace, then, through the soul one can make the decision to follow after Him and to become more like Him. The heart is the place in which the soul is at home with itself, and is conscious of all it's doing and suffering as its own."¹²

Hebrew writers assigned important functions of life to different physical organs. The heart was considered the core of a person's intellect and spirit.¹³

11 Saucy, R. (2013), *MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION*, MI, USA, Kregel Publications, p. 74

12 Oehler, G.F. (1950), *THEOLOGY OF THE OLD TESTAMENT*, Zondervan, MI, USA, p. 153

13 *LIFE APPLICATION STUDY BIBLE, NEW LIVING TRANSLATION, SECOND EDITION*, (2007), IL, USA, Tyndall House Publications, p. 1324

Because man functions in the soul and not in the spirit, like it was God's intention for man to do, it is necessary for a person's soul to find healing and recovery to be able to understand how one is created in God's image. Once a person can start to relate to God as a being created in His image, one can start to have faith and from that having hope in His provision. As soon as a person starts to believe that God is the provider, love comes forth for Him and a relationship grows stronger.

The person then becomes convicted by Holy Spirit about God's divine nature and will then be able to make a choice whether they want to follow after God "*in spirit and in truth*." As soon as the person confesses from the heart that Jesus is the Son of God and that He died for all people's sin so that one does not have to perish, then Holy Spirit will start to indwell in a person's heart.¹⁴

It is through the heart that the spirit can be renewed and refreshed. The Bible cautions one to "***Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life***" (Proverbs 4:23). If a person's heart is not in a healthy state one's spirit is not either. If one's spirit is not in a healthy state then one's soul, which is dependent on one's spirit for life, is not going to be in a healthy state.¹⁵

The state of one's heart, therefore one's spirit and soul, can also affect one's physical health as the spirit flows throughout the body. If the heart is in poor condition however, as a result of sin and not being in the right relationship with God, the spirit flowing from the heart will not be filling the soul with renewed life and vitality, but rather with seed sown from the kingdom of darkness.

Scripture also teaches that People live their lives from the heart, (Proverbs 14:30). Everything that comprises one's life as a person, one's thoughts, attitudes, feelings, impulses and desires, one's speech and action, all spring from one's heart. This implies that a person's heart is the director of one's life.¹⁶

14 Ibid

15 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, p. 72

16 Ibid p.33

There is a key lesson to be learnt in the Bible for all people. In Leviticus 17:11 is written “**For the life of the FLESH IS IN THE BLOOD, and I have given it to you upon the altar to make atonement for your souls; for it is the BLOOD THAT MAKES ATONEMENT for the soul.**”¹⁷

Right from the moment of conception, there is no doubt that the created human being has **life**. There is a definite process of growth and formation occurring right from the moment of conception that can only come about if the new human being has **life, or spirit**, because, as noted, the body without the spirit is dead.

The spirit of Adam, which was breathed into his nostrils, permeated his entire being, thus it follows that all people’s spirits permeate their entire being. The Apostle Paul wrote: “**For what man knows the things of a man except the spirit of the man which is in him? Even so no one knows the things of God except the Spirit of God.**” (1 Corinthians 2:11)

In order for one’s spirit to “**know the things of man**” the spirit has to have access to the entire man, not just a part of man. Additionally, **the entire person has life, as the spirit is life.**¹⁸

Hypothetically, if “**life is in the blood**” and blood flows through all extremities, then, although invisible to the naked eye, one’s spirit also permeates the whole body. It makes sense therefore that if one were only to see one’s spiritual body, it might look much the same as one’s physical body, although a different substance. One would expect the spiritual body to take the same form or shape as one’s physical body, as one would expect one’s spirit to be in the boundaries of one’s body.

The author of Proverbs states: “**Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life.**” (Proverbs 4:23 NKJV) As **life is spirit**, it seems that **spirit flows from the heart**. This references to a spiritual heart, but one may presume that the spiritual heart is in the same place as the physical heart.

17 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, IN, USA, iUniverse, p. 166-167

18 Thomas, J.R. (2012), *SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES*, IN, USA, Westbow Press, E-Book

Jesus came and provided for man what man could not provide for one self. He **shed His blood for all people as a covering**, as a **protection** from sin and death, as a **cleansing** for sin and **provision** of forgiveness – THERE IS LIFE IN JESUS' BLOOD!¹⁹

The hidden value of Jesus Christ's blood is the spirit of self-sacrifice, and where the blood really touches the heart of man; it works out in that heart, transforming the spirit of man into a similar spirit of self-sacrifice. One learns to give up one self and one's life, so as to press into the full power of that new life, which His blood has provided.²⁰

To understand the mechanics of the circulatory system, it becomes clear that a force is needed to pump the blood through the body. This force, which is the main pumping mechanism of the circulatory system, is the **heart**.

Everything in a person's life begins in the **heart** as Scripture teaches:

"A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

Luke 6:45 (NKJV)

The condition of one's heart determines the condition of one's life. Just as God designed the physical heart to pump blood to the other organs in the body, distributing minerals and nutrients, He designed the spiritual heart to "pump" life to one's entire being, producing mental, emotional and physical health.²¹

The key to the heart is the love of Christ. The biggest gift a person should be prepared to receive is the gift of love, this will unlock a person's heart. The heart is the seat of love. This is explained in the Book of Romans:

19 Hayford, J. with Hayford Bauer, R. (2011), *PENETRATING THE DARKNESS*, MI, USA, Chosen Books, p. 80

20 Murray, A. (2013), *THE POWER OF THE BLOOD OF JESUS*, USA, Start Publishings LLC, E-Book

21 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, PA, USA, Whitaker House, p. 39

Now hope does not disappoint, because the love of God has been poured out in our hearts by the Holy Spirit who was given to us.

Romans 5:5 (NKJV)

All forms of deception also flow from the heart. Jesus taught His disciples:

“Do you not yet understand that whatever enters the mouth goes into the stomach and is eliminated? “But those things which proceed out of the mouth come from the heart, and they defile a man. “For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies. “These are the things which defile a man, but to eat with unwashed hands does not defile a man.”

Matthew 15:17-20 (NKJV) (Author Emphasis Added)

Until one’s heart is fully transformed, and one is living in godly humility and self-denial, one will have improper motivations and selfish intentions that deviate from the purposes of God. One cannot allow one self to be guided by any untransformed part of the heart.

This author of this thesis is in agreement that, if a person’s faith does not flow from one’s heart, it is merely intellectual acknowledgment or mental assent of God and His ways. Under such conditions, one cannot expect to receive results from God.²² If a person lacks the motivation of love, one will not have a genuine desire to serve God and will make little effort in that regard.

Yet, even in the midst of one’s selfishness and rebellion, God continues to draw one near to Him. His Holy Spirit guides one, motivates one, and convicts one’s heart, thus working in a person **“both to will and to do for His good pleasure”** (Philippians 2:13).

God never pushes a person or forces a person to do anything. His manner of reaching out to people contrasts with the way in which Satan operates. Satan’s demons push a person. They try to pressure one to take certain actions, or they try to snare one, in order to lead one into sin and destroy one’s life. The enemy desires more than anything else to usurp the dwelling place of God within the heart of the person.²³

²² Ibid p. 36

²³ Ibid p. 37

Ever since Satan prompted the first man and woman to reject God's command, turning away from His nature, an invisible war has been taking place for possession of the hearts of all human beings. God's kingdom of light and Satan's kingdom of darkness are battling even now for one's heart.

Whoever holds the heart of someone also holds one's potential and one's resources – one's entire person. Human beings must decide to whom they will surrender their hearts. Although it might seem that a person can choose not to choose between the Kingdom of God nor the kingdom of Satan, that is exactly the deception from the enemy.

If one chooses to be neutral about their heart and to follow the self instead of God, then one effectively chooses to side with God's enemy, Satan. The kingdom of darkness forcefully takes over any terrain, especially the human heart, it finds vulnerable or vacant, using the most subtle weapons and tools imaginable as one reads in Matthew 12:43-45.

"When an unclean spirit goes out of a man, he goes through dry places, seeking rest, and finds none. 'Then he says, 'I will return to my house from which I came.' And when he comes, he finds it empty, swept, and put in order. 'Then he goes and takes with him seven other spirits more wicked than himself, and they enter and dwell there; and the last state of that man is worse than the first. So shall it also be with this wicked generation.'"

Matthew 12:43-45 (NKJV)

Scripture teaches: **"Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour."** (1 Peter 5:8 NKJV).

Satan hates all people and seeks to destroy all people. He tries and eliminates Jesus' presence out of every person's heart. Jesus said: **"The thief does not come except to steal, and to kill, and to destroy. I have come that they may have life, and that they may have it more abundantly."** (John 10:10 NKJV)

THE GOAL OF THE ENEMY IS TO TAKE THE HUMAN HEART CAPTIVE AND TO KEEP IT CAPTIVE.

Even before physical birth, the heart function of the foetus can be observed and examples extracted to compare the spiritual life of man to the physical development. A larger perspective of the “spiritual heart” can be formed as well as the initial purposes for one’s “heart.”

The spiritual heart gives a person direction and purpose in life. It is the essence of who the person is. All a person’s ideas, all the possibilities for words and actions on a person’s part, run through one’s heart. It acts, in a sense, as a **spiritual filter**. Depending on the quality of the filter, **it will allow certain possibilities to flow through to actual action.** **This filtering process, then allows the spiritual heart to influence attitudes, perspectives, decisions and actions.**²⁴

Regeneration means to have the divine life of God in addition to the human life which one already possess. Therefore, regeneration requires another birth in order to possess another life. To be regenerated, to be born again, does not mean to adjust or correct one self. It means to have the life of God. To be regenerated is to be born of God (John 1:13), and to be born of God is to have the life of God, that is, the eternal life (John 3:15-16).²⁵

Although Jesus brought salvation for every person to receive, **a carnal man, who’s heart has not yet been regenerated, has not received the seed through the blood of Jesus Christ so that His love can be poured out in the person’s heart.** God remains the person’s Creator and sustains one’s life. The person receives spiritual nutrition and life supplies from God, although the person’s heart has not changed into a new-born’s heart. The person is alive but has not received eternal life. There is not perfect relationship and cohesion yet, although there is function.

People are conceived in sin because they are conceived in the flesh and no good thing abides in the flesh. It is corrupt in sin. That is why a person needs to be born again. The man of flesh is ruined by sin and must die; the man of the spirit has to be born in a person so that the person is capable to receive the will of God and live by it.²⁶

24 Weller, A.L. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 172

25 Lee, W. (1987), *THE KNOWLEDGE OF LIFE*, Living Stream Ministry, CA, USA, p. 26-28

26 Ambridge, L.N., (2011), *WHO SAYS YOU CAN’T BE PERFECT?*, Xilbris Corporation, USA, p. 78-79

With the first breath of air flowing into the new-born infant's lungs, oxygenating the baby's blood, the foetal heart changes into a perfect functioning organ with four chambers. Its main function is to provide every part of the body with nutrition and oxygen by the pumping of blood.

A person becomes born again by the seed of Christ as one reads in 1 Peter 1: 22-23 ***"Since you have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit in sincere love of the brethren, love one another fervently with a pure heart, having been born again, not of corruptible seed but incorruptible, through the word of God which lives and abides forever..."***

With the rebirth of a person, receiving the ***"Breath of God"***, the Body starts to function as it is intended to function. Christ's blood, which is Holy Spirit filled, now flows through the whole body.

Through the seed of Christ's blood, **His love is poured out in the believer's heart through the Holy Spirit** (See Romans 5:5). The person becomes a child of God and does not have to be ashamed to come before Him as Adam and Eve did after the fall.

Through the seed of Christ a person is now born again with a heart reflecting the heart of God. It is through the power of the Holy Spirit that the Seed of Christ is sown into the heart of man. The Holy Spirit is the provider for the new-born child of God.

To restore humans to the heart with which they were created, pure and whole in His likeness, God came to earth in the person of Jesus Christ. He came not only to teach people how to live but also to die for one's sin and rebellion, to break the hold that **the corrupt sin nature had on one's heart.** ²⁷

Salvation is only the beginning of one's relationship with the heavenly Father. God wants people to draw continually closer to Him and, as His children, reflect His nature.

²⁷ Ibid p. 31

That is why **He calls people to have increasingly transformed hearts that will represent His own heart.**²⁸

Because the **heart is that part of a person that is most open to spiritual communication from the Lord**, regeneration of the whole person must begin with the heart.²⁹

Everything in one's life begins in the heart as Scripture indicates:

Keep your heart with all diligence, For out of it spring the issues of life.

Proverbs 4:23 (NKJV)

“A good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth good; and an evil man out of the evil treasure of his heart brings forth evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

Luke 6:45 (NKJV)

Every person, whether born-again or not, receives life from God. When a person receives the indwelling Holy Spirit, the flow of life will be an abundant stream of resurrection life, springing forth from the centre of communion to the rest of the person's being.³⁰

The circumcision of the heart is described as a divine act, a kind of spiritual surgery. ***“And the LORD your God will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul, that you may live.”*** (Deuteronomy 30:6 NKJV)

The foreskin of the spiritual heart is part of one's conscience that becomes thickened and insensitive due sin, un-belief and evil.³¹

28 Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 33

29 Weller A.L. Dr. (2016), *SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE TONGUE, THE HANDS, THE FEET, THE HEART AND THE MIND*, iUniverse, IN, USA, p. 174

30 Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

31 Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

As long as the foreskin is not removed and changed through a reformed conscience, it will serve as a cap that will prevent the flow of God for illuminating and irrigating one's soul. **This is the reason why God calls His people to receive circumcision of the heart to bring renovation.**

"Therefore circumcise the foreskin of your heart, and be stiff-necked no longer.

Deuteronomy 10:16 (NKJV)

The only One able to circumcise a person's heart is Holy Spirit. He knows the condition of a person's heart and has the power and the love to circumcise one without hurting the person. Although a person's heart may not be fully hardened, there is surely some areas of one's life one needs to surrender to God so that one may be transformed.

If a person truly repents of sin, then God will be able to remove the "**heart of stone**" within the person, including the wounds, pain and feelings of rejection that have caused one to harden one's heart, and will give one a "**heart of flesh**," a new, soft, and tender heart that restores one's innocence. By allowing the Holy Spirit to do this, God will cleanse, purify and sanctify ones' heart.³²

"Are you tired? Worn out? Burned out on religion? Come to me. Get away with me and you'll recover your life. I'll show you how to take a real rest. Walk with me and work with me—watch how I do it. LEARN THE UNFORCED RHYTHMS OF GRACE. I won't lay anything heavy or ill-fitting on you. Keep company with me and you'll learn to live freely and lightly."

Matthew 11:28-30 (The Message) (Author's Emphasis Added)

The "**unforced rhythms of grace**" mentioned in the verse above indicates a covenant relationship with God. To be in covenant with Him can be compared to the pacemaker of life, which pulses and brings function in God's perfect rhythm.

One can understand that arrhythmia happens when there is **no cohesion or good order between the different fields of the heart.**

³² Maldonado, G. (2014), *SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION: CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART*, Whitaker House, PA, USA, p. 90

The heart is still beating and pumping blood, but the rhythm is erratic. Thus, the body is still receiving all the blood and nutrients it needs but because the heart is in overdrive, and not in pace, the body also starts to suffer by feeling tired and burdened. If an arrhythmia is not being dealt with, it will eventually lead to more severe conditions affecting the whole body, such as heart failure, stroke or even death.

In a covenant relationship, arrhythmia may also occur, and if not dealt with, will make the Body of Christ suffer.

The most common body organ used as a **spiritual reference in the Bible was the heart, as a symbol of intellect and wisdom**, and blood as a symbol of the life principle.³³ The kidneys receive special attention in the Bible as the seat of conscience, emotions, desire and wisdom. The “*reins*” which is implied by the Oxford English Dictionary³⁴ as the loins, is considered the site of physical strength and prowess (see Job 40:7; 2 Samuel 20:8).

Hypothetically, the kidneys seem to share their position as the site of affections with the heart as in the following verse of grief: “***Thus my heart was grieved, and I was pricked in my reins.***” (Psalm 73:21 KJV). No other internal organ of the body is mentioned in parallel in the Bible as often as are the heart and the kidneys.

Life is full of stresses, which cause fluctuation in one’s spiritual blood pressure or a fluctuation in one’s faith in Christ.³⁵ The human spirit has substances of which, according to Scripture, faith is a measurable substance.³⁶

Hebrews 11:1-2 states “***Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen. For by it the elders obtained a good testimony.***”

33 Smith, C.R. (2004), *THE PHYSICIAN EXAMINES THE BIBLE*, Hallmark-Hubner Press Inc. NY, USA

34 OXFORD ENGLISH DICTIONARY – loins, kidneys, reins, [Online] Available From: <http://www.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/english/kidney>, [Date Accessed: 11th May 2016]

35 Grange, M.J. RN, (2010), *NEITHER ROOT NOR BRANCH: THE DISASTER MANUAL FOR DEPRESSION*, Tafford Publishing, USA, p. 116-117

36 Mendez-Ferrell, A. dr. (2015), *THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING*, Ponte Verde, FL, Voice of the Light Ministries, Kindle Book

Just as faith is a “**substance of things hoped for**” but “**not seen**”, one’s physical blood pressure is also a result of things hoped for but not seen. A physiological blood pressure is a measure of one’s life sustainability. If a person’s blood pressure is too low or weak, then life cannot be sustained in the body.

Without a spiritual blood pressure, which is faith in Jesus Christ, one is also spiritually dead. Through faith, one can repent of one’s sin. The trial of faith, or one can say, gaining a good spiritual blood pressure, is more precious than gold. As the first book of Peter states:

that the genuineness of your faith, being much more precious than gold that perishes, though it is tested by fire, may be found to praise, honor, and glory at the revelation of Jesus Christ,

1 Peter 1:7 (NKJV)

In the Hebrew as well as the Greek culture, the intellectual and emotional dimensions of human life are thought of as the whole person, heart, soul and spirit, which are not considered as separate from the inner person, but each is reference to the whole inner person and is to be viewed in relation to the body. As a result, the inner thought and knowledge dimension is regarded in close relation to right conduct.

For the word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, AND IS A DISCERNER OF THE THOUGHTS AND INTENTS OF THE HEART.

Hebrews 4:12 (NKJV) (Author’s Emphasis Added)

There is a clear indication that the Biblical concept of the heart as the seat of one’s soul, intellect and character can no longer be taken as purely poetic or romantic. The ‘transplanted memory phenomenon’ has proven that there is **no way the heart cannot store memories, thoughts and passions.**³⁷

³⁷ Herbst, T. dr. (2014), *THE DARK SIDE OF LEADERSHIP: A PSYCHO-SPIRITUAL APPROACH TOWARDS UNDERSTANDING THE ORIGIN OF PERSONALITY DISFUNCTIONS, DERAILEMENT AND THE RESTORATION OF PERSONALITY*, Author House, IN, USA, p. 111-113

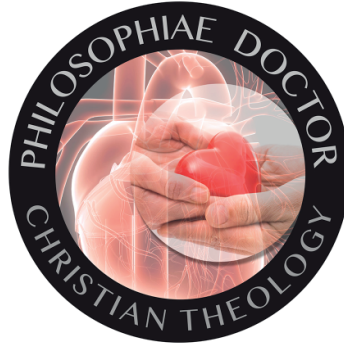
The Biblical heart involves the mind, will, emotions and conscience of man. Proverbs 3:5 is a clear indication that God's acceptance of man is based on the condition of one's heart as it states: "***Trust in the LORD with all your heart, And lean not on your own understanding.***"

As a person's body exists as a spirit, soul and physical body, the spiritual manifestations mentioned in this thesis will have an overflow to the soul and then the body of man. The information gathered through this study can be used for further scientific and exegetical research of the physical manifestations of spiritual afflictions of the human body. In the final chapter of the thesis, some examples have been offered as evidence pertaining to this mentioned manifestations.

God is a just God and is kind and merciful. He does not want any person to perish nor to live a less than abundant life. This abundance pertains to all aspects of a person's life, including full and complete health. It is the opinion of the author and researcher of this thesis, that God offers tools to every person created, to be able to find different ways and means to help people in growing into more intimacy with Him. One merely has to show faith in Christ Jesus' salvation work and to offer one self as an instrument, then He will do His work through the person and equip the person to be able to steward one's God given gifts.

This research may be used as a tool for further study on the heart of man and the spiritual impact on the physical heart. There seems to be a great need in the world to find cures for diseases and afflictions and resources from different fields are being explored in modern times, such as spiritism, epigenetics, meditation and alternative medicine. The only true answers can be found from man's Creator, God Himself, and one merely has to find one's God given purpose on earth and start to grow in a deeper relationship with Him, to be able to find the correct answers and healing to be able to function in a more than abundant life.

---oOo---



Terms and Definitions

Doctrine - a set of ideas or beliefs that are taught or believed to be true

Heretical Teachings - relating to, or characterized by departure from accepted beliefs or standards

Metaphysical - of or relating to the transcendent or to a reality beyond what is perceptible to the senses; supernatural

Orthodoxy - a belief or a way of thinking that is accepted as true or correct

Physical - having material existence : perceptible especially through the senses and subject to the laws of nature

Unorthodoxy - something (as an opinion or doctrine) that is unorthodox

Self-actualization – the achievements of one's full potential through creativity, independence, spontaneity and a grasp of the real world.

Self-transcendence – going beyond ordinary limits; surpassing; exceeding.

Fall of Man - Fall of man – In Christian theology, the fall of man is a term used to describe the moment sin entered into the world, which brought forth the transition of the first man and woman from a state of innocent obedience to God to a state of guilty disobedience. The Fall doctrine comes from a biblical interpretation of Genesis chapter 3.

Anthropomorphic - ascribing human form or attributes to a being or thing not human, especially to a deity.

Chorion – the outermost of the extraembryonic membranes of land vertebrates, contributing to the formation of the placenta in the placental mammals.

Pluripotent Stem Cells – a cell that upon division replaces its own number and also gives rise to cells that differentiate further into one or more specialized types, as various B cells and T cells.

Mesenchymal Cells – multipotent stromal cells that can differentiate into a variety of cell types, including: osteoblasts (bone cells), chondrocytes (cartilage cells), myocytes (muscle cells) and adipocytes (fat cells). This phenomenon has been documented in specific cells and tissues in living animals and their counterparts growing in tissue culture.

Homeostasis – the tendency of a system, especially the physiological system of higher animals, to maintain internal stability, owing to the coordinated response of its parts to any situation or stimulus that would tend to disturb its normal condition or function.

Nomothetic Approach - giving or establishing laws; legislative.

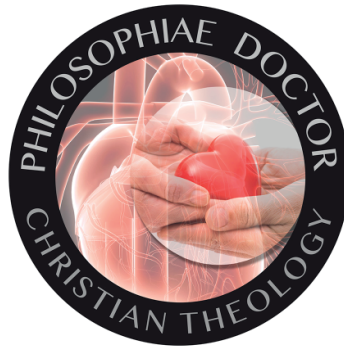
Nocturia - a condition in which one often wakes up during the night to urinate.

Anorexia - loss of appetite and inability to eat.

Peri-partum – before birth

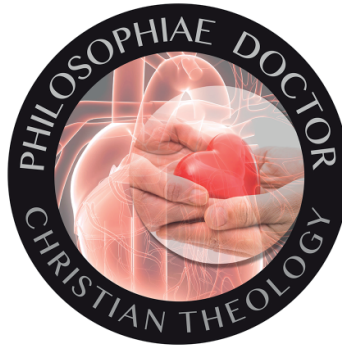
Puerperium - the four-week period following childbirth.

Epigenetics - the study of the process by which genetic information is translated into the substance and behavior of an organism: specifically, the study of the way in which the expression of heritable traits is modified by environmental influences or other mechanisms without a change to the DNA sequence.



Abbreviations

ACRONYM	BIBLE TRANSLATION
Amp	The Amplified Bible (1965)
ASV	American Standard Version (1901)
NIV	The New International Version (NT, 1973; OT, 1978)
NKJV	New King James Version (1979)
NLT	New Living Translation (1996)
Message	E.H. Peterson, The Message: The New Testament in contemporary Language (1993)



Bibliography

1. WEBSITES

ABOVE AND BEYOND CHRISTIAN COUNSELLING – The Spirit of Death Works to Complete its Assignment, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://aandbcounseling.com/a-spirit-of-death-works-to-complete-its-assignment/>, [Date Accessed: 9th June 2016]

BARON, D. (RABBI), aish.com – ‘adam, (1995-2015), [Online] Available From: www.aish.com/sp.ph/48956911.htm, [Date Accessed: 20th October 2015]

THE BIBLICAL JEZEBEL, QUEEN OF ISRAEL AND HIGH PRIESTESS OF BAAL AND ASHTORETH, (October 2009), [Online] Available From: <https://1phil4everyill.wordpress.com/2009/10/21/i-the-biblical-jezebel-queen-of-israel-and-high-priestess-of-baal-and-ash-toreth/>, [Date Accessed: 9th August 2016]

BLUE LETTER BIBLE; (2015); [Online] Available From: <http://www.blueletterbible.org/Bible.cfm?b=Jhn&c=8&t=NKJV>

Blank, W. (2011), DAILY BIBLE STUDY, [Online] Available From: <http://www.keyway.ca/htm2011/20110531.htm>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015]

BIBLESTUDYTOOLS – Definition for “Man”, [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblestudy-tools.com/dictionary/man/>, [Date Accessed: 11th October 2015]

BIBLICAL RESEARCH REPORTS – How to Turn the Hearts of the Fathers to their Children [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblicalresearchreports.com/turnheartsfathers.php>, [Date Accessed: 23rd July 2016]

BIOLOGY ONLINE – heart, (2009), [Online] Available From: <http://www.biology-online.org/dictionary/Heart>, [Date Accessed: 21st November 2015]

BLOODLINES – Bloodlines, [Online] Available From: <http://www.bloodlines.co.za/articles/spiritual-roots-of-physical-illnesses-and-diseases.html>, [Date Accessed: 23rd July 2016]

BUDDHA.NET – Hawther, P; (1995) – Death and Dying in the Tibetan Buddhist Tradition; [Online] Available From: <http://www.buddhanet.net/deathtib.htm>, [Date Accessed: 9th June 2016]

CAMBRIDGE DICTIONARIES ONLINE – Heart; (2015); [Online] Available From: <http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/heart>; [Date Accessed: 25th September 2015]

CLEVELAND CLINIC - The Coronary Arteries; [Online] Available From: (<http://my.clevelandclinic.org/services/heart/heart-blood-vessels/coronary-arteries>); [Date Accessed: 12th January 2014]

CLEVELAND CLINIC, CENTRE OF CONTINUING EDUCATION, Jaeger, F.J., Cardiac Arrhythmias (2000-2015), [Online Article] Available From: <http://www.clevelandclinicmeded.com/medicalpubs/diseasemanagement/cardiology/cardiac-arrhythmias/>, [Date Accessed: 7th May 2016]

THE CLARIFIED KING JAMES BIBLE – Door to the Heart; [Online] Available From: <http://www.hallworthington.com/getverses.php?search=Rev%203:20;&version=160>; [Access Date: 14th August 2015]

A COUNSELOR FOR THE CHURCH Hambrick B. (2014) Learning to Grieve Losses not Caused by Death; [Online] Available From: <http://www.bradhambrick.com/learning-to-grieve-losses-not-caused-by-death/>; [Date Accessed: 3rd May 2015]

CHRISTIANANSWERS.NET – Anxiety and Worry...What does the Bible say?; [Online] Available From: <http://www.christiananswers.net/q-eden/anxiety.html>; [Date Accessed: 14th August 2016]

DENTISTRY AND MEDICINE - Conducting System of the Heart; Diagrams Free Download; [Online] Available From: <http://dentistryandmedicine.blogspot.com/2011/05/heart-anatomy-and-physiology-diagrams.html>; [Date Accessed: 30th November 2014]

DENTISTRY AND MEDICINE - Heart Anatomy and Physiology Diagrams free Download; [Online] Available From: <http://dentistryandmedicine.blogspot.com/2011/05/heart-anatomy-and-physiology-diagrams.html>; [Date Accessed: 25th September 2015]

DEVELOPMENT OF THE HUMAN HEART, [Online] Available From: https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/74/2037_Embryonic_Development_of_Heart.jpg, [Date Accessed: 29th March 2016]

E-MEDICINE HEALTH (2015); Right Sided Heart Failure; [Online] Website: http://www.emedicinehealth.com/right-sided_heart_failure-health/article_em.htm; [Date Accessed: 10th March 2015]

THE FREE DICTIONARY BY FARLEX; (2003-2015); [Online] Available From: <http://medical-dictionary.thefreedictionary.com/>; [Accessed 1st February 2015]

GLOSSARY – Imago Dei, [Online] Available From: <http://www.pbs.org/faithandreason/theogloss/imago-body.html>, [Date Accessed: 2nd October 2015]

GRACE NOTES – Bitterness, [Online] Available From: <http://www.realtime.net/~wdoud/topics/bitterness.html>, [Date Accessed: 14th August 2016]

HOSPICE FOUNDATION OF AMERICA - Grief, (2012) [Online] Available From: <http://www.hospicefoundation.org/grief>, [Date Accessed: 3rd May 2016]

JOHN'S HOPKINS MEDICINE – Heart and Vascular Institute (2016) [Online] Available From: http://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/heart_vascular_institute/clinical_services/specialty_areas/center_inherited_heart_diseases.html, [Date Accessed: 7th August 2016]

JOSEPH PRINCE MINISTRIES; Jesus' Blood Keeps on Cleansing You, (2014), [Online] Available From: <http://www.josephprince.org/daily-grace/grace-inspirations/single/jesus-blood-keeps-on-cleansing-you/>, [Date Accessed: 26th February 2016]

LIVESCIENCE – DNA: Definition, Structure and Discovery (June 2013), [Online] Available From: <http://www.livescience.com/37247-dna.html>, [Date Accessed: 25th June 2015]

LOGOS RESOURCE PAGES – Strong’s Concordance; [Online] Available From: http://logosresourcepages.org/Occult/witch_define.htm; [Date Accessed 28th July 2016]

LSJ; THE ONLINE LIDDLE-SCOTT-JONES GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON – Pneuma, [Online] Available From: <http://stephanus.tlg.uci.edu/lsg/#eid=86566&context=lsj&action=-from-search>, [Date Accessed 15th January 2016]

MEDICINE.NET – Heart Definition (2015) [Online] Available From: <http://www.medicinenet.com/script/main/art.asp?articlekey=3668>; [Access Date: 25th September 2015]

Melinda Smith, J.S. (2012), COPING WITH GRIEF AND LOSS, [Online] Available From: http://helpguide.org/mental/grief_loss.htm, [Date Accessed: 3rd May 2016]

McLeod, S.A. (2008), CASE STUDY METHOD, [Online] Available From: www.simplypsychology.org/case-study.html, [Date Accessed: 1st June 2016]

THE MERRIAM WEBSTER DICTIONARY – [Online] Available From: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/create>, [Date Accessed: 12th October 2015]

NATURE.COM - Foetal and Post-Natal Circulation, [Online] Available From: http://www.nature.com/nrcardio/journal/v11/n6/fig_tab/nrcardio.2014.34_F1.html; [Date Accessed: 30th November 2014]

ONLINE ETYMOLOGY DICTIONARY – Atrium, [Online] Available From: <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?term=atrium>, [Date Accessed: 30th April 2016]

OPEN STAX CNX – Anatomy and Physiology – Development of Blood Vessels and Fetal Circulation [Online] Available From: <https://legacy.cnx.org/content/m46610/1.3/?collection=col11496/1.6&legacy=true>, [Date Accessed: 18th March 2016]

OXFORD DICTIONARY.COM (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/english/self-transcendence>, [Date Accessed: 25th January 2016]

PASTOR M.R. DE HAAN (M.D.) – The Chemistry of the Blood, Sermon 1: “The Life is in the Blood,” [Online] Available From: http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/BTP/Dr_MR_DeHaan/Chemistry/01.htm, [Date Accessed: 29th February 2016]

PRINCETON UNIVERSITY PRESS BLOG – Nature's Geometry (23rd July 2011), [Online] Available From: <http://blog.press.princeton.edu/2011/07/23/natures-geometry/>, [Date Accessed: 3rd December 2015]

PTSD: NATIONAL CENTER FOR PTSD (2014); Symptomatology and Treatment for the Iraq War Veterans; [Online] Available From: <http://www.ptsd.va.gov/professional/treatment/vets/tgs-treatment-iraq-war.asp>; [Access Date: 5th May 2015]

THE PURSUIT OF YOGA – Defining Yoga, [Online] Available From: <http://thepursuitofyoga.com/defining-yoga/>, [Date Accessed: 7th June 2016]

Puchalski, C.M. MD, MS, The Role of Spirituality in Health Care, *Proc (Bayl Univ Med Cent)*. 2001 October; 14(4): 352-357[Online Article] Available From: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC1305900/>; [Date Accessed: 9th June 2016]

Robaine, V.H. CRISTIANITY TODAY; Today's Christian Women, [Online Article] Available From: <http://www.todayschristianwoman.com/articles/2005/march/truth-about-yoga.html?start=3>; March: 2005; The Truth About Yoga, [Date Accessed: 9th June 2016]

SAPPHIRE LEADERSHIP GROUP – Burk, A. Introduction to Fractals (Article) Published Date: August 13th 2012, [Online] Available From: <http://noblesubjects.com/2012/08/13/introduction-to-fractals/>; [Date Accessed: 15th December 2015]

SAPPHIRE LEADERSHIP GROUP – Deliverance of the Brain [Online] Available from: www.theslg.com/ [Date Accessed: 25th January 2016]

THE SPURGEON ARCHIVES – METROPOLITAN TABERNACLE ARCHIVES; The Glory of Christ Beheld (October 20th 1861); [Online] Available From: <http://www.romans45.org/spurgeon/sermons/0414.htm>; [Date Accessed: 5th January 2016]

STUDYLIGHT.ORG – Holman's Bible Dictionary – Blessing and Cursing (2001-2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.studylight.org/dictionaries/hbd/view.cgi?number=T977>, [Date Accessed: 21st July 2016]

THE UNIVERSITY OF NOTTINGHAM; Practice Learning Resources – Circulatory System; [Online] Available From: <http://www.nottingham.ac.uk/nursing/practice/resources/cardiology/function/conduction.php> [Date Accessed: 30th November 2014]

THESAURUS.COM – Force, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/force>, [Date Accessed: 5th March 2016]

THEOPEDIA – Salvation Definition, [Online] Available From: <http://www.theopedia.com/salvation>, [Date Accessed: 2nd April 2016]

UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN SCHOOL OF MEDICINE AND PUBLIC HEALTH; Department of Pediatrics, Fetal Heart Physiology [Online] Available From: <http://www.pediatrics.wisc.edu/research/research-groups/hokanson/heart-physiology.html>; [Date Accessed: 30th November 2014]

VISUAL DICTIONARY – THE VISUAL REFERENCE; Hormones: The body's Chemical Messengers, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.ikonet.com/en/visualdictionary/static/us/hormones>, [Date Accessed: 3rd March 2016]

WESLEY CENTER ONLINE – The Sermons by John Wesley; Sermon 19 – The Great Privilege of Those That are Born of God; [Online] Available From: <http://wesley.nnu.edu/john-wesley/the-sermons-of-john-wesley-1872-edition/sermon-19-the-great-privilege-of-those-that-are-born-of-god/>; [Date Accessed: 18th January 2016]

WOLFRAM MATHWORLD – Fractals (2015), [Online] Available From: <http://mathworld.wolfram.com/Fractal.html>, [Date Accessed: 24th November 2015]

WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION – Defining Cardiovascular Disease, [Online] Available From: <http://www.euro.who.int/en/health-topics/noncommunicable-diseases/cardiovascular-diseases/cardiovascular-diseases2/definition-of-cardiovascular-diseases>, [Date Accessed: 8th April 2015]

WYCLIFFE BIBLE DICTIONARY ONLINE – Regeneration, (2016), [Online] Available From: <http://www.biblestudytools.com/wyc/>, [Date Accessed: 2nd April 2016]

2. BOOKS

Achtemeier, P.J. (1985), HARPER'S BIBLE DICTIONARY, NY: Harper

Acklin, T. (2006), UNCHANGING HEART OF THE PRIESTHOOD, US: Emmaus Road Publishing

Adams, J.G. (2012), EMERGENCY MEDICINE: CLINICAL ESSENTIALS, 2nd Edition, PA: Elsevier Health Sciences

Ambridge, L.N., (2011), WHO SAYS YOU CAN'T BE PERFECT? USA: Xilbris Corporation

American Psychiatric Association, (2000), THE DIAGNOSTIC AND STATISTIC MANUAL FOR PSYCHIATRIC DISORDERS, 4th Edition, Text Revision (DSM IV-TR), APA, USA

Anderson, Neil T. (2013), VICTORY OVER THE DARKNESS, REALIZE THE POWER OF YOUR IDENTITY IN CHRIST, CA, USA: Regal Books

Ashalatha, P.R. & Deepa, G. (2012), TEXTBOOK OF ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY FOR NURSES, USA: JP Medical Ltd.

Atabansi, L.A. PhD, (2010), THE PROMISED SEED: THE ORIGIN OF EVIL, MANKIND AND THE GODLY SEED, IN, USA: Author House

Augustine, (1950), THE CITY OF GOD, NY, USA: Random House

Baker, D.W. (1997), NEW INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY OF OLD TESTAMENT AND THEOLOGY AND EXEGESIS, Grand Rapids, MI, USA: Zondervan

Barnsley, M.F. (2013), FRACTALS EVERYWHERE; NEW EDITION, USA: Courier Corporation

Battle, C.U. (2009), ESSENTIALS OF PUBLIC HEALTH BIOLOGY: A GUIDE FOR THE STUDY OF PATHOPHYSIOLOGY, London, UK: Jones & Bartlett Publishers

Baxter, M.K. & Lowery, T.L. (2005), THE POWER OF THE BLOOD, PA, USA: Whitaker House

Beckwith, C.L. (2012), EZEKIEL, DANIEL; VOLUME 12 OF REFORMATION ON COMMENTARY SERIES, USA: Intervarsity Press

Bickle, M. (2009), AFTER GOD'S OWN HEART, USA: Charisma Media

Black, L. Dr. (2015), Article: THE IMAGE OF GOD, SA: Unpublished

Booker, R. (1981), THE MIRACLE OF THE SCARLET THREAD, PA, USA: Destiny Image Publishers

Brand, Connie, M.J. PhD (1995), GEESTELIKE OORLOGVOERING: SATAN SE STRUKTUUR EN STRATEGIE, Râdâh Bediening, Pretoria, SA: Unpublished

Brand, Connie M.J. Prof. Dr. (2007), TEACHING MANUAL I B, MODULE 5 – 10, THEOLOGY, The Doctrine of Man, Pretoria, SA: Unpublished

Brand, Connie, M.J. D.Litt, PhD (2015), SPIRITUAL WARFARE: SATAN IN CONTEXT I – IDENTIFYING SATAN AS THE ENEMY OF THE GOD OF THE BIBLE, Pretoria, SA: Unpublished

Brown, F., Driver, S.A., Briggs, C.A. (1907), A HEBREW-ENGLISH LEXICON OF THE OLD TESTAMENT, Oxford, UK: Oxford Press

Brown, R. (1987), UNBROKEN CURSES, New Kensington: Whitaker House

Bruner, D.F. (1987), THE CHRISTBOOK: MATTHEWS 1-12; Matthews Commentary Vol. 1, Dallas, TX, USA: Word

Bullinger, E.W. (1921), NUMBER IN SCRIPTURE; ITS SUPERNATURAL DESIGN AND SPIRITUAL SIGNIFICANCE, London, UK: Eyre and Spottiswood (Bible Warehouse) Ltd.

Bybee, K.A. Dew, M.L. Lawhorn, S.L. Stevens, T.L. (2011), CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE IN WOMEN ESSENTIALS, MA, USA: Jones & Bartlett Publishers

Cederberg, J. (2004), A COURSE IN MODERN GEOMETRY, USA: Springer Science and Business Media

Carr, Paul, H. (2006) BEAUTY IN SCIENCE AND SPIRIT, USA: Beech River Books

Carpenter, G. (2012), TABERNACLES AND TEMPLES: A STUDY GUIDE IN BIBLE SYMBOLISM, USA: Thomas Nelson Inc.

Childre, L. Dr. & Rozman, D. (2006), TRANSFORMING ANXIETY: THE HEARTMATH SOLUTION FOR OVERCOMING FEAR AND WORRY AND CREATING SERENITY, CA, USA: New Harbinger Publications

CLARK J. (2003). EXPOSING SPIRITUAL WITCHCRAFT, Florida: Spirit of Life Publishing

Clark, R.K. (2005), ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY: UNDERSTANDING THE HUMAN BODY, London, UK: Jones & Bartlett Learning

Carson, D.A., (1984), MATTHEW, MARK, LUKE VOL. 8, EBC, MI, USA: Zondervan

Cobb, J. (2007), IN JESUS NAME RECEIVE YOUR SPIRITUAL HEALING, USA: Joletha Cobb Ministries,

COLLINS G. R. (1988). CHRISTIAN COUNSELLING, Vancouver: Word Publishing

Cramer, S.A. (2006), VICTORY IN CHRIST: LIVING IN A TEMPLE INSTEAD OF A PRISON, UT, USA: Cedar Fort Publishers

Davies, D.D. (2013), THE REAL HOUSE OF GOD: UNLEASH THE FULL POWER OF GOD'S SPIRIT WITHIN YOU, USA: WestBow Press

De Haan, M.R. (1983), CHEMISTRY OF THE BLOOD, USA: Zondervan

De Haan, M.R. M.D. (1983), THE TABERNACLE, MI, USA: Zondervan Publishing House

Delitzch, F. (1950), BIBLICAL COMMENTARY ON THE PROVERBS OF SOLOMON, Grand Rapids, MI, USA: Eerdmans

Demazio, F. (1998), THE MAKING OF A LEADER, Oregon, USA: Bible Temple Publishing

Dorland, (2011), DORLAND'S ILLUSTRATED MEDICAL DICTIONARY, USA: Elsevier Health Sciences, Cardiovascular

Edwards, G.H. (2010), THE TABERNACLE, ITS PRIESTHOOD AND THEIR FUNCTIONS, USA: Authorhouse

Eilers, K (Ph.D) & Strobel K.C. (Ph.D)(2014), SANCTIFIED BY GRACE: A THEOLOGY OF THE CHRISTIAN LIFE, USA: Bloomsbury T&T Clark

Elwell, W.A. (2001), BAKER'S EVANGELICAL DICTIONARY OF THEOLOGY, USA: Baker Academic

Enns, P. (1997), THE MOODY HANDBOOK OF THEOLOGY, SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY, NY, USA: Moody Press

Ferrell, L.E. (2009), IMMERSED IN HIM, CA, USA: Voice of the Light Ministries

Freed, S. (2008), BREAKING THE THREEFOLD DEMONIC CORD: HOW TO DISCERN AND DEFEAT THE LIES OF JEZEBEL, ATHALIAH AND DELILAH, MI, USA: Chosen Book

Freed, S. (2012), THE JEZEBEL YOKE: BREAKING FREE FROM BONDAGE AND DECEPTION, Minnasota: Baker Books

Friedman, R.E. (2005), THE BIBLE WITH SOURCES REVEALED, NY, USA: Harper Collins

Fruchtenbaum, A.G. (2003), THE FOOTSTEPS OF THE MESSIAH, CA: Ariel Ministries

Garland, A.C. (Ph.D.) (2007), A TESTIMONY OF JESUS CHRIST –VOLUME 2; A COMMENTARY ON THE BOOK OF REVELATION, USA: Self-Published

Gollaher, D. (2001), CIRCUMCISION: A HISTORY OF THE WORLD'S MOST CONTROVERSIAL SURGERY, New York, NY: Basic Books

Grange, M.J. RN, (2010), NEITHER ROOT NOR BRANCH: THE DISASTER MANUEL FOR DEPRESSION, USA: Trafford Publishing

Grange, M.J. (2010), SO...YOU ARE TIRE OF BEING A LAME DUCK: A DISASTER MANUEL FOR ATTENTION DEFICIT DISORDER AND ATTENTION DEFICIT DISORDER WITH HYPERACTIVITY, USA: Trafford Publishing

Grenz, S.J., Guretzki, D., Nordling, C.F. (2010), POCKET DICTIONARY OF THEOLOGICAL TERMS: THE IVP POCKET REFERENCE SERIES, USA: Inter Varsity Press

Gross, P. (2005) THE CHURCH HAS NOT REPLACED GOD'S ISRAEL, USA: Xulon Press

Grosvenor, M.B. & Smolin, L.A. (2009), VISUALIZING NUTRITION: EVERYDAY CHOICES, USA: John Wiley & Sons

Grudem, W.A. (2009), SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY: AN INTRODUCTION TO BIBLE DOCTRINE, MI, USA: Harper Collins

Grudem, W.A. (2014), BIBLE DOCTRINE: ESSENTIAL TEACHINGS OF THE CHRISTIAN FAITH, MI, USA: Harper Collins

Hamp, D. (2011), CORRUPTING THE IMAGE, ANGELS, ALIENS AND THE ANTICHRIST REVEALED, USA: Defender Publishers

Havergal, W.H. (1867), SIX LECTURES ON THE ARK OF THE COVENANT, UK: The British Library

Hayford, J.W. (Ed.) (1995), SPIRIT FILLED LIFE BIBLE FOR STUDENTS GROWING IN THE POWER OF THE WORD, NKJV, USA: Thomas Nelson Publishers

Hayford, J.W. with Hayford Bauer, R. (2011), PENETRATING THE DARKNESS, MN, USA: Chosen Books

Haitch, R. (2007), FROM EXORCISM TO ECSTASY: EIGHT VIEWS OF BAPTISM, UK: Westminster John Knox Press

Herbst, T. dr. (2014), THE DARK SIDE OF LEADERSHIP: A PSYCHO-SPIRITUAL APPROACH TOWARDS UNDERSTANDING THE ORIGIN OF PERSONALITY DISFUNCTIONS, DERAILMENT AND THE RESTORATION OF PERSONALITY, IN, USA: Author House

Hickin, S., Renshaw, J. & Chapman, R. (2013), CRASH COURSE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM, USA: Elsevier Health Sciences

Hickey, M. (1987), BREAKING GENERATIONAL CURSES, Oklahoma, USA: Harrison House

Hill, S.J. (2005), BURNING DESIRE: THE STORY OF GOD'S JEALOUS LOVE FOR YOU, USA: Relevant Media Group

Hill, E.M. (2004), DELIVERANCE FROM DEMONS AND DISEASES: FREEDOM FROM INCURABLE DISEASES AND PERSISTANT PROBLEMS, GA, USA: Sunhill Publishers

Huch, L. (2006), 10 CURSES THAT BLOCK THE BLESSING, TX, USA: Whitaker House

Huether, Sue E. & Mc Cance Kathryn L., (2013), UNDERSTANDING PATHOPHYSIOLOGY, USA: Elsevier Healthsciences

Johnson, B. (2014), RELEASING THE SPIRIT OF PROPHECY: THE SUPERNATURAL POWER OF TESTIMONY, USA: Destiny Image Publishers

Jones, A. (Ed.) (1966), THE JERUSALEM BIBLE, NY, USA: Doubleday

Katz, A.M. (2010), PHYSIOLOGY OF THE HEART: M-MEDICINE SERIES, PA, USA: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkens

Kraus, H, (1993), PSALM 60-150 CONTINENTAL COMMENTARY, Minneapolis, USA

Kyeyune, S. (2013), THE SPIRIT IS THE CROWN OF THE HEART: GROWING IN GRACE, IN, USA: Author House

Kayiwa, K & Matthews, Z. (2005); FACE TO FACE WITH GRIEF; Lulu.com

La Grand, L.E.; (1999); MESSAGES AND MIRACLES: EXTRAORDINARY EXPERIENCES OF THE BEREAVED, USA: Llewellyn Worldwide Publishers

Lampman. S.B. (2014), REFLECTIONS OF THE TRANSFORMING POWER OF GOD, USA: Lampman Press

Larkin, C. (2005), THE SPIRIT WORLD, USA: Cosimo Inc.

Lawrence, E. (2006), BREATH OF GOD: UNLEASHING THE FATHER'S PRESENCE INTO YOUR LIFE, USA: Thomas Nelson Inc.

Leary, P. (2009), THE CONTROVERSIAL BIBLE MATTERS, Lulu.Com

Lee, W. (2003), THE MYSTERY OF GOD AND THE MYSTERY OF CHRIST, Anaheim, CA, USA: Living Stream Ministries

Lee, W. (1987), THE KNOWLEDGE OF LIFE, CA, USA: Living Stream Ministry

Leupold, H.C. (1942), EXPOSITION OF GENESIS, USA: Wartburg Press

Lewis, C.S. (1960), MERE CHRISTIANITY, NY, USA: Macmillan

LIFE APPLICATION STUDY BIBLE, NEW LIVING TRANSLATION, SECOND EDITION, (2007), IL, USA: Tyndall House Publications

Lippencott, Williams & Wilkens (Ed.), (2002), ILLUSTRATED MANUAL OF NURSING PRACTICE, PA, USA: Lippencott, Williams & Wilkens

Logan, R. & Linton, D., (2006), THE WORSHIP PRINCIPLE, USA: Xulon Press

Loren, J. (2011), SHIFTING SHADOW OF SUPERNATURAL POWER: A PROPHETIC MANUAL FOR THOSE WANTING TO MOVE IN GOD'S SUPERNATURAL POWER, PA, USA: Destiny Image Publishers

Malan, C.E.M, (2010), THE PERVERSION OF MANKIND THROUGH SEXUAL BROKENNESS AND DEVIATION WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO HOMOSEXUALITY, DESTROYING GOD'S PURPOSE FOR GODLY BLOODLINES, PhD Thesis, Pretoria, SA: Calvary University (UK)

Maldonado, G. (2014), SUPERNATURAL TRANSFORMATION, CHANGE YOUR HEART INTO GOD'S HEART, PA: USA, Whitaker House

Maton, A.J; Hopkins, S. et.al. (2010), HUMAN BIOLOGY AND HEALTH, Englewood Cliffs: Prentice Hall

Mc Call Sellers, P. (1993), MIDWIFERY: VOLUME I, SA: Juta &Co. Ltd.

McDowell, J. (2010), ENCYCLOPEDIA OF HUMAN BODY SYSTEMS: VOLUME I, USA: ABC-CLIO

Maciejko, J.J. (2004), ATHEROSCLEROSIS RISK FACTORS, USA: American Association for Clinical Chemistry

Mendez-Ferrell, A. Dr. (2015), THE SPIRIT OF MAN: THE EXTRAORDINARY DESIGN OF OUR INNER BEING, FL, USA: The Voice of Light Ministries

Miller, B. (2003), HEALING OF THE SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY, USA: Christ Unlimited Ministries

Mitchell, J. (2015), RHYTHM OF THE FATHER'S HEART: LIFE LEARNING CLASS REMOVING THE LAYERS, IN, USA: WestBow Press, Thomas Nelson & Zondervan

Morris, H.M. dr. (PhD), (2005), THE DEFENDERS STUDY BIBLE, USA: Thomas Nelson Inc.

Mosby, (2013), MOSBY'S MEDICAL DICTIONARY: 9th REVISED EDITION, USA: Elsevier Health Sciences

Murray, A. (1895), LET US DRAW NIGH!, UK: Oxford Press

Murray, A. (2013), THE POWER OF THE BLOOD OF JESUS, USA: Start Publishings LLC

Murray, J. (1965), THE EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS, NIC, B. USA: Eerdmans Publishers

Nee, W. (1993), *THE BODY OF CHRIST*, CA, USA: Living Stream Ministries

Nee, W. (1977), *THE SPIRITUAL MAN*, USA: Christian Fellowship Publishers

Nicolson, A. (2003), *THE MAKING OF THE KING JAMES BIBLE*, NY, USA: Harper Collins

Nicholson, C., (2007), *HEART FAILURE: A CLINICAL NURSING HANDBOOK*, USA: Wiley, J. & Sons

Oehler, G.F. (1950), *THEOLOGY OF THE OLD TESTAMENT*, MI: Zondervan

Olukoya, D.K. Dr. (2001), *DEALING WITH HIDDEN CURSES*, Nigeria: Mountain of Fire Ministries

Packard, F.A. (1855), *THE UNION BIBLE DICTIONARY: FOR THE USES OF SCHOOLS, BIBLE CLASSES AND FAMILIES*, USA: Harvard University

Pascal, B. (1995), *PENSÉES AND OTHER WRITINGS*, Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press

Payne, B.P. (2015), *MAN AND WOMAN, ONE IN CHRIST: AN EXEGETICAL AND THEOLOGICAL STUDY OF PAUL'S LETTERS*, USA: Harper Collins

Peck, M.S. (1983), *PEOPLE OF THE LIE: THE HOPE FOR HEALING HUMAN EVIL*, NY, USA: Simon & Schuster

Peck, S.E. (2001), *THE PATH TO THE THRONE OF GOD: THE SANCTUARY OR THE GOSPEL ACCORDING TO MOSES*, TEACH Services Inc.

Penn-Lewis, J. (2004) *WAR ON THE SAINTS*, Pennsylvania: CLC Publications

Pfeiffer, C.F.; Vos, H.F.; Rea, J. (2003), *WYCLIFFE BIBLE DICTIONARY*, MA, USA: Hendrickson Publishers

Phibbs, B. (2007), THE HUMAN HEART: A BASIC GUIDE TO HEART DISEASE, PA, USA: Lippencott Williams and Wilkens

Platinga, C. Jr. (1995), NOT THE WAY IT'S SUPPOSED TO BE: A BREVIARY OF SIN, MI, USA: Intervarsity Press

Price, P.A. (2006), THE PROPHETS DICTIONARY, New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House

Puett, T.L. Dr., A CATAGORICAL, ALPHABETICAL BIBLE STUDY, VOLUME 3, L TO R, Lulu.Com

Reddington, K.G. (2015), FOLLOWING THE TRUTH, WHEREVER IT LEADS: AN INVESTIGATION OF WHAT IS REALITY (AND HOW IT AFFECTS OUR LIVES), USA: Wipf and Stock Publishers

Remen R.N. (1997), KITCHEN TABLE WISDOM: STORIES THAT HEAL, NY, USA: Riverhead Books

Rippe, J.M., (2015), PREVENTING AND REVERSING HEART DISEASE FOR DUMMIES, USA: John Wiley & Sons,

Robinson, B.E (2010), THE TABERNACLE IN THE WILDERNESS: THE PATTERN FOR SALVATION AND SERVICE, USA: Dog Ear Publishing

Roy, S.H. (2007), COMPREHENSIVE MCQ'S IN BIOLOGY, New Delhi, IN: Golden Bells

Royal College of Physicians of London, (2005), CHRONIC HEART FAILURE: NATIONAL CLINICAL GUIDELINES FOR DIAGNOSIS AND MANAGEMENT IN PRIMARY AND SECONDARY CARE, London: Royal College of Physicians

Russell, C. (2012), TEN LETTERS,...TO BE OPENED IN THE EVENT OF MY DEATH, UK: Andrews UK Limited

Sampson, S. (2003), CONFRONTING JEZEBEL: DISCERNING AND DEFEATING THE SPIRIT OF CONTROL, Minnesota, USA: Chosen Books

Sarna, N.M. Dr. (1989), JPS TORAH COMMENTARY ON GENESIS, NY, USA: Jewish Publication Society

Saucy, R. (2013), MINDING THE HEART: THE WAY OF SPIRITUAL TRANSFORMATION, MI, USA: Kregel Publications

Schott, L. (2013), JEZEBEL: THE WITCH IS BACK, WA: Spokane, Famous Publishing

Seaton, D.A. (2007), IDOLATRY OF CHRISTIAN LEADERS, Xulon Press

Sherman, D. (1990), SPIRITUAL WARFARE: HOW TO LIVE IN VICTORY AND RETAKE THE LAND: YWAM Publishing

Shin, D. (2012), THE ARK OF YAHWEH IN REDEMPTIVE HISTORY: A REVELATORY INSTRUMENT OF DIVINE ATTRIBUTES; OR, USA: Wipf and Stock Publishers

Slemming, C.W. (2007), MADE ACCORDING TO PATTERN: THE TABERNACLE OF ANCIENT ISRAEL, USA: CLC Publications

Smith, C.R. (2004), THE PHYSICIAN EXAMINES THE BIBLE, NY, USA: Hallmark-Hubner Press Inc.

Smith, E. (2008), MAKING SENSE OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE, USA: Bethany House

Smith, L. (2012), AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSÉ PERTAINING TO THE ROLE OF BLOOD REVEALING THE PHENOMENOLOGICAL IMPACT THEREOF, Pretoria, SA: Self-Published

Soto, C. (2015), ECG: ESSENTIALS OF ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY, MA, USA: Cengage Learning

Stamps, D.C. & Adams, J.W. (Ed.) (1992), THE NEW LIFE STUDY BIBLE, NEW INTERNATIONAL VERSION, USA: Zondervan Publishers

Stein, Alice, M.(Ed.) (2005), NCLEX-RN REVIEW, 5TH EDITION, USA: Thomas Delmar Learning

Streeter, M. (2002), WITCHCRAFT A SECRET HISTORY, Herfortshire: Eagle Additions

Stroebe, M., Schut, M. van der Bout, J. (2013), COMPLICATED GRIEF: SCIENTIFIC FOUNDATION FOR HEALTH CARE PROFESSIONALS, East Sussex: Routledge

Tenney, M.C. (1975), THE ZONDERVAN PICTORIAL ENCYCLOPAEDIA OF THE BIBLE: VOLUME 1, MI, USA: Zondervan Publishing

Thomas, J.R. (2012), SPIRIT HEART SOUL: ORIGINS AND DESTINIES, IN, USA: Westbow Press

Tota, A.L. & Hagen, T. (2015), ROUTLEDGE INTERNATIONAL HANDBOOK OF MEMORY STUDIES, USA: Routledge

Vallowe, E.F. (1997), BIBLICAL MATHEMATICS, KEYS TO SCRIPTURE NUMERICS, USA: Midnight Fall

Von Rad, G. (1961), GENESIS: A COMMENTARY, Translated by John H. Marks, USA: Westminster Press

Wagner, P.C. (2015), BREAKING SPIRITUAL STRONGHOLDS IN YOUR CITY, USA: Destiny Image Publishers

Warden, J.H. Jr. (2009), ONE HUNDRED REASONS WHY BORN AGAIN BELIEVERS CANNOT LOOSE THEIR SALVATION, USA: Author House

Weller, A.L. (2016), SPIRITUAL LESSONS FROM THE BODY: A BIBLICAL SURVEY OF THE EYES, THE EARS, THE FEET, THE HANDS, THE HEART AND THE MIND, IN, USA: iUniverse

Williams, R. (2009), ONE SECOND: TEN EVENTS THAT DEFINE THE HISTORY OF MAN, USA: Xulon Press

Wilson, W.C.; Grande, C.M.; Hoyt, D.B. (2007), TRAUMA:CRITICAL CARE, NW, USA: CRC Press

Wingerd, B. (2013), THE HUMAN BODY: CONCEPTS OF ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY, PA, USA: Lippencot Williams and Wilkens

Wiseman James & El-Baz Farouk (Ed.) (2007) REMOTE SENSING IN ARCHAEOLOGY, USA: Springer Science and Business Media

Wollensack, P. Dr. (2014), DISCOVERING YOUR SPIRITUAL DNA, Hamden, CT: Harvest Equippers International

Wright, H.W. (2010), A MORE EXCELLENT WAY TO BE IN HEALTH, USA: Be in Health

Zeno, C. (2011), A SURE FOUNDATION, USA: Xulon Press

3. ARTICLES AND DISSERTATIONS

ANSWERS IN GENESIS; Darek Isaacs (9th January 2013), [Abstract] Is There a Dominion Mandate?, [Online] Available From: <https://answersingenesis.org/environmental-science/stewardship/is-there-a-dominion-mandate/>, [Date Accessed: 19th November 2015]

Bezair, J. (2015), Why Fractals are so Beautiful?, The Behemoth, [Online] Issue 35, (12 November 2015), Available From: <http://www.christianitytoday.com/behemoth/2015/issue-35-november-12-2015/why-fractals-are-so-beautiful.html>, [Date Accessed: 23rd November 2015]

BIBLE HUB – STRONG’S CONCORDANCE, [Online] Available From: <http://biblehub.com/hebrew/>, [Date Accessed: 3rd January 2016]

BIBLE.ORG; Keathly, H.J. III (M.Th.) [Online Article] Date Published: 29th March 2007), Available From: <https://bible.org/article/guarding-heart>, Date Accessed: 25th January 2016]

Black, L. Dr. (2015), Article: THE IMAGE OF GOD, Pretoria, SA, Unpublished

CHARISMA MAGAZINE; Larry Huch – 9 Ways to Break Generational Curses; [Date Published: 16th October 2014], [Online] Available From: <http://www.charismamag.com/spirit/spiritual-warfare/16463-9-ways-to-break-generational-curses>, [Date Accessed: 25th July 2016]

COHEN, I, "The Heart in Biblical Psychology" in Essays presented to Chief Rabbi Israel Brodie on the Occasion of His 70th Birthday, ed. Hirsch Jacob Zimmels, Joseph Rabbinowitz, and Israel Finestein, Jews' College Publications n.s. no. 3(London: Soncino Press, 1967), 41.

Dvorjetski, E: The history of nephrology in the Talmudic corpus, American Journal of Nephrology Volume 22:119-129, 2002

Eknoyan, G. Dr. (2005), 'The Kidneys in the Bible: What Happened?' Journal of the American Society of Nephrology, vol. 16, no. 12, November, pp. 3464-3471

THE ENRICHMENT JOURNAL, Tucker, D.L., The Person and Work of the Holy Spirit Series, The Holy Spirit in the Old and New Testaments: Some Implications for Today,(Article) Publishing Date: 14 April 2010 [Online] Available From: http://enrichmentjournal.ag.org/top/holyspirit_articledisplay.cfm, [Date Accessed: 5th February 2016]

Hogg HW: "Heart and reins" in ancient literature of the Near East. J Manchester Univ Egyptian Oriental Soc1 :49 –91,1911

Koerselman, J., van der Graaf, Y. de Jaegere, P. Grobbee, D.E., Coronary Collateralis: An Important and Underexposed Aspect of Coronary Artery Disease, American Heart Association, Circulation, 2003; 107:2507-2511

Macleod, D.J. C 2004, 'The Incarnation of the Word: John 1:14,' Bibliotheca Sacra, vol. 161 no. 641, p. 77, Dallas Theological Seminary, [January – March 2004]

Lesmoir-Gordon, N. (17 October 2010). "Benoît Mandelbrot Obituary." The Guardian (London). [Online] Available From: <http://www.theguardian.com/science/2010/oct/17/benoit-mandelbrot-obituary>, [Date Accessed: 2nd December 2015]

McCraty, R. & Childre, D. Dr. (2002), THE APPRECIATIVE HEART: THE PSYCHOPHYSIOLOGY OF POSITIVE EMOTIONS AND OPTIMAL FUNCTIONING. Heart Math Research Centre, Institute of Heart Math, Publication No. 02-026, Boulder Creek, CA, USA, pp. 1-21
MERCOLA.COM – Modern Research Reveals Your Heart Does Have a Mind of its Own (Published: 5th March 2016), [Online] Available From: http://articles.mercola.com/sites/articles/archive/2016/03/05/brain-heart-emotion.aspx?e_cid=20160305Z1_DNL_art_1&utm_source=dnl&utm_medium=email&utm_content=art1&utm_campaign=20160305Z1&et_cid=DM99277&et_rid=1388064683, [Date Accessed: 12th March 2016]

Newson, R.S. et.al. (2011), THE PREVALENCE AND CHARACTERISTICS OF COMPLICATED GRIEF IN OLDER ADULTS, *Journal of Affective Disorders* 132 (1-2); 231-8. doi:10.1016/j.jad.2011.02.021. PMID 21397336

Kopple, J.D.: The biblical view of the kidney, *American Journal of Nephrology*, Volume 14:279-281, 1994

Lisle, J. Dr., (2007), Fractals, Hidden Beauty Found in Mathematics, *Answers Magazine*, [Online] January – March 2007 Issue, (1st January 2007), Available From: <https://answersingenesis.org/mathematics/fractals/>, [Date Accessed: 25th November 2015]

Prigerson, H.G. et.al. (2009), PROLONGED GRIEF DISORDER: PSYCHOMETRIC VALIDATION CRITERIA PROPOSED FOR DSM-5 AND ICD-11, *Public Library of Science* 6(8): e1000121. Doi:10.1371/journal.pmed.1000121.

John Piper (March 1971), The Image of God An Approach from Biblical and Systematic Theology, *Studia Biblica et Theologica*, Available From: <http://www.desiringgod.org/articles/the-image-of-god>, [Date Accessed: 2nd October 2015]

Rosenzweig, A. et.al. (1997), BEREAVEMENT AND LATE-LIFE DEPRESSION: GRIEF AND ITS COMPLICATIONS IN THE ELDERLY, *Annual Review of Medicine* 48: 421-428. doi:10.1146/annurev.med.48.1.421. PMID 9046973

Sicheneder, R. (2010), Leviathan – The Crooked Serpent and His Many Heads, *The Spirit of Truth and Freedom Ministries*, Available From: <http://www.thespiritoftruthandfreedom.com/about/> [Date Accessed: 15th June 2015]

Zoni-Berisso, M; Lercari, F; Carazza, T; Domenicucci, S. (2014), EPIDEMIOLOGY OF ATRIAL FIBRILLATION: EUROPEAN PERSPECTIVE, *Clinical Epidemiology* 6: 213-220.

4. MEDIA

Emerson and Ana Mendez Ferrell (2012), Divine Health, [Online] Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=73aKCWgQBKI>, [Date Accessed: 25th October 2015] (YouTube)

The Secret Code of Creation – Calvary Chapel, Quakertown 2013, video, Dr. Jason Lisle, 21st October 2013, viewed 24th November 2015, < <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nk-wCl0ymTfg>>.

Burk, A. (2000), REDEPTIVE GIFTS OF INDIVIDUALS, Audio CD's, Sapphire Leadership Group, CA, USA

Burk, A. (2015), DOING DELIVERANCE OF THE BRAIN, Audio CD's, Sapphire Leadership Group, CA, USA

Burk, A. (2010), JOY UNSTOPPABLE: LEVIATHAN, Audio CD's, Sapphire Leadership Group, CA, USA

Budd, J. (2008), LEVIATHAN, Audio Cd's, Open Bible Tulsa, USA

Prince, D. (2005), THE NATURE OF WITCHCRAFT: D.I.M., Dereck Prince Ministries, UK

Pure Science Specials – Of Hearts and Minds (2013), Youtube Video, Date Watched: 12th March 2016, Available From: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Xwx5fbEIMfk>

4. INTERVIEWS

Brand, Connie, M.J. (Prof. D.Litt, PhD) Theoretical Discussion on the Topic of the Spiritual Heart, 1st March 2016